



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 06661355 9

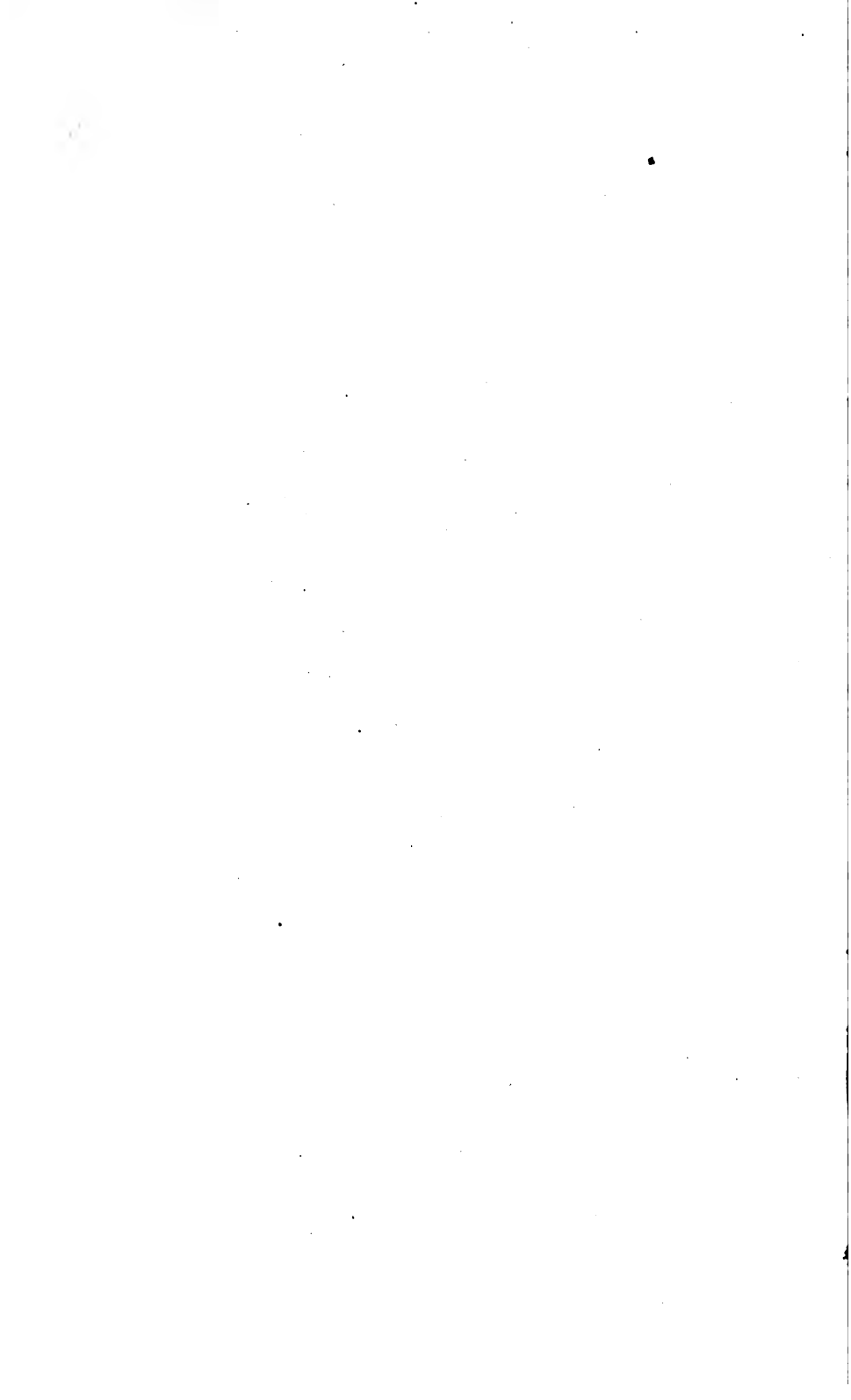


Shorn  
GGM









THE HEIMSKRINGLA;

OR,

CHRONICLE

OF

THE KINGS OF NORWAY.

TRANSLATED

FROM THE ICELANDIC OF SNORRO<sup>I</sup> STURLESON,

With a Preliminary Dissertation,

BY

SAMUEL LAING, ESQ.

AUTHOR OF "A RESIDENCE IN NORWAY," "A TOUR IN SWEDEN,"  
"NOTES OF A TRAVELLER," ETC.

---

IN THREE VOLUMES.

VOL. III.

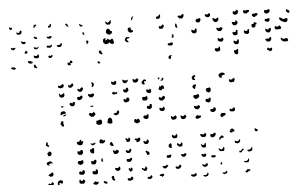
---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1844.



LONDON:  
Printed by A. SPOTTISWOODE,  
New-Street-Square.

# CONTENTS

OF

## THE THIRD VOLUME.

---

### HEIMSKRINGLA (*continued*).

	PAGE
<b>SAGA IX.</b>	
Saga of Harald Hardrada - - - -	1
<b>SAGA X.</b>	
Saga of Olaf Kyrre - - - -	105
<b>SAGA XI.</b>	
Magnus Barefoot's Saga - - - -	115
<b>SAGA XII.</b>	
Saga of Sigurd the Crusader, and his Brothers Eystein and Olaf - - - -	148
<b>SAGA XIII.</b>	
Saga of Magnus the Blind and of Harald Gille - -	205
<b>SAGA XIV.</b>	
Saga of Sigurd, Inge, and Eystein, the sons of Harald -	233
<b>SAGA XV.</b>	
Saga of Hakon Herdabreid (Hakon the Broad-shouldered) -	274
<b>SAGA XVI.</b>	
Magnus Erlingsson's Saga - - - -	300
APPENDIX - - - -	343
ADDITIONAL NOTES - - - -	365



THE  
HEIMSKRINGLA;

OR,  
CHRONICLE OF THE KINGS OF NORWAY.

---

IX.

SAGA OF HARALD HARDRADA.\*

SAGA IX.

---

HARALD, son of Sigurd Syr, brother of Olaf the Saint by the same mother, was at the battle of Stiklestad, and was fifteen years old when King Olaf the Saint fell, as before related. Harald was wounded, and escaped with other fugitives. Of this Thiodolf the scald makes mention in the poem he composed about King Harald, which he called "Sexstefia:"—

CHAPTER  
I.  
Harald  
escapes  
from the  
battle of  
Stiklestad.

"At Haug† the fire-sparks from his shield  
Flew round the king's head on the field,  
As blow for blow, for Olaf's sake,  
His sword and shield would give and take.  
Bulgaria's conqueror‡, I ween,  
Had scarcely fifteen winters seen,  
When from his murdered brother's side  
His unhelmed head he had to hide."

Rognvald Brusesson led Harald from the battle, and the night after the fray took him to a bonder who dwelt in the forest far from other people. The peasant received Harald, and kept him concealed; and Harald was waited upon until he was quite cured of

\* Harald Hardrada (the Stern) reigned from about 1046 to 1066.

† Haug is a farm near Stiklestad farm in Værdal, where the battle was fought.

‡ An allusion to Harald's exploits in the East with the Værings.



## SAGA IX.

his wounds. Then the bonder's son attended him on the way east over the ridge of the land, and they went by all the forest paths they could, avoiding the common road. The bonder's son did not know who it was he was attending; and as they were riding together between two uninhabited forests, Harald made these verses:—

“My wounds were bleeding as I rode;  
And down below the bonders strode,  
Killing the wounded with the sword,  
The followers of their rightful lord.  
From wood to wood I crept along,  
Unnoticed by the bonder-throng;  
'Who knows,' I thought, 'a day may come  
My name will yet be great at home.'”

He went eastward over the ridge through Jemte-land and Helsingialand, and came to Sweden, where he found Rognvald Brusesson, and many others of King Olaf's men who had fled from the battle at Stiklestad, and they remained there till winter was over.

CHAPTER  
II.  
Harald's  
journey to  
Constantinople.

The spring after Harald and Rognvald got ships, and went east in summer to Russia to King Jarisleif, and were with him all the following winter. So says the scald Bolverk, in the poem he composed about King Harald:—

“The king's sharp sword lies clean and bright,  
Prepared in foreign lands to fight:  
Our ravens croak to have their fill,  
The wolf howls from the distant hill.  
Our brave king is to Russia gone,—  
Braver than he on earth there's none:  
His sharp sword will carve many a feast  
To wolf and raven in the East.”

King Jarisleif gave Harald and Rognvald a kind reception, and made Harald and Eilif the son of Earl Rognvald chiefs over the land-defence\* men of the king. So says Thiodolf:—

\* Landvarnar-madr konungs—the landwehr men of the king. The landvær or landwehr force appears to have been very early an unbodied military standing army in every country.

SAGA IX.  

---

"Where Eilif was, one heart and hand  
The two chiefs had in their command;  
In wedge or line their battle order  
Was ranged by both without disorder.  
The eastern Vendland\* men they drove  
Into a corner; and they move  
The Lesians†, although ill at ease,  
To take the laws their conquerors please."

Arnor, the earl's scald, relates that Rognvald Brusesson was for a long time land-defence man in Russia, and fought many battles there:—

"In Russia, though now grown old,  
The battle-loving earl, the bold,  
Of Gondul‡ favoured, in the field  
Raised in ten fights his battered shield."

Harald remained several years in Russia, and travelled far and wide in the Eastern land. Then he began his expedition out to Greece, and had a great suite of men with him; and on he went to Constantinople. So says Bolverk:—

"Before the cold sea-curling blast  
The cutter from the land flew past,  
Her black yards swinging to and fro,  
Her shield-hung gunwale dipping low.  
The king saw glancing o'er the bow  
Constantinople's metal glow  
From tower and roof, and painted sails  
Gliding past towns and wooded vales."

At that time the Greek empire was ruled by the empress Zoe the Great, and with her Michael Catalactus. Now when Harald came to Constantinople he presented himself to the empress, and went into her pay;

CHAPTER  
III.  
Of Harald.

\* Vendland people, in its widest sense, appears to have been a name comprehending all the Slavonic race, which then extended to the borders of Holstein on the Trave at Lubeck. East Vendland was the country beyond the Oder, or Poland; and West Vendland was Pomerania, Mecklenburg, &c.

† Lesians refers to a people not known. Lazii, Lezilii, are similar names in the early history of Poland.

‡ Gondul, one of the Valkyria, who selected the slain for Odin's hall.

**SAGA IX.** — and immediately, in autumn, went on board the galleys manned with troops which went out to the Greek sea. Harald had his own men along with him. Now Harald had been but a short time in the army before all the Værings\* flocked to him, and they all joined together when there was a battle. It thus came to pass that Harald was made chief of the Værings. There was a chief over all the troops who was called Gyrger, and who was a relation of the empress. Gyrger and Harald went round among all the Greek islands, and fought much against the corsairs.

**CHAPTER  
IV.  
Of Harald  
and Gyr-  
ger casting  
lots.**

It happened once that Gyrger and the Værings were going through the country, and they resolved to take their night quarters in a wood; and as the Værings came first to the ground, they chose the place which was best for pitching their tents upon, which was the highest ground; for it is the nature of the land there to be soft when rain falls, and therefore it is bad to choose a low situation for your tents. Now when Gyrger, the chief of the army, came up, and saw where the Værings had set up their tents, he told them to

\* The Værings were the body-guard of the emperors, and were composed mostly of Northmen. Gibbon speaks of them, chap. lv.; and refers to Boyer, Du Cange, and other authors who have written of the Varangi, or Varagi, at Constantinople. Værings,—the defenders,—appears to have been the true name of this body-guard, taken from the words Wehr, Vær, Ware, which belong to every branch of the great Northern language in the meaning of active defence. The best proof that this body-guard was composed principally of Northmen is, that almost every year coins of the Greek emperors, Cuftish coins, and gold chains and other ornaments, apparently of Eastern workmanship, are found in Norway about the houses of bonders, being probably the hidden treasures of their forefathers, brought with them from their service in Constantinople. The number of Greek and Arabic (Cuftish) coins found in these hoards, with scarcely any admixture of Anglo-Saxon or other Northern money, is very considerable. They are to be seen in the museums of Christiania and Copenhagen. The time when Harald joined the Værings, according to Schöning, was about 1034, when Zoe was empress. Her husband Romanus Argyrus died that year; and after him was Michael Paphlago, who dying 1042 was succeeded by Michael Calaphates, who was the husband of Zoe, — called Catalactus by the saga men.

remove, and pitch their tents elsewhere, saying he would himself pitch his tents on their ground. Harald replies, "If ye come first to the night quarter, ye take up your ground, and we must go pitch our tents at some other place where we best can. Now do ye so, in the same way, and find a place where ye will. It is, I think, the privilege of us Væringers here in the dominions of the Greek emperor to be free, and independent of all but their own commanders, and bound only to serve the emperor and empress." They disputed long and hotly about this, and both sides armed themselves, and were on the way to fight for it; but men of understanding came between and separated them. They said it would be better to come to an agreement about such questions, so that in future no dispute could arise. It came thus to an arbitration between them, at which the best and most sagacious men should give their judgment in the case. At this arbitration it was determined, with the consent of all parties, that lots should be thrown into a box, and the Greeks and Væringers should draw which was first to ride, or to row, or to take place in a harbour, or to choose tent ground; and each side should be satisfied with what the drawing of the lots gave them. Accordingly the lots were made, and marked. Harald said to Gyrger, "Let me see what mark thou hast put upon thy lot, that we may not both mark our lots in the same way." He did so. Then Harald marked his lot, and put it into the box along with the other. The man who was to draw out the lots then took up one of the lots between his fingers, held it up in the air, and said, "This lot shall be the first to ride, and to row, and to take place in harbour and on the tent field." Harald seized his hand, snatched the die, and threw it into the sea, and called out, "That was our lot!" Gyrger said, "Why did you not let other people see it?" Harald replies, "Look at the one remaining

**SAGA IX.** in the box, — there you see your own mark upon it.” Accordingly the lot which was left behind was examined, and all men saw that Gyrger’s mark was upon it, and accordingly the judgment was given that the Væringers had gained the first choice in all they had been quarrelling about. There were many things they quarrelled about, but the end always was that Harald got his own way.

**CHAPTER  
V.**  
Harald’s  
expedition  
in the land  
of the Sa-  
racens.

They went out all on a campaign in summer. When the whole army was thus assembled Harald kept his men out of the battle, or wherever he saw the least danger, under pretext of saving his men; but where he was alone with his own men only, he fought so desperately that they must either come off victorious or die. It thus happened often that when he commanded the army he gained victories, while Gyrger could do nothing. The troops observed this, and insisted they would be more successful if Harald alone was chief of the whole army, and upbraided the general with never effecting any thing, neither himself, nor his people. Gyrger again said that the Væringers would give him no assistance, and ordered Harald to go with his men somewhere else, and he, with the rest of his army, would win what they could. Harald accordingly left the army with the Væringers and the Latin men, and Gyrger on his side went off with the Greek troops. Then it was seen what each could do. Harald always gained victories and booty; but the Greeks went home to Constantinople with their army, all except a few brave men, who, to gain booty and money, joined themselves to Harald, and took him for their leader. He then went with his troops westward to Africa, which the Væringers call Saracen’s land, where he was strengthened with many men. In the Saracen’s land he took eighty castles, some of which surrendered, and others were stormed. He then went to Sicily. So says Thiodolf: —

“The serpent’s bed of glowing gold  
 He hates\* — the generous king, the bold!  
 He who four score towers laid low,  
 Ta’en from the Saracenic foe.  
 Before upon Sicilian plains,  
 Shield joined to shield, the fight he gains,  
 The victory at Hilda’s game†;  
 And now the heathens dread his name.”

So says also Illuge Bryndæla-scald:—

“For Michael’s empire Harald fought,  
 And southern lands to Michael brought;  
 So Budle’s son his friendship showed  
 When he brought friends to his abode.”‡

Here it is said that Michael was king of the Greeks at that time. Harald remained many years in Africa, where he gathered great wealth in gold, jewels, and all sorts of precious things; and all the wealth he gathered there which he did not need for his expenses, he sent with trusty men of his own north to Novogorod to King Jarisleif’s care and keeping. He gathered together there extraordinary treasure, as is reasonable to suppose; for he had the plundering of the part of the world richest in gold and valuable things, and he had done such great deeds as with truth are related, such as taking eighty strong-holds by his valour.

Now when Harald came to Sicily he plundered there also, and sat down with his army before a strong and populous castle. He surrounded the castle; but the walls were so thick there was no possibility of breaking into it, and the people of the castle had enough of provisions, and all that was necessary for

CHAPTER  
 VI.  
 Battle in  
 Sicily.

\* The hater of the serpent’s bed is the figurative expression of the scald for the generous man. The serpent’s bed was, in the Odin mythology, gold; and its hater is the man who parts with it as with a thing he hates—the generous giver.

† Hilda’s game, the game of war.

‡ Atle, according to the Edda, invited his wife’s friends to him, and killed them; so Harald, according to the saga, put out the eyes of the emperor Michael, with all the appearances of friendship. This seems to be the meaning of the allusion of the scald to Budle’s son.

## SAGA IX.

defence. Then Harald hit upon an expedient. He made his bird-catchers catch the small birds which had their nests within the castle, but flew into the woods by day to get food for their young. He had small splinters of tarred wood bound upon the backs of the birds, smeared these over with wax and sulphur, and set fire to them. As soon as the birds were let loose they all flew at once to the castle to their young, and to their nests, which they had under the house roofs that were covered with reeds or straw. The fire from the birds seized upon the house roofs; and although each bird could only carry a small burden of fire, yet all at once there was a mighty flame, caused by so many birds carrying fire with them and spreading it widely among the house roofs. Thus one house after the other was set on fire, until the castle itself was in flames. Then the people came out of the castle and begged for mercy; the same men who for many days had set at defiance the Greek army and its leader. Harald granted life and safety to all who asked quarter, and made himself master of the place.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Battle at  
another  
castle.

There was another castle before which Harald had come with his army. This castle was both full of people, and so strong that there was no hope of breaking into it. The castle stood upon a flat hard plain. Then Harald undertook to dig a passage from a place where a stream ran in a bed so deep that it could not be seen from the castle. They threw out all the earth into the stream, to be carried away by the water. At this work they laboured day and night, and relieved each other in gangs; while the rest of the army went the whole day against the castle, where the castle people shot through their loop-holes. They shot at each other all day in this way, and at night they slept on both sides. Now when Harald perceived that his underground passage was so long that it must be within the castle walls, he ordered his

people to arm themselves. It was towards daybreak that they went into the passage. When they got to the end of it they dug over their heads until they came upon stones laid in lime, which was the floor of a stone hall. They broke open the floor, and rose into the hall. There sat many of the castle-men eating and drinking, and not in the least expecting such uninvited wolves; for the Væringers instantly attacked them sword in hand, and killed some, and those who could get away fled. The Væringers pursued them; and some seized the castle gate, and opened it, so that the whole body of the army got in. The people of the castle fled; but many asked quarter from the troops, which was granted to all who surrendered. In this way Harald got possession of the place, and found an immense booty in it.

SAGA IX.  

---

They came to a third castle, the greatest and strongest of them all, and also the richest in property and fullest of people. Around this castle there were great ditches, so that it evidently could not be taken by the same device as the former; and they lay a long time before it without doing any thing. When the castle-men saw this they became bolder, drew up their array on the castle walls, threw open the castle gates, and shouted to the Væringers, urging them, and jeering at them, and telling them to come into the castle, and that they were no more fit for battle than so many poultry. Harald told his men to make as if they did not know what to do, or did not understand what was said. "For," says he, "if we do make an assault we can effect nothing, as they can throw their weapons under their feet among us; and if we get into the castle with a party of our people, they have it in their power to shut them in, and shut out the others; for they have all the castle gates beset with men. We shall therefore show them the same scorn they show us, and let them see we do not fear them.

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Battle at a  
third castle.



## SAGA IX.

Our men shall go out upon the plain nearest to the castle; taking care, however, to keep out of bow-shot. All our men shall go unarmed, and be playing with each other, so that the castle-men may see we do not regard them or their array." Thus it went on for some days, without any thing being done.

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Of Ulf and  
Haldor.

Two Iceland men were then with Harald: the one was Haldor, a son of the godar Snorro, who brought this account to Iceland; the other was Ulf Ospaksson, a grandson of Osvifer Spake. Both were very strong men, bold under arms, and Harald's best friends; and both were in this play. Now when some days were passed the castle people showed more courage, and would go without weapons upon the castle wall, while the castle gates were standing open. The Væringers observing this, went one day to their sports with the sword under their cloaks, and the helmet under their hats. After playing a while they observed that the castle people were off their guard; and instantly seizing their weapons, they made a rush at the castle gates. When the men of the castle saw this they went against them armed completely, and a battle began in the castle gate. The Væringers had no shields, but wrapped their cloaks round their left arms. Some of them were wounded, some killed, and all stood in great danger. Now came Harald, with the men who had remained in the camp, to the assistance of his people; and the castle-men had now got out upon the walls, from which they shot and threw stones down upon them; so that there was a severe battle, and those who were in the castle gates thought that help was brought them slower than they could have wished. When Harald came to the castle gate his standard-bearer fell, and Harald said to Haldor, "Do thou take up the banner now." Haldor took up the banner, and said foolishly, "Who will carry the banner before thee, if thou followest it so timidly as thou hast done

for a while?" But these were words more of anger than of truth; for Harald was one of the boldest of men under arms. Then they pressed in, and had a hard battle in the castle; and the end was that Harald gained the victory, and took the castle. Haldor was much wounded in the face, and it gave him great pain as long as he lived.

SAGA IX.

The fourth castle which Harald came to was the greatest of all we have been speaking about. It was so strong that there was no possibility of breaking into it. They surrounded the castle, so that no supplies could get into it. When they had remained here a short time Harald fell sick, and he betook himself to his bed. He had his tent put up a little from the camp, for he found quietness and rest out of the clamour and clang of armed men. His men went usually in companies to or from him to hear his orders; and the castle people observing there was something new among the Væringers, sent out spies to discover what this might mean. When the spies came back to the castle they had to tell of the illness of the commander of the Væringers, and that no assault on that account had been made on the castle. A while after this Harald's strength began to fail, at which his men were very melancholy and cast down; all which was news to the castle-men. At last Harald's sickness increased so rapidly that his death was expected through all the army. Thereafter the Væringers went to the castle-men; told them, in a parley, of the death of their commander; and begged of the priests to grant him burial in the castle. When the castle people heard this news, there were many among them who ruled over cloisters or other great establishments within the place, and who were very eager to get the corpse for their church, knowing that upon that there would follow very rich presents. A great many priests, therefore, clothed themselves in all their robes,

CHAPTER  
X.  
Battle at  
a fourth  
castle.

SAGA IX.

and went out of the castle with cross, and shrine, and relics, and formed a beautiful procession. The Væringers also made a great burial. The coffin was borne high in the air, and over it was a tent of costly linen, and before it were carried many banners. Now when the corpse was brought within the castle gate the Væringers set down the coffin right across the entry, fixed a bar to keep the gates open, and sounded to battle with all their trumpets, and drew their swords. The whole army of the Væringers, fully armed, rushed from the camp to the assault of the castle with shout and cry; and the monks and other priests who had gone to meet the corpse, and had striven with each other who should be the first to come out and take the offering at the burial, were now striving much more who should first get away from the Væringers; for they killed before their feet every one who was nearest, whether clerk or unconsecrated. The Væringers rummaged so well this castle, that they killed all the men, pillaged every thing, and made an enormous booty.

CHAPTER  
XI.  
Of Harald.

Harald was many years in these campaigns, both in Saracen land and in Sicily. Then he came back to Constantinople with his troops, and staid there but a little time before he began his expedition to Jerusalem. There he left the pay he had received from the Greek emperor, and all the Væringers who accompanied him did the same. It is said that on all these expeditions Harald had fought eighteen regular battles. So says Thiodolf:—

“ Harald the Stern ne’er allowed  
Peace to his foemen, false and proud :  
In eighteen battles, fought and won,  
The valour of the Norseman shone.  
The king, before his home return,  
Oft dyed the bald head of the erne  
With bloody specks, and o’er the waste  
The sharp-claw’d wolf his footsteps traced.”

Harald went with his men to the land of Jerusalem, and then up to the city of Jerusalem, and wheresoever he came in the land all the towns and strong-holds were given up to him. So says the scald Stuff, who had heard the king himself relate these tidings:—

SAGA IX.  
CHAPTER  
XII.  
Harald's  
expedition  
to Pales-  
tine.

“He went, the warrior bold and brave,  
Jerusalem, the holy grave,  
And the interior of the land,  
To bring under the Greeks' command;  
And by the terror of his name  
Under his power the country came,  
Nor needed wasting fire and sword  
To yield obedience to his word.”

Here it is told that this land came without fire and sword under Harald's command. He then went out to Jordan, and bathed therein, according to the custom of other pilgrims. Harald gave great gifts to our Lord's grave, to the Holy Cross, and other holy relics in the land of Jerusalem. He also cleared the whole road all the way out to Jordan, by killing the robbers and other disturbers of the peace. So says the scald Stuff:—

“The Agder king cleared far and wide  
Jordan's fair banks on either side;  
The robber-bands before him fled,  
And his great name was widely spread.  
The wicked people of the land  
Were punished here by his dread hand,  
And they hereafter will not miss  
Much worse from Jesus Christ than this.”

Thereafter he went back to Constantinople. When Harald returned to Constantinople from Jerusalem he longed to return to the North to his native land; and when he heard that Magnus Olafsson, his brother's son, had become king both of Norway and Denmark, he gave up his command in the Greek service. And when the empress Zoe heard of this she became angry, and raised an accusation against Harald, that he had misapplied the property of the Greek emperor which he had received in the campaigns in which he was

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
Harald put  
in prison.

## SAGA IX.

commander of the army. There was a young and beautiful girl called Maria, a brother's daughter of the empress Zoe, and Harald had paid his addresses to her; but the empress had given him a refusal. The Væringers, who were then in pay in Constantinople, have told here in the North that there went a report among well-informed people that the empress Zoe herself wanted Harald for her husband, and that she chiefly blamed Harald for his determination to leave Constantinople, although another reason was given out to the public. Constantinus Monomachus\* was at that time emperor of the Greeks, and ruled along with Zoe. On this account the Greek emperor had Harald made prisoner, and carried to prison.

CHAPTER  
XIV.

King  
Olaf's mi-  
racle, and  
putting out  
the eyes of  
the Greek  
emperor.

When Harald drew near to the prison King Olaf the Saint stood before him, and said he would assist him. On that spot of the street a chapel has since been built, and consecrated to Saint Olaf, and which chapel has stood there ever since. The prison was so constructed that there was a high tower open above, but a door below to go into it from the street. Through it Harald was thrust in, along with Haldor and Ulf. Next night a lady of distinction with two servants came, by the help of ladders, to the top of the tower, let down a rope into the prison, and hauled them up. Saint Olaf had formerly cured this lady of a sickness, and he had appeared to her in a vision, and told her to deliver his brother. Harald went immediately to the Væringers, who all rose from their seats when he came in, and received him with joy. The men armed themselves forthwith, and went to where the emperor slept. They took the emperor

\* Constantine X. Monomachus appears to have married the empress Zoe about the year 1042, to have survived her, and to have died 1054. No mention is made by historians of this emperor having been blinded by his body-guards, as stated in the next chapter.

prisoner, and put out both the eyes of him. So says SAGA IX.  
 Thorarin Skeggesson in his poem:—

“Of glowing gold that decks the hand  
 The king got plenty in this land;  
 But its great emperor in the strife  
 Was made stone-blind for all his life.”

So says Thiodolf the scald also:—

“He who the hungry wolf’s wild yell  
 Quiets with prey, the stern, the fell,  
 Midst the uproar of shriek and shout  
 Stung the Greek emperor’s eyes both out:  
 The Norse king’s mark will not adorn,  
 The Norse king’s mark gives cause to mourn;  
 His mark the Eastern king must bear,  
 Groping his sightless way in fear.”

In these two songs, and many others, it is told that Harald himself blinded the Greek emperor; and they would surely have named some duke, count, or other great man, if they had not known this to be the true account; and King Harald himself, and other men who were with him, spread this account.

The same night King Harald and his men went to the house where Maria slept, and carried her away by force. Then they went down to where the galleys of the Væringers lay, took two of them, and rowed out into Sævids sound.\* When they came to the place where the iron chain is drawn across the sound, Harald told his men to stretch out at their oars in both galleys; but the men who were not rowing to run all to the stern of the galley, each with his luggage in his hand. The galleys thus ran up, and lay on the iron chain. As soon as they stood fast on it, and would advance no farther, Harald ordered all the men to run forward into the bow. Then the galley in which Harald was balanced forwards, and swang down over the chain; but the other, which remained

CHAPTER  
 XV.  
 Harald’s  
 journey  
 from  
 Constantinople.

\* Sævids sound — the Bosphorus; where the Black Sea widens, as the name implies, from a narrow strait.

## SAGA IX.

fast athwart the chain, split in two, by which many men were lost; but some were taken up out of the sound. Thus Harald escaped out of Constantinople, and sailed thence into the Black Sea; but before he left the land he put the lady ashore, and sent her back with a good escort to Constantinople, and bade her tell her relation, the empress Zoe, how little power she had over Harald, and how little the empress could have hindered him from taking the lady. Harald then sailed northwards in the Ellepallta\*, and then all round the Eastern empire.† On this voyage Harald composed sixteen songs for amusement, and all ending with the same words. This is one of them:—

“ Past Sicily’s wide plains we flew,  
A dauntless, never-wearied crew;  
Our viking steed rushed through the sea,  
As viking-like fast, fast sailed we.  
Never, I think, along this shore  
Did Norseman ever sail before;  
Yet to the Russian queen, I fear,  
My gold-adorned, I am not dear.”

With this he meant Ellisof, daughter of King Jarisleif in Novogorod.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
Of King  
Harald.

When Harald came to Novogorod, King Jarisleif received him in the most friendly way, and he remained there all winter. Then he took into his own keeping all the gold, and the many kinds of precious things which he had sent there from Constantinople, and which together made up so vast a treasure, that no man in the northern lands ever saw the like of it in one man’s possession. Harald had been three times in the Polota-svarf‡ while he was in Constantinople.

\* Ellepallta appears a corruption of the Hellespont; but must here mean the sea of Asoph, if Harald sailed north through the Black Sea.

† This East kingdom, or empire, may have been the country about Kiev, then an independent sovereignty.

‡ Polota is supposed to be a corruption of Palatium, and polota-svarf is whatever is taken from the palaces. The custom is descriptive of the state of the emperors at Constantinople and their guards.

It is the custom, namely, there, that every time one of the Greek emperors dies, the Væringers are allowed *polota-svarf*; that is, they may go through all the emperor's palaces where his treasures are, and each may take and keep what he can lay hold of while he is going through them.

SAGA IX.

This winter King Jarisleif gave Harald his daughter Elizabeth in marriage. She is called by the Northmen Ellisof. This is related by Stuf the Blind, thus:—

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
King Harald's marriage.

“Agder's chief now got the queen  
Who long his secret love had been.  
Of gold, no doubt, a mighty store  
The princess to her husband bore.”

In spring he began his journey from Novogorod, and came to Aideigoburg, where he took shipping, and sailed from the East in summer. He turned first to Sweden, and came to Sigtuna. So says Valgard of Valli:—

“The fairest cargo ship e'er bore,  
From Russia's distant eastern shore  
The gallant Harald homeward brings—  
Gold, and a fame that scald still sings.  
The ship through dashing foam he steers,  
Through the sea-rain to Sweden veers,  
And at Sigtuna's grassy shores  
His gallant vessel safely moors.”

Harald found there before him Swend Ulfsson, who the autumn before had fled from King Magnus at Helgeness; and when they met they were very friendly on both sides. The Swedish king, Olaf the Swede, was brother of the mother of Ellisof, Harald's wife; and Astrid, the mother of Swend, was King Olaf's sister. Harald and Swend entered into friendship with each other, and confirmed it by oath. All the Swedes were friendly to Swend, because he belonged to the greatest family in the country; and thus all the Swedes were Harald's friends and helpers

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
The league between King Harald and Swend Ulfsson.



SAGA IX. — also, for many great men were connected with him by relationship. So says Thiodolf : —

“ Cross the East sea the vessel flew, —  
Her oak-keel a white furrow drew  
From Russia's coast to Swedish land,  
Where Harald can great help command.  
The heavy vessel's leeward side  
Was hid beneath the rushing tide;  
While the broad sail and gold-tipped mast  
Swung to and fro in the hard blast.”

CHAPTER  
XIX.  
King  
Harald's  
foray.

Then Harald and Swend fitted out ships, and gathered together a great force; and when the troops were ready they sailed from the East towards Denmark. So says Valgard : —

“ Brave Yngve! to the land decreed  
To thee by fate, with tempest speed  
The winds fly with thee o'er the sea —  
To thy own udal land with thee.  
As past the Scanian plains they fly,  
The gay ships glance 'twixt sea and sky,  
And Scanian brides look out, and fear  
Some ill to those they hold most dear.”

They landed first in Sealand with their men, and herried\* and burned in the land far and wide. Then they went to Fyen, where they also landed and wasted. So says Valgard : —

“ Harald! thou hast the isle laid waste,  
The Sealand men away hast chased,  
And the wild wolf by daylight roams  
Through their deserted silent homes.  
Fiona too could not withstand  
The fury of thy wasting hand.  
Helms burst, shields broke, — Fiona's bounds  
Were filled with death's terrific sounds.

“ Red flashing in the southern sky,  
The clear flame sweeping broad and high,  
From fair Roskilde's lofty towers,  
On lowly huts its fire-rain pours;

---

\* Heriedo. The old North-country word, “to herry,” — to waste or plunder out, — revived by Sir Walter Scott, is derived from the Icelandic Heria, as many of the old words, and still more of the phrases and construction of the old Scotch, are.

And shows the housemates' silent train  
 In terror scouring o'er the plain,  
 Seeking the forest's deepest glen,  
 To house with wolves, and 'scape from men.

SAGA IX.

" Few were they of escape to tell,  
 For, sorrow-worn, the people fell:  
 The only captives from the fray  
 Were lovely maidens led away.  
 And in wild terror to the strand,  
 Down to the ships, the linked band  
 Of fair-haired girls is roughly driven,  
 Their soft skins by the irons riven."

King Magnus Olafsson sailed north to Norway after the battle at Helganes. There he hears the news that Harald Sigurdsson, his relation, was come to Sweden; and moreover that Swend Ulfsson and Harald had entered into a friendly bond with each other, and gathered together a great force, intending first to subdue Denmark, and then Norway. King Magnus then ordered a general levy over all Norway, and he soon collected a great army. He hears then that Harald and Swend were come to Denmark, and were burning and laying waste the land, and that the country people were every where submitting to them. It was also told that King Harald was stronger and stouter than other men, and so wise withal that nothing was impossible to him, and he had always the victory when he fought a battle; and he was also so rich in gold that no man could compare with him in wealth. Thiodolf speaks thus of it:—

CHAPTER  
XX.  
King  
Magnus's  
levy.

" Norsemen, who stand the sword of foe  
 Like forest-stems, unmoved by blow!  
 My hopes are fled, no peace is near,—  
 People fly here and there in fear.  
 On either side of Sealand's coast  
 A fleet appears—a white-winged host:  
 Magnus from Norway takes his course,  
 Harald from Sweden leads his force."

Those of Harald's men who were in his counsel said that it would be a great misfortune if relations like Harald and Magnus should fight, and throw a

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Treaty  
between  
Harald and  
Magnus.

**SAGA IX.** death-spear against each other; and therefore many offered to attempt bringing about some agreement between them, and the kings, by their persuasion, agreed to it. Thereupon some men were sent off in a light boat, in which they sailed south in all haste to Denmark, and got some Danish men, who were proven friends of King Magnus, to propose this matter to Harald. This affair was conducted very secretly. Now when Harald heard that his relation King Magnus would offer him a league and partition, so that Harald should have half of Norway with King Magnus, and that they should divide all their moveable property into two equal parts, he accepted the proposal, and the people went back to King Magnus with this answer.

**CHAPTER  
XXII.**  
Treaty  
between  
Harald and  
Swend  
broken.

A little after this it happened that Harald and Swend one evening were sitting at table drinking and talking together, and Swend asked Harald what valuable piece of all his property he esteemed the most.

He answered, it was his banner Land-waster.\*

Swend asked what was there remarkable about it, that he valued it so highly.

Harald replied, it was a common saying that he must gain the victory before whom that banner is borne, and it had turned out so ever since he had owned it.

Swend replies, "I will begin to believe there is such virtue in the banner when thou hast held three battles with thy relation Magnus, and hast gained them all."

Then answered Harald with an angry voice, "I know my relationship to King Magnus, without thy reminding me of it; and although we are now going in arms against him, our meeting may be of a better sort."

\* Landeyda — land-destroyer.

Swend changed colour, and said, "There are people, Harald, who say that thou hast done as much before as only to hold that part of an agreement which appears to suit thy own interest best."

Harald answers, "It becomes thee ill to say that I have not stood by an agreement, when I know what King Magnus could tell of thy proceedings with him."

Thereupon each went his own way. At night, when Harald went to sleep within the bulwarks of his vessel, he said to his footboy, "I will not sleep in my bed to-night, for I suspect there may be treachery abroad. I observed this evening that my friend Swend was very angry at my free discourse. Thou shalt keep watch, therefore, in case any thing happen in the night." Harald then went away to sleep somewhere else, and laid a billet of wood in his place. At midnight a boat rowed alongside to the ship's bulwark; a man went on board, lifted up the cloth of the tent over the bulwarks, went up, and struck in Harald's bed with a great axe, so that it stood fast in the lump of wood. The man instantly ran back to his boat again, and rowed away in the dark night, for the moon was set; but the axe remained sticking in the piece of wood as an evidence. Thereupon Harald waked his men, and let them know the treachery intended. "We can now see sufficiently," said he, "that we could never match Swend, if he practises such deliberate treachery against us; so it will be best for us to get away from this place while we can. Let us cast loose our vessel, and row away as quickly as possible." They did so, and rowed during the night northwards along the land; and then proceeded night and day until they came to King Magnus, where he lay with his army. Harald went to his relation Magnus, and there was a joyful meeting betwixt them. So says Thiodolf:—

## SAGA IX.

“The far-known king the order gave,  
In silence o’er the swelling wave,  
With noiseless oars, his vessels gay  
From Denmark west to row away;  
And Olaf’s son, with justice rare,  
Offers with him the realm to share.  
People, no doubt, rejoiced to find  
The kings had met in peaceful mind.”

Afterwards the two relatives conversed with each other, and all was settled by peaceful agreement.

CHAPTER  
XXIII.  
King Magnus  
gives  
Harald half  
of Norway.

King Magnus lay at the shore, and had set up tents upon the land. There he invited his relation King Harald to be his guest at table; and Harald went to the entertainment with sixty of his men, and was feasted excellently. Towards the end of the day King Magnus went into the tent where Harald sat, and with him went men carrying parcels consisting of clothes and arms. Then the king went to the man who sat lowest, and gave him a good sword, to the next a shield, to the next a kirtle, and so on,—clothes, or weapons, or gold; to all he gave one or the other valuable gift, and the more costly to the more distinguished men among them. Then he placed himself before his relation Harald, holding two sticks in his hand, and said, “Which of these two sticks wilt thou have, my friend?”

Harald replies, “The one nearest me.”

“Then,” said King Magnus, “with this stick I give thee half of the Norwegian power, with all the scatt and duties, and all the domains thereunto belonging, with the condition that every where thou shalt be as lawful king in Norway as I am myself; but when we are both together in one place, I shall be the first man in seat, service, and salutation; and if there be three of us together of equal dignity, that I shall sit in the middle, and shall have the royal tent-ground, and the royal landing-place. Thou shalt strengthen and advance our kingdom, in return for making thee that

man in Norway whom we never expected any man should be so long as our head was above ground."

SAGA IX.

Then Harald stood up, and thanked him for the high title and dignity. Thereupon they both sat down, and were very merry together. The same evening Harald and his men returned to their ships.

The following morning King Magnus ordered the trumpets to sound to a General Thing of the people; and when it was seated, he made known to the whole army the gift he had given to his relation Harald. Thorer of Steig gave Harald the title of king there at the Thing; and the same day King Harald invited King Magnus to table with him, and he went with sixty men to King Harald's land-tent, where he had prepared a feast. The two kings sat together on a high seat, and the feast was splendid; every thing went on with magnificence, and the kings were merry and glad. Towards the close of the day King Harald ordered many caskets to be brought into the tent, and in like manner people bore in weapons, clothes, and other sorts of valuables; and all these King Harald divided among King Magnus's men who were at the feast. Then he had the caskets opened, and said to King Magnus, "Yesterday you gave us a large kingdom, which your hand won from your and our enemies, and took us in partnership with you, which was well done; and this has cost you much. Now we on our side have been in foreign parts, and oft in peril of life, to gather together the gold which you here see. Now, King Magnus, I will divide this with you. We shall both own this moveable property, and each have his equal share of it, as each has his equal half share of Norway. I know that our dispositions are different, as thou art more liberal than I am; therefore let us divide this property equally between us, so that each may have his share free to do with as he will." Then Harald had a large

CHAPTER  
XXIV.  
Harald  
gives King  
Magnus the  
half of his  
treasures.

## SAGA IX.

ox-hide spread out, and turned the gold out of the caskets upon it. Then scales and weights were taken, and the gold separated, and divided by weight into equal parts; and all people wondered exceedingly that so much gold should have come together in one place in the northern countries. But it was understood that it was the Greek emperor's property and wealth; for, as all people say, there are whole houses there full of red gold. The kings were now very merry. Then there appeared an ingot among the rest as big as a man's hand. Harald took it in his hands, and said, "Where is the gold, friend Magnus, that thou canst show against this piece?"

King Magnus replied, "So many disturbances and levies have been in the country, that almost all the gold and silver I could lay up is gone. I have no more gold in my possession than this ring." And he took the ring off his hand, and gave it to Harald.

Harald looked at it, and said, "That is but little gold, friend, for the king who owns two kingdoms; and yet some may doubt whether thou art rightful owner of even this ring."

Then King Magnus replied, after a little reflection, "If I be not rightful owner of this ring, then I know not what I have got any right to; for my father King Olaf the Saint gave me this ring at our last parting."

Then said King Harald, laughing, "It is true, King Magnus, what thou sayest. Thy father gave thee this ring, but he took the ring from my father for some trifling cause; and in truth it was not a good time for small kings in Norway when thy father was in full power."

King Harald gave Thorer of Steig at that feast a bowl of mountain birch, that was encircled with a silver ring and had a silver handle, both which parts were gilt; and the bowl was filled with money of pure silver. With that came also two gold rings,

which together stood for a mark. He gave him also his cloak of dark purple lined with white skins within, and promised him besides his friendship and great dignity. Thorgils Snorresson, an intelligent man, says he has seen an altar-cloth that was made of this cloak; and Gudrid, a daughter of Guttorm the son of Thorer of Steig, said, according to Thorgil's account, that she had seen this bowl in her father Guttorm's possession. Bolverk also tells of these matters:—

SAGA IX.

“Thou, generous king, I have been told,  
For the green land hast given gold;  
And Magnus got a mighty treasure,  
That thou one half might'st rule at pleasure.  
The people gained a blessed peace,  
Which 'twixt the kings did never cease;  
While Swend, disturbed with war's alarms,  
Had his folk always under arms.”

The kings Magnus and Harald both ruled in Norway the winter after their agreement, and each had his court. In winter they went around the Upland country in guest-quarters; and sometimes they were both together, sometimes each was for himself. They went all the way north to Drontheim, to the town of Nidaros. King Magnus had taken special care of the holy remains of King Olaf after he came to the country; had the hair and nails clipped every twelve-month, and kept himself the keys that opened the shrine. Many miracles were worked by King Olaf's holy remains. It was not long before there was a breach in the good understanding between the two kings, as many were so mischievous as to promote discord between them.

CHAPTER  
XXV.  
Of King  
Magnus.

Swend Ulfsson remained behind in the harbour after Harald had gone away, and inquired about his proceedings. When he heard at last of Magnus and Harald having agreed and joined their forces, he steered with his forces eastward along Scania, and remained there until towards winter, when he heard that King

CHAPTER  
XXVI.  
Of Swend  
Ulfsson.



## SAGA IX.

Magnus and King Harald had gone northwards to Norway. Then Swend, with his troops, came south to Denmark, and took all the royal income that winter.

CHAPTER  
XXVII.  
Of the levy  
of the two  
kings.

Towards spring King Magnus and his relation King Harald ordered a levy in Norway. It happened once that the kings lay all night in the same harbour, and next day, King Harald being first ready, made sail. Towards evening he brought up in the harbour in which Magnus and his retinue had intended to pass the night. Harald laid his vessel in the royal ground, and there set up his tents. King Magnus got under sail later in the day, and came into the harbour just as King Harald had done pitching his tents. They saw then that King Harald had taken up the king's ground, and intended to lie there. After King Magnus had ordered the sails to be taken in, he said, "The men will now get ready along both sides of the vessel to lay out their oars, and some will open the hatches and bring up the arms and arm themselves; for if they will not make way for us, we will fight them." Now when King Harald sees that King Magnus will give him battle, he says to his men, "Cut our land-fastenings, and back the ship out of the ground, for friend Magnus is in a passion." They did so, and laid the vessel out of the ground, and King Magnus laid his vessel in it. When they were now ready on both sides with their business, King Harald went with a few men on board of King Magnus's ship. King Magnus received him in a friendly way, and bade him welcome. King Harald answered, "I thought we were come among friends; but just now I was in doubt if ye would have it so. But it is a truth that childhood is hasty, and I will only consider it as a childish freak." Then said King Magnus, "It is no childish whim, but a trait of my family, that I never forget what I have given, or what I have

not given. If this trifle had been settled against my will, there would soon have followed some other discord like it. In all particulars I will hold the agreement between us; but in the same way we will have all that belongs to us by that right." King Harald coolly replied, that it is an old custom for the wisest to give way; and returned to his ship. From such circumstances it was found difficult to preserve good understanding between the kings. King Magnus's men said he was in the right; but others, less wise, thought there was some slight put upon Harald in the business. King Harald's men, besides, insisted that the agreement was only that King Magnus should have the preference of the harbour-ground when they arrived together, but that King Harald was not bound to draw out of his place when he came first. They observed, also, that King Harald had conducted himself well and wisely in the matter. Those who viewed the business in the worst light insisted that King Magnus wanted to break the agreement, and that he had done King Harald injustice, and put an affront on him. Such disputes were talked over so long among foolish people, that the spirit of disagreeing affected the kings themselves. Many other things also occurred, in which the kings appeared determined to have each his own way; but of these little will be set down here.

The kings Magnus and Harald sailed with their fleet south to Denmark; and when Swend heard of their approach, he fled away east to Scania. Magnus and Harald remained in Denmark late in summer, and subdued the whole country. In autumn they were in Jutland. One night, as King Magnus lay in his bed, it appeared to him in a dream that he was in the same place as his father Saint Olaf, and that he spoke to him thus: "Wilt thou choose, my son, to follow me, or to become a mighty king, and have long

CHAPTER  
XXVIII.  
King  
Magnus  
the Good's  
death.

**SAGA IX.** life; but to commit a crime which thou wilt never be able to expiate?" He thought he made the answer, "Do thou, father, choose for me." Then the king thought the answer was, "Thou shalt follow me." King Magnus told his men this dream. Soon after he fell sick, and lay at a place called Sudathorp. When he was near his death he sent his brother Thorer with tokens to Swend Ulfsson, with the request to give Thorer the aid he might require. In this message King Magnus also gave the Danish dominions to Swend after his death; and said it was just that Harald should rule over Norway, and Swend over Denmark. Then King Magnus the Good died, and great was the sorrow of all the people at his death. So says Odd Kikinascald:—

"The tears o'er good King Magnus' bier,  
The people's tears, were all sincere:  
Even they to whom he riches gave  
Carried him heavily to the grave.  
All hearts were struck at the king's end;  
His house-thralls wept as for a friend;  
His court-men oft alone would muse,  
As pondering o'er unthought-of news."

**CHAPTER  
XXIX.**  
King  
Magnus's  
funeral.

After this event King Harald held a Thing of his men-at-arms, and told them his intention to go with the army to Viburg\* Thing, and make himself be proclaimed king over the whole Danish dominions, to which, he said, he had hereditary right after his relation Magnus, as well as to Norway. He therefore asked his men for their aid, and said he thought the Norway man should show himself always superior to the Dane. Then Einar Tambarskelver replies, that he considered it a greater duty to bring his foster-son King Magnus's corpse to the grave, and lay it beside his father King Olaf's north in Drontheim town, than to be fighting

\* Viburg, a small town in North Jutland; the Things at which place appear to have had some claim, like the Ore Thing at Drontheim, to confer the sovereign power in Denmark.

abroad, and taking another king's dominions and property. He ended his speech with saying that he would rather follow King Magnus dead than any other king alive. Thereupon he had the body adorned in the most careful way, so that the most magnificent preparations were made in the king's ship. Then all the Drontheim people and all the Northmen made themselves ready to return home with the king's body, and so the army was broken up. King Harald saw then that it was better for him to return to Norway to secure that kingdom first, and to assemble men anew; and so King Harald returned to Norway with all his army. As soon as he came to Norway he held a Thing with the people of the country, and had himself proclaimed king every where. He proceeded thus from the East through Viken, and in every district in Norway he was named king. Einar Tambarskelver, and with him all the Drontheim troops, went with King Magnus's body, and transported it to the town of Nidaros, where it was buried in Saint Clement's church, where also was the shrine of King Olaf the Saint. King Magnus was of the middle size, of long and clear-complexioned countenance, and light hair, spoke well and hastily, was brisk in his actions, and extremely generous. He was a great warrior, and remarkably bold in arms. He was the most popular of kings, prized even by enemies as well as friends.

Swend Ulfsson remained that autumn in Scania, and was making ready to travel eastward to Sweden, with the intention of renouncing the title of king he had assumed in Denmark; but just as he was mounting his horse, some men came riding to him with the first news that King Magnus was dead, and all the Northmen had left Denmark. Swend answered in haste, "I call God to witness that I shall never again fly from the Danish dominions as long as I live." Then he got on his horse, and rode south into Scania,

## SAGA IX.

where immediately many people crowded to him. That winter he brought under his power all the Danish dominions, and all the Danes took him for their king. Thorer, King Magnus's brother, came to Swend in autumn with the message of King Magnus, as before related, and was well received; and Thorer remained long with Swend, and was well taken care of.

CHAPTER  
XXXI.  
Of King  
Harald Sigurdsson.

King Harald Sigurdsson took the royal power over all Norway after the death of King Magnus Olafsson; and when he had reigned over Norway one winter, and spring was come, he ordered a levy through all the land of one half of all men and ships, and went south to Jutland. He herried and burned all summer wide around in the land, and came into Godnar fiord\*, where King Harald made these verses:—

“While wives of husbands fondly dream,  
Here let us anchor in the stream,  
In Godnar fiord; we'll safely moor  
Our sea-homes, and sleep quite secure.”

Then he spoke to Thiodolf the scald, and asked him to add to it what it wanted; and he sang,—

“In the next summer, I foresee,  
Our anchorage in the South will be;  
To hold our sea-homes on the ground,  
More cold-tongued anchors will be found.”

To this Bolverk alludes in his song also, that Harald went to Denmark the summer after King Magnus's death. Bolverk sings thus:—

“Next summer thou the levy raised,  
And seawards all the people gazed,  
Where thy sea-steeds in sunshine glancing  
Over the waves were gaily prancing;  
While the deep ships that plunder bore  
Seemed black specks from the distant shore.  
The Danes, from banks or hillocks green,  
Looked with dismay upon the scene.”

---

\* Godnar fiord is supposed to be the present Randers fiord, in North Jutland, into which a river runs called Gudn-aa, or Gudnar-aa.

Then they burned the house of Thorkill Geysu, who was a great lord, and his daughters they carried off bound to their ships. They had made a great mockery the winter before of King Harald's coming with war-ships against Denmark; and they cut their cheese into the shape of anchors, and said such anchors might hold all the ships of the Norway king. Then this was composed:—

SAGA IX.  
CHAPTER  
XXXII.  
Of Geysu's  
daughters.

"The island-girls, we were told,  
Made anchors all our fleet to hold:  
Their Danish jest cut out in cheese  
Did not our stern king's fancy please.  
Now many a maiden fair, may be,  
Sees iron anchors splash the sea,  
Who will not wake a maid next morn  
To laugh at Norway's ships in scorn."

It is said that a spy who had seen the fleet of King Harald said to Thorkill Geysu's daughters, "Ye said, Geysu's daughters, that King Harald dared not come to Denmark." Dotta, Thorkill's daughter, replied, "That was yesterday." Thorkill had to ransom his daughters with a great sum. So says Granc:—

"The gold-adorned girl's eye  
Through Hornskof wood was never dry,  
As down towards the sandy shore  
The men their lovely prizes bore.  
The Norway leader kept at bay  
The foe who would contest the way,  
And Dotta's father had to bring  
Treasure to satisfy the king."

King Harald plundered in Denmark all that summer, and made immense booty; but he had not any footing in the land that summer in Denmark. He went to Norway again in autumn, and remained there all winter.

The winter after King Magnus the Good died, King Harald took Thord, daughter of Thorberg Arneson, and they had two sons; the oldest called Magnus, and the other Olaf. King Harald and Queen Ellisof

CHAPTER  
XXXIII.  
Of the  
marriages  
and chil-  
dren of

## SAGA IX.

King Harald the Stern.

had two daughters ; the one Maria, the other Ingigerd. The spring after the foray which has just been related King Harald ordered the people out, and went with them to Denmark, and herried there, and did so summer after summer thereafter. So says Stuff the Scald :—

“ Falster lay waste, as people tell, —  
The raven in other isles fared well.  
The Danes were every where in fear,  
For the dread foray every year.”

CHAPTER  
XXXIV.  
Of the ar-  
maments  
of King  
Swend  
Ulfsson  
and King  
Harald.

King Swend ruled over all the Danish dominions after King Magnus's death. He sat quiet all the winter ; but in summer he lay out in his ships with all his people, and it was said he would go north to Norway with the Danish army, and make not less havoc there than King Harald had made in Denmark. King Swend proposed to King Harald in winter to meet him the following summer at the Gotha river, and fight until in the battle-field their differences were ended, or they were settled peacefully. They made ready on both sides all winter with their ships, and called out in summer one half of all the fighting men. The same summer came Thorleik the Fair out of Iceland, and composed a poem about King Swend Ulfsson. He heard, when he arrived in Norway, that King Harald had sailed south to the Gotha river against King Swend. Then Thorleik sang this :—

“ The wily Swend, I think, will meet  
These inland Norsemen fleet to fleet :  
The arrow-storm, and heaving sea,  
His vantage-fight and field will be.  
God only knows the end of strife,  
Or which shall have his land and life :  
This strife must come to such an end,  
For terms will never bind King Swend.”

He also sang these verses :—

“ Harald, whose red shield oft has shone  
O'er herried coasts, and fields hard won,

Rides in hot wrath, and eager speeds  
 O'er the blue waves his ocean-steeds.  
 Swend, who in blood his arrows stains,  
 Brings o'er the ocean's heaving plains  
 His gold-beaked ships, which come in view  
 Out from the Sound with many a hue."

King Harald came with his forces to the appointed meeting-place; but there he heard that King Swend was lying with his fleet at the south side of Sealand. Then King Harald divided his forces; let the greater part of the bonder-troops return home; and took with him his court-men, his lendersmen, the best men-at-arms, and all the bonder-troops who lived nearest to the Danish land. They sailed over to Jutland to the south of Vendilskaga\*, and so south to Thiodö†; and over all they carried fire and sword. So says Stuff the scald:—

"In haste the men of Thyland fly  
 From the great monarch's threat'ning eye:  
 At the stern Harald's angry look;  
 The boldest hearts in Denmark shook."

They went forward all the way south to Heidaby, took the merchant town, and burnt it. Then one of Harald's men made the following verses:—

"All Heidaby is burned down!  
 Strangers will ask where stood the town.  
 In our wild humour up it blazed,  
 And Swend looks round him all amazed.  
 All Heidaby is burned down!  
 From a far corner of the town  
 I saw, before the peep of morning,  
 Roofs, walls, and all in flame high burning."

To this also Thorleik alludes in his verses, when he heard there had been no battle at the Gotha river:—

"The stranger-warrior may inquire  
 Of Harald's men, why in his ire

\* Vendilskaga, now Vendsyssel, is the northern district of Jutland, in which the Scaw Point is situated.

† Thyodo is now Thyland in Jutland.



## SAGA IX.

On Heidaby his wrath he turns,  
 And the fair town to ashes burns?  
 Would that the day had never come  
 When Harald's ships returned home  
 From the East sea, since now the town,  
 Without his gain, is burned down!"

CHAPTER  
 XXXV.  
 Harald's  
 escape into  
 the Jut-  
 land sea.

Then King Harald sailed north, and had sixty ships, and the most of them large and heavily laden with the booty taken in summer; and as they sailed north past Thiodö, came King Swend down from the land with a great force, and he challenged King Harald to land and fight. King Harald had little more than half the force of King Swend, and therefore he challenged Swend to fight at sea. So says Thorleik the Fair: —

"Swend, who of all men under heaven  
 Has had the luckiest birth-hour given,  
 Invites his foemen to the field,  
 There to contest with blood-stained shield.  
 The king, impatient of delay,  
 Harald, will with his sea-hawks stay;  
 On board will fight, and fate decide  
 If Swend shall by his land abide."

After that King Harald sailed north along Vendilskaga; and the wind then came against them, and they brought up under Lessö, where they lay all night. A thick fog lay upon the sea; and when the morning came, and the sun rose, they saw upon the other side of the sea as if many lights were burning. This was told to King Harald; and he looked at it, and said immediately, "Strike the tilts down on the ships, and take to the oars. The Danish forces are coming upon us; and the fog there where they are must have cleared off, and the sun shines upon the dragon-heads of their ships, which are gilded, and that is what we see." It was so as he had said. Swend had come there with a prodigious armed force. They rowed now on both sides all they could. The Danish ships flew lighter before the oars; for the Northmen's ships were both soaked with water and heavily laden, so that

the Danes approached nearer and nearer. Then Harald, whose own dragon-ship was the last of the fleet, saw that he could not get away; so he ordered his men to throw overboard some wood, and lay upon it clothes and other good and valuable articles; and it was so perfectly calm, that these drove about with the tide. Now when the Danes saw their own goods driving about on the sea, they who were in advance turned about to save them; for they thought it was easier to take what was floating freely about, than to go on board the Northmen to take it. They dropped rowing, and lost ground. Now when King Swend came up to them with his ship, he urged them on; saying it would be a great shame if they, with so great a force, could not overtake and master so small a number. The Danes then began again to stretch out lustily at their oars. When King Harald saw that the Danish ships went faster, he ordered his men to lighten their ships, and cast overboard malt, wheat, bacon, and to let their liquor run out, which helped a little. Then Harald ordered the bulwark-screens, the empty casks and puncheons, and the prisoners to be thrown overboard; and when all these were driving about on the sea, Swend ordered help to be given to save the men. This was done; but so much time was lost, that they separated from each other. The Danes turned back, and the Northmen proceeded on their way. So says Thorleik the Fair:—

“Swend drove his foes from Jutland’s coast,—  
The Norsemen’s ships would have been lost,  
But Harald all his vessels saves,  
Throwing his booty on the waves.  
The Jutlanders saw, as he threw,  
Their own goods floating in their view:  
His lighten’d ships fly o’er the main,  
While they pick up their own again.”

King Swend returned southwards with his ships to Lessö, where he found seven ships of the Northmen.

SAGA IX. — with bonders and men of the levy. When King Swend came to them they begged for mercy, and offered ransom for themselves. So says Thorleik the Fair:—

“ The stern king’s men good offers make,  
If Swend will ransom for them take;  
Too few to fight, they boldly say  
Unequal force makes them give way.  
The hasty bonders for a word  
Would have betaken them to the sword,  
And have prolonged a bloody strife—  
Such men can give no price for life.”

CHAPTER  
XXXVI.  
Of Harald.

King Harald was a great man, who ruled his kingdom well in home-concerns. Very prudent was he, of good understanding; and it is the universal opinion that no chief ever was in northern lands of such deep judgment and ready counsel as Harald. He was a great warrior; bold in arms; strong and expert in the use of his weapons beyond any others, as has been before related, although many of the feats of his manhood are not here written down. This is owing partly to our uncertainty about them, partly to our wish not to put stories into this book for which there is no testimony. Although we have heard many things talked about, and even circumstantially related, yet we think it better that something may be added to, than that it should be necessary to take something away from, our relation. A great part of his history is put in verse by Iceland men, which poems they presented to him or his sons, and for which reason he was their great friend. He was, indeed, a great friend to all the people of that country; and once, when a very dear time set in, he allowed four ships to transport meal to Iceland, and fixed that the shippund should not be dearer than 100 ells of wadmal.\* He permitted

\* Wadmal was a coarse woollen home-made cloth, undyed, spun and woven by the country-people in Iceland; and being their only native product of value, rents, taxes, and prices were, until a late period, valued in wadmal.

also all poor people, who could find provisions to keep them on the voyage across the sea, to emigrate from Iceland to Norway; and from that time there was better subsistence in the country, and the seasons also turned out better. King Harald also sent from Norway a bell for the church of which Olaf the Saint had sent the timbers to Iceland, and which was erected on the Thing-plain. Such remembrances of King Harald are found here in the country\*, besides many great gifts which he presented to those who visited him.

SAGA IX.

Haldor Snorresson and Ulf Ospaksson, as before related, came to Norway with King Harald. They were, in many respects, of different dispositions. Haldor was very stout and strong, and remarkably handsome in appearance. King Harald gave him this testimony, that he, among all his men, cared least about doubtful circumstances, whether they betokened danger or pleasure; for, whatever turned up, he was never in higher nor in lower spirits, never slept less nor more on account of them, nor ate or drank but according to his custom. Haldor was not a man of many words, but short in conversation, told his opinion bluntly, and was obstinate and hard; and this could not please the king, who had many clever people about him zealous in his service. Haldor remained a short time with the king; and then came to Iceland, where he took up his abode in Hiardarholt, and dwelt in that farm to a very advanced age.

CHAPTER  
XXXVII.  
Of Haldor  
Snorresson.

Ulf Ospaksson stood in great esteem with King Harald; for he was a man of great understanding, clever in conversation, active and brave, and withal true and sincere. King Harald made Ulf his marshal, and married him to Jorun, Thorberg's daughter, a sister of Harald's wife Thora. Ulf and Jorun's chil-

CHAPTER  
XXXVIII.  
Of Ulf  
Ospaksson.

\* Viz. in Iceland, where Snorro was writing.

## SAGA IX.

dren were, Jan Stærke of Rosvold, and Brigita mother of Sauda Ulf, who was father of Peter Byrde-Swend, grandfather of Swend and Ulf Flys. Jan Stærke's son was Erlind Himalde, father of Archbishop Eystein and his brothers. King Harald gave Ulf the marshal the rights of a lenderman, and a fief of twelve marks income, besides a half-district in the Drontheim land. Of this Stein Herdisseon speaks in his song about Ulf.

CHAPTER  
XXXIX.  
Of the  
building of  
churches  
and houses.

King Magnus Olafsson built Olaf's church in the town (Nidaros), on the spot where Olaf's body was set down for the night, and which, at that time, was above the town. He also had the king's house built there. The church was not quite finished when the king died; but King Harald had what was wanting completed. There, beside the house, he began to construct a stone hall, but it was not finished when he died. King Harald had the church called Mary Church built from the foundations up, at the sand-hill close to the spot where the king's holy remains were concealed in the earth the first winter after his fall. It was a large temple, and so strongly built with lime that it was difficult to break it when the archbishop Eystein had it pulled down. Olaf's holy remains were kept in Olaf's church while Mary church was building. King Harald had the king's house erected below Mary Kirk, at the side of the river, where it now is; and he had the house in which he had made the great hall consecrated, and called Gregorius Church.

CHAPTER  
XL.  
Beginning  
of Hakon  
Ivarsson's  
story.

There was a man called Ivar Huide, who was a brave lenderman dwelling in the Uplands, and was a daughter's son of Earl Hakon the Great. Ivar was the handsomest man that could be seen. Ivar's son was called Hakon; and of him it was said that he was distinguished above all men then in Norway for beauty, strength, and perfection of figure. In his

very youth he had been sent out on war expeditions, where he acquired great honour and consideration, and became afterwards one of the most celebrated men.

SAGA IX.

Einar Tambarskelver was the most powerful lenderman\* in the Drontheim land. There was but little friendship between him and King Harald, although Einar retained all the fiefs he had held while Magnus the Good lived. Einar had many large estates, and was married to Bergliot, a daughter of Earl Hakon, as related above. Their son Endrid was grown up, and married to Sigrid, a daughter of Ketil Kalfsson and Gunhild, King Harald's sister's daughter. Endrid had inherited the beauty of his mother's father Earl Hakon, and his sons; and in size and strength he took after his father Einar, and also in all bodily perfections by which Einar had been distinguished above other men. He was also, as well as his father, the most popular of men, which the sagas, indeed, show sufficiently.

CHAPTER  
XLI.  
Of Einar  
Tambarskelver.

Orm was at that time earl in the Uplands. His mother was Ragnhild, a daughter of Earl Hakon the Great, and Orm was a remarkably clever man. Aslak Erlingsson was then in Jedderen at Sole, and was married to Sigrid, a daughter of Earl Swend Hakonsson. Gunhild, Earl Swend's other daughter, was married to the Danish king Swend Ulfsson. These were the descendants of Earl Hakon at that time in Norway, besides many other distinguished people; and the whole race was remarkable for their very beauti-

CHAPTER  
XLII.  
Of Earl  
Orm.

\* The fiefs of these feudatories not being hereditary, nor conveying the feudal baronial privileges and powers over the sub-vassals belonging to the fiefs in feudally constituted countries, and being in reality only life-rent tacks of crown lands, or collectorships of crown rents and taxes in certain districts, the original word Lendermen (Lendr Madr) is preferred, in this translation, to the word Baron, which denotes feudal rights and powers which the lendermen had not. The King's Sheriffs might, perhaps, express this condition and class better.

## SAGA IX.

ful appearance, and the most of them were gifted with great bodily perfection, and were all distinguished and important men.

CHAPTER  
XLIII.  
Harald's  
pride.

King Harald was very proud, and his pride increased after he was established in the country; and it came so far that at last it was not good to speak against him, or to propose any thing different from what he desired. So says Thiodolf the scald:—

“ In arms 'tis right the common man  
Should follow orders, one by one,—  
Should stoop or rise, or run or stand,  
As his war-leader may command;  
But now to the king who feeds the ravens  
The people bend like heartless cravens—  
Nothing is left them, but consent  
To what the king calls his intent.”

CHAPTER  
XLIV.  
Of the  
quarrel  
of King  
Harald  
and Einar  
Tambar-  
skelver.

Einar Tambarskelver was the principal man among the bonders all about Drontheim, and answered for them at the Things even against the king's men. Einar knew well the law, and did not want boldness to bring forward his opinion at Things, even if the king was present; and all the bonders stood by him. The king was very angry at this, and it came so far that they disputed eagerly against each other. Einar said that the bonders would not put up with any unlawful proceedings from him if he broke through the law of the land; and this occurred several times between them. Einar then began to keep people about him at home, and he had many more when he came into the town if the king was there. It once happened that Einar came to the town with a great many men and ships; he had with him eight or nine great war-ships, and nearly 500 men. When he came to the town he went up from the strand with his attendants. King Harald was then in his house, standing out in the gallery of the loft; and when he saw Einar's people going on shore, it is said Harald composed these verses:—

“ I see great Tambaraskelver go,  
 With mighty pomp, and pride, and show,  
 Across the ebb-shore up the land,—  
 Before, behind, an armed band.  
 This bonder-leader thinks to rule,  
 And fill himself the royal stool.  
 A goodly earl I have known  
 With fewer followers of his own.  
 He who strikes fire from the shield,  
 Einar, may some day make us yield,  
 Unless our axe-edge quickly ends,  
 With sudden kiss, what he intends.”

SAGA IX.

Einar remained several days in the town.

One day there was a meeting held in the town, at which the king himself was present. A thief had been taken in the town, and he was brought before the Thing. The man had before been in the service of Einar, who had been very well satisfied with him. This was told to Einar, and he well knew the king would not let the man off, and the more because he took an interest in the matter. Einar, therefore, let his men get under arms, went to the Thing, and took the man by force. The friends on both sides then came between, and endeavoured to effect a reconciliation; and they succeeded so far that a meeting-place was appointed, to which both should come. There was a Thing-room in the king's house at the river Nid, and the king went into it with a few men, while the most of his people were out in the yard. The king ordered the shutters of the loft-opening to be turned, so that there was but a little space left clear. When Einar came into the yard with his people, he told his son Endrid to remain outside with the men, “ for there is no danger here for me.” Endrid remained standing outside at the room-door. When Einar came into the Thing-room, he said, “ It is dark in the king's Thing-room.” At that moment some men ran against him, and assaulted him,—some with spears, some with swords. When Endrid heard this he drew his sword, and rushed into the room; but he was instantly killed

CHAPTER  
 XLV.  
 The fall of  
 Einar and  
 Endrid.



## SAGA IX.

along with his father. The king's men then ran up and placed themselves before the door, and the bonders lost courage, having no leader. They urged each other on, indeed, and said it was a shame they should not avenge their chief; but it came to nothing with their attack. The king went out to his men, arrayed them in battle order, and set up his standard; but the bonders did not venture to assault. Then the king went with all his men on board of his ships, rowed down the river, and then took his way out of the fiord. When Einar's wife Bergliot, who was in the house which Einar had possessed in the town, heard of Einar's fall, she went immediately to the king's house where the bonders' army was, and urged them to the attack; but at the same moment the king was rowing out of the river. Then said Bergliot, "Now we want here my relation Hakon Ivarsson: Einar's murderer would not be rowing out of the river if Ivar stood here on the river-bank." Then Bergliot adorned Einar's and Endrid's corpses, and buried them in Olaf's church, beside King Magnus Olafsson's burial-place. After Einar's murder, the king was so much disliked for that deed, that there was nothing that prevented the lendermen and bonders from attacking the king, and giving him battle, but the want of some leader to raise the banner in the bonder army.

CHAPTER  
XLVI.  
Of King  
Harald  
and Finn  
Arneson.

Finn Arneson dwelt at Austratt in Yrjar, and was King Harald's lenderman there. Finn was married to Bergliot, a daughter of Halfdan, who was a son of Sigurd Syr, and brother of Olaf the Saint and of King Harald. Thora, King Harald's wife, was Finn Arneson's brother's daughter; and Finn and all his brothers were the king's dearest friends. Finn Arneson had been for some summers on a viking cruise in the West sea; and Finn, Guttorm Gunhildsson, and Hakon Ivarsson had all been together on that cruise.

King Harald now proceeded out of Drontheim fiord to Austratt, where he was well received. Afterwards the king and Finn conversed with each other about this new event of Einar's and his son's death, and of the murmuring and threatening which the bonders made against the king.

Finn took up the conversation briskly, and said, "Thou art managing ill in two ways: first in doing all manner of mischief; and next in being so afraid that thou knowest not what to do."

The king replied, laughing, "I will send thee, friend, into the town to bring about a reconciliation with the bonders; and if that will not do, thou must go to the Uplands, and bring matters to such an understanding with Hakon Ivarsson that he shall not be my opponent."

Finn replies, "And how wilt thou reward me if I undertake this dangerous errand; for both the people of Drontheim and the people of Upland are so great enemies to thee, that it would not be safe for any of thy messengers to come among them, unless he were one who would be spared for his own sake?"

The king replies, "Go thou on this embassy, for I know thou wilt succeed in it if any man can, and bring about a reconciliation; and then choose whatever favour from us thou wilt."

Finn says, "Hold thou thy word, king, and I will choose my petition. I will desire to have peace and safe residence in the country for my brother Kalf, and all his estates restored; and also that he receive all the dignity and power he had when he left the country."

The king assented to all that Finn laid down, and it was confirmed by witnesses and shake of hand.

Then said Finn, "What shall I offer Hakon, who rules most among his relations in the land, to induce him to agree to a treaty and reconciliation with thee?"

## SAGA IX.

The king replies, "Thou shalt first hear what Hakon on his part requires for making an agreement; then promote my interest as thou art best able; and deny him nothing in the end short of the kingdom."

Then King Harald proceeded southwards to Mære, and drew together men in considerable numbers.

CHAPTER  
XLVII.  
Of Finn  
Arneson's  
journey.

Finn Arneson proceeded to the town, and had with him his house servants, nearly eighty men. When he came into the town he held a Thing with the town's people. Finn spoke long and ably at the Thing; and told the town's people, and bonders, above all things not to have a hatred against their king, or to drive him away. He reminded them of how much evil they had suffered by acting thus against King Olaf the Saint; and added, that the king was willing to pay penalty for this murder, according to the judgment of understanding and good men. The effect of Finn's speech was, that the bonders promised to wait quietly until the messengers came back whom Bergliot had sent to the Uplands to her relative Hakon Ivarsson. Finn then went out to Orkadal with the men who had accompanied him to the town. From thence he went up to the Dovrefield, and eastwards over the Fielde. He went first to his son-in-law Earl Orm, who was married to Sigrid, Finn's daughter, and told him his business.

CHAPTER  
XLVIII.  
Of Finn  
and Hakon  
Ivarsson.

Then Finn and Earl Orm appointed a meeting with Hakon Ivarsson; and when they met Finn explained his errand to Hakon, and the offer which King Harald made him. It was soon seen, from Hakon's speech, that he considered it to be his great duty to avenge the death of his relative Endrid; and added, that word was come to him from Drontheim, from which he might expect help in making head against the king. Then Finn represented to Hakon how much better it would be for him to accept of as high a dignity from the king as he himself could desire, rather than to at-

tempt raising a strife against the king to whom he was owing service and duty. He said if he came out of the conflict without victory, he forfeited life and property: "And even if thou hast the victory, thou wilt still be called a traitor to thy sovereign." Earl Orm also supported Finn's speech. After Hakon had reflected upon this he disclosed what lay on his mind, and said, "I will be reconciled with King Harald if he will give me in marriage his relation Ragnhild, King Magnus Olafsson's daughter, with such dower as is suitable to her and she will be content with." Finn said he would agree to this on the king's part; and thus it was settled among them. Finn then returned to Drontheim, and the disturbance and enmity was quashed, so that the king could retain his kingdom in peace at home; and the league was broken which Endrid's relations had made among themselves for opposing King Harald.

When the day arrived for the meeting at which this agreement with Harald should be finally concluded, Hakon went to King Harald; and in their conference the king said that he, for his part, would adhere to all that was settled in their agreement. "Thou, Hakon," says he, "must thyself settle that which concerns Ragnhild, as to her accepting thee in marriage; for it would not be advisable for thee, or for any one, to marry Ragnhild without her consent." Then Hakon went to Ragnhild, and paid his addresses to her. She answered him thus: "I have often to feel that my father King Magnus is dead and gone from me, since I must marry a bonder; although I acknowledge thou art a handsome man, expert in all exercises. But if King Magnus had lived he would not have married me to any man less than a king; so it is not to be expected that I will take a man who has no dignity or title." Then Hakon went to King Harald, and told him his conversation with

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
XLIX.  
Of the  
courtship  
of Hakon  
Ivarsson.

## SAGA IX.

Ragnhild, and also repeated the agreement which was made between him and Finn, who was with him, together with many others of the persons who had been present at the conversation between him and Finn. Hakon takes them all to witness that such was the agreement that the king should give Ragnhild the dower she might desire. "And now since she will have no man who has not a high dignity, thou must give me such a title of honour; and, according to the opinion of the people, I am of birth, family, and other qualifications, to be called earl."

The king replies, "When my brother King Olaf and his son King Magnus ruled the kingdom, they allowed only one earl at a time to be in the country, and I have done the same since I came to the kingly title; and I will not take away from Orm the title of honour I had before given him."

Hakon saw now that his business had not advanced, and was very ill pleased; and Finn was outrageously angry. They said the king had broken his word; and thus they all separated.

CHAPTER  
L.  
Hakon's  
journey to  
Denmark.

Hakon then went out of the country with a well-manned ship. When he came to Denmark he went immediately to his relative King Swend, who received him honourably, and gave him great fiefs. Hakon became King Swend's commander of the coast defence against the vikings, — the Vendland people, Courland people, and others from the East countries, — who infested the Danish dominions; and he lay out with his ships of war both winter and summer.

CHAPTER  
LI.  
Murder of  
Asmund.

There was a man called Asmund, who is said to have been King Swend's sister's son, and his foster-son. This Asmund was distinguished among all by his boldness, and was much disliked by the king. When Asmund came to years, and to age of discretion, he became an ungovernable person given to murder and manslaughter. The king was ill pleased at this,

and sent him away, giving him a good fief, which might keep him and his followers well. As soon as Asmund had got this property from the king, he drew together a large troop of people; and as the estate he had got from the king was not sufficient for his expenses, he took as his own much more which belonged to the king. When the king heard this he summoned Asmund to him, and when they met the king said that Asmund should remain with the court without keeping any retinue of his own; and this took place as the king desired. But when Asmund had been a little time in the king's court he grew weary of being there, and escaped in the night, returned to his former companions, and did more mischief than ever. Now when the king was riding through the country, he came to the neighbourhood where Asmund was, and he sent out men-at-arms to seize him. The king then had him laid in irons, and kept him so for some time in hope he would reform; but no sooner did Asmund get rid of his chains than he absconded again, gathered together people and men-at-arms, and betook himself to plunder, both abroad and at home. Thus he made great forays, killing and plundering all around. When the people who suffered under these disturbances came to the king, and complained to him of their losses, he replied, "Why do ye tell me of this? Why don't you go to Hakon Ivarsson, who is my officer for the land-defence, placed on purpose to keep the peace for you peasants, and to hold the vikings in check? I was told that Hakon was a gallant and brave man, but I think he is rather shy when any danger of life is in the way." These words of the king were brought to Hakon, with many additions. Then Hakon went with his men in search of Asmund, and when their ships met Hakon gave battle immediately; and the conflict was sharp, and many men were killed. Hakon boarded Asmund's ship, and cut

## SAGA IX.

down the men before his feet. At last he and Asmund met, and exchanged blows until Asmund fell. Hakon cut off his head, went in all haste to King Swend, and found him just sitting down to the dinner-table. Hakon presented himself before the table, laid Asmund's head upon the table before the king, and asked if he knew it. The king made no reply, but became as red as blood in the face. Soon after the king sent him a message, ordering him to leave his service immediately. "Tell him that I will do him no harm; but I cannot keep watch over all our relations." \*

CHAPTER  
LII.  
Hakon  
Ivarsson's  
marriage.

Hakon then left Denmark, and came north to his estates in Norway. His relation Earl Orm was dead. Hakon's relations and friends were glad to see Hakon, and many gallant men gave themselves much trouble to bring about a reconciliation between King Harald and Hakon. It was at last settled in this way, that Hakon got Ragnhild, the king's daughter, and that King Harald gave Hakon the earldom, with the same power Earl Orm had possessed. Hakon swore to King Harald an oath of fidelity to all the services he was liable to fulfil.

CHAPTER  
LIII.  
Reconci-  
liation of  
King Ha-  
rald and  
Kalf.

Kalf Arneson had been on a viking cruise to the Western countries ever since he had left Norway; but in winter he was often in the Orkney Islands with his relative Earl Thorfinn. Finn Arneson sent a message to his brother Kalf, and told him the agreement which he had made with King Harald, that Kalf should enjoy safety in Norway, and his estates, and all the fiefs he had held from King Magnus. When this message came to Kalf he immediately got ready for his voyage, and went east to Norway to his brother Finn. Then

\* This incident shows how strong, in those ages, was the tie of relationship, and the point of honour of avenging its injuries—the clanship spirit.

Finn obtained the king's peace for Kalf, and when Kalf and the king met they went into the agreement which Finn and the king had settled upon before. Kalf bound himself to the king in the same way as he had bound himself to serve King Magnus, according to which Kalf should do all that the king desired and considered of advantage to his realm. Thereupon Kalf received all the estates and fiefs he had before.

SAGA IX.

The summer following King Harald ordered out a levy, and went to Denmark, where he plundered during the summer; but when he came south to Fyen he found a great force assembled against him. Then the king prepared to land his men from the ships, and to engage in a land-fight. He drew up his men on board in order of battle; set Kalf Arneson at the head of one division; ordered him to make the first attack, and told him where they should direct their assault, promising that he would soon make a landing with the others, and come to their assistance. When Kalf came to the land with his men a force came down immediately to oppose them, and Kalf without delay engaged in battle, which, however, did not last long; for Kalf was immediately overpowered by numbers, and betook himself to flight with his men. The Danes pursued them vigorously, and many of the Northmen fell, and among them Kalf Arneson. Now King Harald landed with his array; and they soon came on their way to the field of battle, where they found Kalf's body, and bore it down to the ships. But the king penetrated into the country, killing many people, and destroying much. So says Arnor:—

CHAPTER  
LIV.  
Fall of Kalf  
Arneson.

“His shining sword with blood he stains,  
Upon Fyona's grassy plains;  
And in the midst of fire and smoke,  
The King Fyona's forces broke.”

After this Finn Arneson thought he had cause to be an enemy of the king upon account of his brother

CHAPTER  
LV.  
Finn Arne-



SAGA IX.  
son's expedition out  
of the  
country.

Kalf's death; and said the king had betrayed Kalf to his fall, and had also deceived him by making him entice his brother Kalf to come over from the West and trust to King Harald's faith. When these speeches came out among people, many said that it was very foolish in Finn to have ever supposed that Kalf could obtain the king's sincere friendship and favour; for they thought the king was the man to seek revenge for smaller offences than Kalf had committed against the king. The king let every one say what he chose, and he himself neither said yes nor no about the affair; but people perceived that the king was very well pleased with what had happened. King Harald once made these verses:—

"I have, in all, the death-stroke given  
To foes of mine at least eleven;  
Two more, perhaps, if I remember,  
May yet be added to this number.  
I prize myself upon these deeds,  
My people such examples needs.  
Bright gold itself they would despise,  
Or healing leek-herb \* underprize,  
If not still brought before their eyes."

Finn Arneson took the business so much to heart that he left the country, and went to Denmark to King Swend, where he met a friendly reception. They spoke together in private for a long time; and the end of the business was that Finn went into King Swend's service, and became his man. King Swend then gave Finn an earldom, and placed him in Hal-land, where he was long earl, and defended the country against the Northmen.

CHAPTER  
LVI.  
Of Gut-  
torm Gun-  
hildsson.

Ketil Kalf and Gunhild of Ringaness had a son called Guttorm, and he was a sister's son to King Olaf

\* The leek appears to have been held in great esteem among the Northmen for its healing qualities when applied to wounds. The meaning of the king seems to be, that his people require examples of his power always before them; for they would forget the virtue of gold or of leeks without examples.

and Harald Sigurdsson. Guttorm was a gallant man, early advanced to manhood. He was often with King Harald, who loved him much, and asked his advice; for he was of good understanding, and very popular. Guttorm had also been engaged early in forays, and had marauded much in the Western countries with a large force. Ireland was for him a land of peace; and he had his winter quarters often in Dublin, and was in great friendship with King Margad.

SAGA IX.

The summer after King Margad, and Guttorm with him, went out on an expedition against Bretland, where they made immense booty. But when the king saw the quantity of silver which was gathered he wanted to have the whole booty, and regarded little his friendship for Guttorm. Guttorm was ill pleased that he and his men should be robbed of their share; but the king said, "Thou must choose one of two things, — either to be content with what we determine, or to fight; and they shall have the booty who gain the victory: and likewise thou must give up thy ships, for them I will have." Guttorm thought there were great difficulties on both sides; for it was disgraceful to give up ships and goods without a stroke, and yet it was highly dangerous to fight the king and his force, the king having sixteen ships and Guttorm only five. Then Guttorm desired three days' time to consider the matter with his people, thinking in that time to pacify the king, and come to a better understanding with him through the mediation of others; but he could not obtain from the king what he desired. This was the day before Saint Olaf's day. Guttorm chose the condition that they would rather die or conquer like men, than suffer disgrace, contempt, and scorn, by submitting to so great a loss. He called upon God, and his uncle Saint Olaf, and entreated their help and aid; promising to give to the holy man's house the tenth of all the booty that fell to their share, if they

CHAPTER  
LVII.  
Guttorm's  
junction  
with the  
Irish king  
Margad.

## SAGA IX.

gained the victory. Then he arranged his men, placed them in battle-order against the great force, prepared for battle, and gave the assault. By the help of God, and the holy Saint Olaf, Guttorm won the battle. King Margad fell, and every man, old and young, who followed him; and after that great victory, Guttorm and all his people returned home joyfully with all the booty they had gained by the battle. Every tenth penny of the booty they had made was taken, according to the vow, to King Olaf the Saint's shrine; and there was so much silver that Guttorm had an image made of it, with rays round the head, which was the size of his own, or of his forecastle-man's head; and the image was seven feet high. The image thus produced was given by Guttorm to King Olaf the Saint's temple, where it has since remained as a memorial of Guttorm's victory and King Olaf the Saint's miracle.

CHAPTER  
LVIII.  
Miracle of  
King Olaf  
in Den-  
mark.

There was a wicked, evil-minded count in Denmark, who had a Norwegian servant-girl whose family belonged to Drontheim district. She worshipped King Olaf the Saint, and believed firmly in his sanctity. But the above-mentioned count doubted of all that was told of the holy man's miracles, insisted that it was nothing but nonsense and idle talk, and made a joke and scorn of the esteem and honour which all the country people showed the good king. Now when his holyday came, on which the mild monarch ended his life, and which all Northmen kept sacred, this unreasonable count would not observe it, but ordered his servant-girl to bake and put fire in the oven that day. She knew well the count's mad passion, and that he would revenge himself severely on her if she refused doing as he ordered. She went, therefore, of necessity, and baked in the oven, but wept much at her work; and she threatened King Olaf that she never would believe in him, if he did not avenge this

misdeed by some mischance or other. And now shall ye come to hear a well-deserved vengeance, and a true miracle. It happened, namely, in the same hour, that the count became blind of both eyes, and the bread which she had shoved into the oven was turned into stone! Of these stones some are now in Saint Olaf's temple, and in other places; and since that time Olafsmas has been always held holy in Denmark.

SAGA IX.

West in Valland\*, a man had such bad health that he became a cripple, and went on his knees and elbows. One day he was upon the road, and had fallen asleep. He dreamt that a gallant man came up to him, and asked him where he was going. When he named the neighbouring town, the man said to him, "Go to Saint Olaf's church that stands in London, and there thou shalt be cured." Thereupon he awoke, and went straightway to inquire the road to Olaf's church in London. At last he came to London Bridge, and asked the men of the castle if they could tell him where Olaf's church was; but they replied, there were so many churches that they could not tell to whom each of them was consecrated. Soon after a man came up, and asked him where he wanted to go, and he answered to Olaf's church. Then said the man, "We shall both go together to Olaf's church, for I know the way to it." Thereupon they went over the bridge to the shrine where Olaf's church was; and when they came to the gates of the churchyard the man mounted over the half-door that was in the gate, but the cripple rolled himself in, and rose up immediately sound and strong: when he looked about him his conductor had vanished.

CHAPTER  
LIX.  
King  
Olaf's  
miracle on  
a cripple.

King Harald had built a merchant town in the East at Opslo†, where he often resided; for there was good supply from the extensive cultivated district wide

CHAPTER  
LX.  
King  
Harald's  
foray in  
Denmark.

\* The west coast of France.

† Opslo is now a suburb of Christiania, on the south side of the town and bay.

SAGA IX.

around. There also he had a convenient station to defend the country against the Danes, or to make an attack upon Denmark, which he was in the custom of doing often, although he kept no great force on foot. One summer King Harald went from thence with a few light ships and a few men. He steered southwards out from Viken, and, when the wind served, stood over to Jutland, and marauded; but the country people collected and defended the country. Then King Harald steered to Lymfiord, and went into the fiord. Lymfiord is so formed that its entrance is like a narrow river; but when one gets farther into the fiord, it spreads out into a wide sea. King Harald marauded on both sides of the land; and when the Danes gathered together on every side to oppose him, he lay at a small island which was uncultivated. They wanted drink on board his ships, and went up into the island to seek water; but finding none, they reported it to the king. He ordered them to look for some long earth-worms on the island, and when they found them they brought them to the king. He ordered the people to bring the worms to a fire, and bake them before it, so that they should be thirsty. Then he ordered a thread to be tied round the tails of the worms, and to let them loose. The worms crept away immediately, while the threads were wound off from the clew as the worms took them away; and the people followed the worms until they sought downwards in the earth. There the king ordered them to dig for water, which they did, and found so much water that they had no want of it. King Harald now heard from his spies that King Swend was come with a large armament to the mouth of the fiord; but that it was too late for him to come into it, as only one ship at a time can come in. King Harald then steered with his fleet in through the fiord to where it was broadest, to a place called Lygsbreid. In the

inmost bight, there is but a narrow neck of land dividing the fiord from the West sea.\* Thither King Harald rowed with his men towards evening; and at night when it was dark he unloaded his ships, drew them over the neck of land into the West sea, loaded them again, and was ready with all this before day. He then steered northwards along the Jutland coast. People then said that Harald had escaped from the hands of the Danes. Harald said that he would come to Denmark next time with more people and larger vessels. King Harald then proceeded north to Drontheim.

SAGA IX.

King Harald remained all winter at Nidaros, and had a vessel built out upon the strand, and it was a buss.† The ship was built of the same size as the Long Serpent, and every part of her was finished with the greatest care. On the stem was a dragon-head, and on the stern a dragon-tail, and the sides of the bows of the ship were gilt. The vessel was of thirty-five rowers' benches, and was large for that size, and was remarkably handsome; for the king had every thing belonging to the ship's equipment of the best, both sails and rigging, anchors and cables.

CHAPTER  
LXI.  
King Harald had a ship built.

King Harald sent a message in winter south to Denmark to King Swend, that he should come northwards in spring; that they should meet at the Gotha river and fight, and so settle the division of the countries that the one who gained the victory should have both kingdoms. King Harald during this winter called out a general levy of all the people of Norway,

CHAPTER  
LXII.  
King Harald's challenge.

\* This narrow neck of land has, within these few years, been broken across by the North Sea; and there is now a navigable passage into the Baltic, besides that of the Sound and of the Belts, for small vessels. It has eight or ten feet water, and is used by small vessels.

† Bussu-skip. A *buss* is a word still used for a fishing-vessel. It appears to have been applied to ships of burden of greater breadth than the war-ships. (See Spelman and Du Fresne.) The buss was a three-masted ship.

SAGA IX. — and assembled a great force towards spring. Then Harald had his great ship drawn down and put into the river Nid, and set up the dragon's head on her. Thiodolf the scald sang about it thus: —

“ My lovely girl ! the sight was grand  
 When the great war-ship down the strand  
 Into the river gently slid,  
 And all below her sides was hid.  
 Come, lovely girl, and see the show ! —  
 Her sides that on the water glow,  
 Her serpent-head with golden mane,  
 All shining back from the Nid again.”

Then King Harald rigged out his ship, got ready for sea, and when he had all in order went out of the river. His men rowed very skilfully and beautifully. So says Thiodolf: —

“ It was upon a Saturday,  
 Ship-tilts were struck and stowed away,  
 And past the town our dragon glides,  
 That girls might see our glancing sides.  
 Out from the Nid brave Harald steers ;  
 Westward at first the dragon veers ;  
 Our lads together down with oars,  
 The splash is echoed round the shores.

“ Their oars our king's men handle well,  
 One stroke is all the eye can tell :  
 All level o'er the water rise ;  
 The girls look on in sweet surprise.  
 Such things, they think, can ne'er give way ;  
 They little know the battle-day.  
 The Danish girls, who dread our shout,  
 Might wish our ship-gear not so stout.

“ 'Tis in the fight, not on the wave,  
 That oars may break and fail the brave.  
 At sea, beneath the ice-cold sky,  
 Safely our oars o'er ocean ply ;  
 And when at Drontheim's holy stream  
 Our seventy oars in distance gleam,  
 We seem, while rowing from the sea,  
 An erne with iron wings to be.”

King Harald sailed south along the land, and called out the levy every where of men and ships. When they came south to Viken they got a strong wind against them, and the forces lay dispersed about in

the harbour; some in the isles outside, and some in the fiords. So says Thiodolf:—

“ The cutters’ sea-bleached bows scarce find  
A shelter from the furious wind  
Under the inland forests’ side,  
Where the fiord runs its farthest tide.  
In all the isles and creeks around  
The bonders’ ships lie on the ground,  
And ships with gunwales hung with shields  
Seek the lee-side of the green fields.”

In the heavy storm that raged for some time the great ship had need of good ground tackle. So says Thiodolf:—

“ With lofty bow above the seas,  
Which curl and fly before the breeze,  
The gallant vessel rides and reels,  
And every plunge her cable feels.  
The storm that tries the spar and mast  
Tries the main-anchor at the last:  
The storm above, below the rock,  
Chafe the thick cable with each shock.”

When the weather became favourable King Harald sailed eastwards to the Gotha river with his fleet, and arrived there in the evening. So says Thiodolf:—

“ The gallant Harald now has come  
To Gotha, half way from his home,  
And on the river frontier stands,  
To fight with Swend for life and lands.  
The night passed o’er, the gallant king  
Next day at Thumle calls a Thing,  
Where Swend is challenged to appear—  
A day which ravens wish were near.”

When the Danes heard that the Northmen’s army was come to the Gotha river\*, they all fled who had opportunity to get away. The Northmen heard that the Danish king had also called out his forces, and lay in the south, partly at Fyen and partly about Sealand. When King Harald found that King Swend would not hold a meeting with him, or a fight, ac-

CHAPTER  
LXIII.  
Of King  
Harald’s  
fleet.

\* The country round the river Gotha, as well as Scania on the north-side of the Sound, was part of the kingdom of Denmark.



## SAGA IX.

According to what had been agreed upon between them, he took the same course as before,—letting the bonder troops return home, but manning 150 ships, with which he sailed southwards along Halland, where he herried all round, and then brought up with his fleet in Lofø fiord, and laid waste the country. A little afterwards King Swend came upon them with all the Danish fleet, consisting of 300 ships. When the Northmen saw them, King Harald ordered a general meeting of the fleet to be called by sound of trumpet; and many there said it was better to fly, as it was not now advisable to fight. The king replied, “Sooner shall all lie dead one upon another than fly.” So says Stein Herdisarson : —

“ With falcon eye, and courage bright,  
Our king saw glory in the fight;  
To fly, he saw, would ruin bring  
On them and him—the folk and king.  
‘Hand up the arms to one and all!’  
Cries out the king; ‘we’ll win or fall!  
Sooner than fly, heaped on each other  
Each man shall fall across his brother!’ ”

Then King Harald drew up his ships to attack, and brought forward his great dragon in the middle of his fleet. So says Thiodolf : —

“ The brave king through his vessels’ throng  
His dragon war-ship moves along;  
He runs her gaily to the front,  
To meet the coming battle’s brunt.”

The ship was remarkably well equipt, and fully manned. So says Thiodolf : —

“ The king had got a chosen crew —  
He told his brave lads to stand true.  
The ring of shields seemed to enclose  
The ship’s deck from the boarding foes.  
The dragon, on the Nisaa flood,  
Beset with men, who thickly stood,  
Shield touching shield, was something rare,  
That seemed all force of man to dare.”

Ulf the marshal laid his ship by the side of the

king's, and ordered his men to bring her well forward. Stein Herdisarson, who was himself in Ulf's ship, sings of it thus:—

SAGA IX.

“ Our oars were stowed, our lances high,  
As the ship moved swung in the sky.  
The marshal Ulf went through our ranks,  
Drawn up beside the rowers' banks :  
The brave friend of our gallant king  
Told us our ship well on to bring,  
And fight like Norsemen in the cause—  
Our Norsemen answered with huzzas.”

Hakon Ivarsson lay outside on the other wing, and had many ships with him, all well equipped. At the extremity of the other side lay the Drontheim chiefs, who had also a great and strong force.

Swend the Danish king also drew up his fleet, and laid his ship forward in the centre against King Harald's ship, and Finn Arneson laid his ship next ; and then the Danes laid their ships, according as they were bold or well equipped. Then, on both sides, they bound the ships together all through the middle of the fleets ; but as the fleets were so large, very many ships remained loose, and each laid his ship forward according to his courage, and that was very unequal. Although the difference among the men was great, altogether there was a very great force on both sides. King Swend had six earls among the people following him. So says Stein Herdisarson :—

CHAPTER  
LXIV.  
Of King  
Swend's  
armament.

“ Danger our chief would never shun,  
With eight score ships he would not run :  
The Danish fleet he would abide,  
And give close battle side by side.  
From Leire's coast the Danish king  
Three hundred ocean steeds could bring,  
And o'er the sea-weed plain in haste  
Thought Harald's vessels would be chased.”

As soon as King Harald was ready with his fleet, he orders the war-blast to sound, and the men to row forward to the attack. So says Stein Herdisarson :—

CHAPTER  
LXV.  
Beginning  
of the battle  
of Nisaa.

## SAGA IX.

“Harald and Swend first met as foes,  
 Where Nisaa in the ocean flows;  
 For Swend would not for peace entreat,  
 But, strong in ships, would Harald meet.  
 The Norsemen prove, with sword in hand,  
 That numbers cannot skill withstand.  
 Off Halland's coast the blood of Danes  
 The blue sea's calm smooth surface stains.”

Soon the battle began, and became very sharp;  
 both kings urging on their men. So says Stein  
 Herdisarson: —

“Our king, his broad shield disregarding,  
 More keen for striking than for warding,  
 Now tells his lads their spears to throw, —  
 Now shows them where to strike a blow.  
 From fleet to fleet so short the way,  
 That stones and arrows have full play;  
 And from the keen sword dropped the blood  
 Of short-lived seamen in the flood.”

It was late in the day when the battle began, and  
 it continued the whole night. King Harald shot for  
 a long time with his bow. So says Thiodolf: —

“The Upland king was all the night  
 Speeding the arrows' deadly flight.  
 All in the dark his bow-string's twang  
 Was answered; for some white shield rang,  
 Or yelling shriek gave certain note  
 The shaft had pierced some ring-mail coat.  
 The foemen's shields and bulwarks bore  
 A Lapland arrow-scatt\* or more.”

Earl Hakon, and the people who followed him, did  
 not make fast their ships in the fleet, but rowed  
 against the Danish ships that were loose, and slew  
 the men of all the ships they came up with. When  
 the Danes observed this, each drew his ship out of  
 the way of the earl; but he set upon those who were  
 trying to escape, and they were nearly driven to  
 flight. Then a boat came rowing to the earl's ship,  
 and hailed him, and said that the other wing of King

\* The Laplanders paid their scatt, or yearly tax, in bows and arrows;  
 and the meaning of the scald appears to be, that as many as were paid in  
 a year were shot at the foe.

Harald's fleet was giving way, and many of their people had fallen. Then the earl rowed thither, and gave so severe an assault that the Danes had to retreat before him. The earl went on in this way all the night, coming forward where he was most wanted, and wheresoever he came none could stand against him. Hakon rowed outside around the battle. Towards the end of the night the greatest part of the Danish fleet broke into flight, for then King Harald with his men boarded the vessel of King Swend; and it was so completely cleared that all the crew fell in the ship, except those who sprang overboard. So says Arnor, the earl's scald:—

“ Brave Swend did not his vessel leave  
Without good cause, as I believe:  
Oft on his casque the sword-blade rang,  
Before into the sea he sprang.  
Upon the wave his vessel drives;  
All his brave crew had lost their lives.  
O'er dead courtmen into the sea  
The Jutland king had now to flee.”

And when King Swend's banner was cut down, and his ship cleared of its crew, all his forces took to flight, and some were killed. The ships which were bound together could not be cast loose, so the people who were in them sprang overboard, and some got to the other ships that were loose; and all King Swend's men who could get off rowed away, but a great many of them were slain. Where the king himself fought the ships were mostly bound together, and there were more than seventy left behind of King Swend's vessels. So says Thiodolf:—

“ Swend's ships rode proudly o'er the deep,  
When, by a single sudden sweep,  
Full seventy sail, as we are told,  
Were seized by Norway's monarch bold.”

King Harald rowed after the Danes, and pursued them; but that was not easy, for the ships lay so thick together that they scarcely could move. Earl Finn

SAGA IX. — Arneson would not flee; and being also short-sighted, was taken prisoner. So says Thiodolf:—

“To the six Danish earls who came  
To aid his force, and raise his name,  
No mighty thanks King Swend is owing  
For mighty actions of their doing.  
Finn Arneson, in battle known,  
With a stout Norse heart of his own,  
Would not take flight his life to gain,  
And in the foremost ranks was ta'en.”

CHAPTER  
LXVI.  
King  
Swend's  
flight.

Earl Hakon lay behind with his ships, while the king and the rest of the forces were pursuing the fugitives; for the earl's ships could not get forward on account of the ships which lay in the way before him. Then a man came rowing in a boat to the earl's ship, and lay at the bulwarks. The man was stout, and had on a white hat. He hailed the ship. “Where is the earl?” said he.

The earl was in the fore-hold, stopping a man's blood. The earl cast a look at the man in the hat, and asked what his name was. He answered, “Here is Vandraade\*: speak to me, earl.”

The earl leant over the ship's side to him. Then the man in the boat said, “Earl, I will accept of my life from thee, if thou wilt give it.”

Then the earl raised himself up, called two men who were friends dear to him, and said to them, “Go into the boat; bring Vandraade to the land; attend him to my friend's Karl the bonder; and tell Karl, as a token that these words come from me, that he let Vandraade have the horse which I gave to him yesterday, and also his saddle, and his son to attend him.”

Thereupon they went into the boat, and took the oars in hand, while Vandraade steered. This took place just about daybreak, while the vessels were in movement, some rowing towards the land, some

\* The unlucky, the ill-fated.

towards the sea, both small and great. Vandraade steered where he thought there was most room between the vessels; and when they came near to Norway ships the earl's men gave their names, and then they all allowed them to go where they pleased. Vandraade steered along the shore, and only set in towards the land when they had come past the crowd of ships. They then went up to Karl the bonder's farm, and it was then beginning to be light. They went into the room where Karl had just put on his clothes. The earl's men told him their message, and Karl said they must first take some food; and he set a table before them, and gave them water to wash with.

Then came the housewife into the room, and said, "I wonder why we could get no peace or rest all night with the shouting and screaming."

Karl replies, "Dost thou not know that the kings were fighting all night?"

She asked which had the best of it.

Karl answered, "The Northmen gained."

"Then," said she, "our king will have taken flight."

"Nobody knows," says Karl, "whether he has fled or is fallen."

She says, "What a useless sort of king we have! He is both slow and frightened."

Then said Vandraade, "Frightened he is not; but he is not lucky."

Then Vandraade washed his hands; but he took the towel and dried them right in the middle of the cloth. The housewife snatched the towel from him, and said, "Thou hast been taught little good; it is wasteful to wet the whole cloth at one time."

Vandraade replies, "I may yet come so far forward in the world as to be able to dry myself with the middle of the towel."

## SAGA IX.

Thereupon Karl set a table before them, and Vandraade sat down between them. They ate for a while, and then went out. The horse was saddled, and Karl's son ready to follow him with another horse. They rode away to the forest; and the earl's men returned to the boat, rowed to the earl's ship, and told the success of their expedition.

CHAPTER  
LXVII.  
Of King  
Harald.

King Harald and his men followed the fugitives only a short way, and rowed back to the place where the deserted ships lay. Then the battle-place was ransacked, and in King Swend's ship was found a heap of dead men; but the king's body was not found, although people believed for certain that he had fallen. Then King Harald had the greatest attention paid to the dead of his men, and had the wounds of the living bound up. The dead bodies of Swend's men were brought to the land, and he sent a message to the peasants to come and bury them. Then he let the booty be divided, and this took up some time. The news came now that King Swend had come to Sealand, and that all who had escaped from the battle had joined him, along with many more, and that he had a great force.

CHAPTER  
LXVIII.  
Finn Arne-  
son gets  
quarter.

Earl Finn Arneson was taken prisoner in the battle, as before related; and when he was led before King Harald, the king was very merry, and said, "Finn, we meet here now, and we met last in Norway. The Danish court has not stood very firmly by thee; and it will be a troublesome business for Northmen to drag thee, a blind old man, with them, and preserve thy life."

The earl replies, "The Northmen find it very difficult now to conquer, and it is all the worse that thou hast the command of them."

Then said King Harald, "Wilt thou accept of life and safety, although thou hast not deserved it?"

The earl replies, "Not from thee, thou dog."

The king: "Wilt thou, then, if thy relation Magnus gives thee quarter?" SAGA IX.

Magnus, King Harald's son, was then steering the ship.

The earl replies, "Can the whelp rule over life and quarter?"

The king laughed, as if he found amusement in vexing him.—"Wilt thou accept thy life, then, from thy she-relation Thora?"

The earl: "Is she here?"

"She is here," said the king.

Then Earl Finn broke out with the ugly expressions which since have been preserved, as a proof that he was so mad with rage that he could not govern his tongue:—"No wonder thou hast bit so strongly, if the mare was with thee."

Earl Finn got life and quarter, and the king kept him a while about him. But Finn was rather melancholy, and obstinate in conversation; and King Harald said, "I see, Finn, that thou dost not live willingly in company with me and thy relations; now I will give thee leave to go to thy friend King Swend."

The earl said, "I accept of the offer willingly, and the more gratefully the sooner I get away from hence."

The king afterwards let Earl Finn be landed, and the traders going to Halland received him well. King Harald sailed from thence to Norway with his fleet; and went first to Opslo, where he gave all his people leave to go home who wished to do so.

King Swend, it is told, sat in Denmark all that winter, and had his kingdom as formerly. In winter he sent men north to Halland for Karl the bonder and his wife. When Karl came the king called him to him, and asked him if he knew him, or thought he had ever seen him before.

Karl replies, "I know thee, sire, and knew thee



## SAGA IX.

before, the moment I saw thee ; and God be praised if the small help I could give was of any use to thee."

The king replies, "I have to reward thee for all the days I have to live. And now, in the first place, I will give thee any farm in Sealand thou wouldst desire to have ; and, in the next place, will make thee a great man, if thou knowest how to conduct thyself."

Karl thanked the king for his promise, and said he had now but one thing to ask.

The king asked what that was.

Karl said that he would ask to take his wife with him.

The king said, "I will not let thee do that ; but I will provide thee a far better and more sensible wife. But thy wife can keep the bonder-farm ye had before, and she will have her living from it."

The king gave Karl a great and valuable farm, and provided him a good marriage ; and he became a considerable man. This was reported far and wide, and much praised ; and thus it came to be told here north in Norway.

CHAPTER  
LXX.  
Of the talk  
of the  
court-men.

King Harald staid in Opslo the winter after the battle at Nisaa. In autumn, when the men came from the south, there was much talk and many stories about the battle which they had fought at Nisaa, and every one who had been there thought he could tell something about it. Once some of them sat in a cellar and drank, and were very merry and talkative. They talked about the Nisaa battle, and who had earned the greatest praise and renown. They all agreed that no man there had been at all equal to Earl Hakon. He was the boldest in arms, the quickest, and the most lucky : what he did was of the greatest help, and he won the battle. King Harald, in the mean time, was out in the yard, and spoke with some people. He went then to the room-door, and

said, "Every one here would now willingly be called Hakon;" and then went his way.

Earl Hakon went in winter to the Uplands, and was all winter in his domains. He was much beloved by all the Uplanders. It happened, towards spring, that some men were sitting drinking in the town, and the conversation turned, as usual, on the Nisaa battle; and some praised Earl Hakon, and some thought others as deserving of praise as he. When they had thus disputed a while, one of them said, "It is possible that others fought as bravely as the earl at Nisaa; but none, I think, has had such luck with him as he."

The others replied, that his best luck was his driving so many Danes to flight along with other men.

The same man replied, "It was a greater luck that he gave King Swend quarter."

One of the company said to him, "Thou dost not know what thou art saying."

He replied, "I know it for certain, for the man told me himself who brought the king to the land."

It went according to the old proverb, that the king has many ears. This was told the king, and he immediately ordered horses to be gathered, and rode away directly with 200 men. He rode all that night, and the following day. Then some men met them, who were riding to the town with mead and malt. In the king's retinue was a man called Gammel, who rode to one of these bonders who was an acquaintance of his, and spoke to him privately. "I will pay thee," said he, "to ride with the greatest speed, by the shortest private paths that thou knowest, to Earl Hakon, and tell him the king will kill him; for the king has got to the knowledge that Earl Hakon set King Swend on shore at Nisaa." They agreed on the payment. The bonder rode, and came to the earl just as he was sitting drinking, and had not yet gone to bed. When the bonder told his errand, the earl immediately stood

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
LXXI.  
Of the  
attempt  
to take  
Earl Ha-  
kon.

## SAGA IX.

up with all his men, had all his loose property removed from the farm to the forest, and all the people left the house in the night. When the king came he halted there all night; but Hakon rode away, and came east to Sweden to King Steinkel, and staid with him all summer. King Harald returned to the town, travelled northwards to Drontheim district, and remained there all summer; but in autumn he returned eastwards to Viken.

CHAPTER  
LXXII.  
Of Earl  
Hakon.

As soon as Earl Hakon heard the king had gone north, he returned immediately in summer to the Uplands, and remained there until the king had returned from the north. Then the earl went east into Vermeland, where he remained during the winter, and where the Swedish king gave him fiefs. For a short time in winter he went west to Raumarige with a great troop of men from Gotland and Vermeland, and received the scatt and duties from the Upland people which belonged to him, and then returned to Gotland, and remained there till spring. King Harald had his seat in Opslo all winter, and sent his men to the Uplands to demand the scatt, together with the king's land dues, and the mulcts of court; but the Uplanders said they would pay all the scatt and dues which they had to pay, to Earl Hakon as long as he was in life, and had not forfeited his life or his fief; and the king got no land dues that winter.

CHAPTER  
LXXIII.  
Agreement  
between  
King Ha-  
rald and  
King  
Swend.

This winter messengers and ambassadors went between Norway and Denmark, whose errand was that both Northmen and Danes should make peace, and a league with each other, and to ask the kings to agree to it. These messages gave favourable hopes of a peace; and the matter proceeded so far, that a meeting for peace was appointed at the Gotha river between King Harald and King Swend. When spring approached, both kings assembled many ships and

people for this meeting. So says a scald in a poem on this expedition of the kings, which begins thus:—

SAGA IX.

“ The king, who from the northern sound  
His land with war-ships girds around,  
The raven-feeder, filled the coast  
With his proud ships, a gallant host !  
The gold-tipped stems dash through the foam  
That shakes the seamen’s planked home ;  
The high wave breaks up to the mast,  
As west of Halland on they passed.

“ Harald, whose word is fixed and sure,  
Whose ships his land from foes secure,  
And Swend, whose isles maintain his fleet,  
Hasten as friends again to meet ;  
And every creek with vessels teems,—  
All Denmark men and shipping seems ;  
And all rejoice that strife will cease,  
And men meet now but to make peace.”

Here it is told that the two kings held the meeting that was agreed upon between them, and both came to the frontiers of their kingdoms. So says Halle Stride :—

“ To meet (since peace the Dane now craves)  
On to the south upon the waves  
Sailed forth our gallant northern king,  
Peace to the Danes with him to bring.  
Swend northward to his frontier hies  
To get the peace his people prize,  
And meet King Harald, whom he finds  
On land, hard used by stormy winds.”

When the kings found each other, people began at once to talk of their being reconciled. But as soon as peace was proposed, many began to complain of the damage they had sustained by herrying, robbing, and killing men ; and for a long time it did not look very like peace. It is here related :—

“ Before this meeting of the kings  
Each bonder his own losses brings,  
And loudly claims some recompence  
From his king’s foes, at their expense.  
It is not easy to make peace,  
Where noise and talking never cease :  
The bonders’ warmth may quickly spread,  
And kings be by the people led.

## SAGA IX.

“ When kings are moved, no peace is sure ;  
 For that peace only is secure  
 Which they who make it fairly make,—  
 To each side give, from each side take.  
 The kings will often rule but ill  
 Who listen to the people's will:  
 The people often have no view  
 But their own interests to pursue.”

At last the best men, and those who were the wisest, came between the kings, and settled the peace thus : — that Harald should have Norway, and Swend Denmark, according to the boundaries of old established between Denmark and Norway ; neither of them should pay to the other for any damage sustained ; the war should cease as it now stood, each retaining what he had got ; and this peace should endure as long as they were kings. This peace was confirmed by oath. Then the kings parted having, given each other hostages, as is here related : —

“ And I have heard that to set fast  
 The peace God brought about at last,  
 Swend and stern Harald pledges sent,  
 Who witnessed to their sworn intent ;  
 And much I wish that they and all  
 In no such perjury may fall  
 That this peace ever should be broken,  
 And oaths should fail before God spoken.”

King Harald with his people sailed northwards to Norway, and King Swend southwards to Denmark.

CHAPTER  
LXXIV.  
King  
Harald's  
quarrel  
with Earl  
Hakon.

King Harald was in Viken in the summer, and he sent his men to the Uplands after the scatt and duty which belonged to him ; but the bonders paid no attention to the demand, but said they would hold all for Earl Hakon until he came for it. Earl Hakon was then up in Gotland with a large armed force. When summer was past King Harald went south to Konghelle. Then he took all the light-sailing vessels he could get hold of, and steered up the river. He had the vessels drawn past all the waterfalls, and brought them thus into the Wener lake. Then he

rowed eastward across the lake to where he heard Earl Hakon was ; but when the earl got news of the king's expedition he retreated down the country, and would not let the king plunder the land. Earl Hakon had a large armed force which the Gotland people had raised for him. King Harald lay with his ships up in a river, and made a foray on land, but left some of his men behind to protect the ships. The king himself rode with a part of the men, but the greater part were on foot. They had to cross a forest, where they found a mire or lake, and close to it a wood ; and when they reached the wood they saw the earl's men, but the mire was between them. They drew up their people now on both sides. Then King Harald ordered his men to sit down on the hill-side. " We will first see if they will attack us. Earl Hakon does not usually wait to talk." It was frosty weather, with some snow-drift, and Harald's men sat down under their shields ; but it was cold for the Gotlanders, who had but little clothing with them. The earl told them to wait until King Harald came nearer, so that all would stand equally high on the ground. Earl Hakon had the same banner which had belonged to King Magnus Olafsson.

The lagman of the Gotland people, Thorvid, sat upon a horse, and the bridle was fastened to a stake that stood in the mire. He broke out with these words : " God knows we have many brave and handsome fellows here, and we shall let King Steinkel hear that we stood by the good earl bravely. I am sure of one thing : we shall behave gallantly against these Northmen, if they attack us ; but if our young people give way, and should not stand to it, let us not run farther than to that stream ; but if they should give way farther, which I am sure they will not do, let it not be farther than to that hill." At that instant the Northmen sprang up, raised the war-cry, and struck

## SAGA IX

on their shields; and the Gotland army began also to shout. The lagman's horse got shy with the war cry, and backed so hard that the stake flew up and struck the lagman on the head. He said, "Ill luck to thee, Northman, for that arrow!" and away fled the lagman. King Harald had told his people, "If we do make a clash with the weapons, we shall not, however, go down from the hill until they come nearer to us;" and they did so. When the war-cry was raised the earl let his banner advance; but when they came under the hill the king's army rushed down upon them, and killed some of the earl's people, and the rest fled. The Northmen did not pursue the fugitives long, for it was the fall of day; but they took Earl Hakon's banner, and all the arms and clothes they could get hold of. King Harald had both the banners carried before him as they marched away. They spoke among themselves that the earl had probably fallen. As they were riding through the forest they could only ride singly, one following the other. Suddenly a man came full gallop across the path, struck his spear through him who was carrying the earl's banner, seized the banner-staff, and rode into the forest on the other side with the banner. When this was told the king he said, "Bring me my armour, for the earl is alive." Then the king rode to his ships in the night; and many said that the earl had now taken his revenge. But Thiodolf sang thus:—

"Steinkel's troops, who were so bold,  
 Who the Earl Hakon would uphold,  
 Were driven by our horsemen's power  
 To Hel, death goddess, in an hour;  
 And the great earl, so men say  
 Who won't admit he ran away,  
 Because his men fled from the ground,  
 Retired, and cannot now be found."

CHAPTER  
 LXXV.  
 Death of

The rest of the night Harald passed in his ships; but in the morning, when it was daylight, it was

found that so thick ice had gathered about the vessels that one could walk around them. The king ordered his men to cut the ice from the ships all the way out to the clear water; on which they all went to break the ice. King Harald's son Magnus steered the vessel that lay lowest down the river and nearest the water. When the people had cleared the ice away almost entirely, a man ran out to the ice, and began hewing away at it like a madman. Then said one of the men, "It is going now as usual, that none can do so much as Hall who killed Kodran, when once he lays himself to the work. See how he is hewing away at the ice." There was a man in the crew of Magnus the king's son who was called Thormod Eindredsson; and when he heard the name of Kodran's murderer he ran up to Hall, and gave him a death-wound. Kodran was a son of Gudmund Eyolfsson; and Volgerd, who was a sister of Gudmund, was the mother of Jorna, and the grandmother by the mother's side of this Thormod. Thormod was a year old when Kodran was killed, and had never seen Hall Otrygsson until now. When the ice was broken all the way out to the water, Magnus drew his ship out, set sail directly, and sailed westward across the lake; but the king's ship, which lay farthest up the river, came out the last. Hall had been in the king's retinue, and was very dear to him; so that the king was enraged at his death. The king came the last into the harbour, and Magnus had let the murderer escape into the forest, and offered to pay the mulct for him; and the king had very nearly attacked Magnus and his crew, but their friends came up and reconciled them.

That winter King Harald went up to Raumarike, and had many people with him; and he accused the bonders there of having kept from him his scatt and duties, and of having aided his enemies to raise disturbance against him. He seized on the bonders, and maimed

SAGA IX.

Hall, the  
murderer of  
Kodran.CHAPTER  
LXXVI.  
Of King  
Harald.



**SAGA IX.** some, killed others, and robbed many of all their property. They who could do it fled from him. He burned every thing in the districts, and laid them altogether waste. So says Thiodolf:—

“ He who the island-people drove,  
When they against his power strove,  
Now bridles Raumarike’s men,  
Marching his forces through their glen.  
To punish them the fire he lights  
That shines afar off in dark nights  
From house and yard, and, as he says,  
Will warn the man who disobeys.”

Thereafter the king went up to Hedemark, burnt the dwellings, and made no less waste and havoc there than in Raumarike. From thence he went to Hadeland and Ringarike, burning and ravaging all the land. So says Thiodolf:—

“ The bonder’s household goods are seen  
Before his door upon the green,  
Smoking and singed; and sparks red hot  
Glow in the thatched roof of his cot.  
In Hedemark the bonders pray  
The king his crushing hand to stay;  
In Ringarike and Hadeland,  
None ’gainst his fiery wrath can stand.”

Then the bonders left all to the king’s mercy. After the death of King Magnus fifteen years had passed when the battle at Nisaa took place, and afterwards two years elapsed before Harald and Swend made peace. So says Thiodolf:—

“ The Hordland king under the land  
At anchor lay close to the strand,  
At Hvarf, prepared with shield and spear;  
But peace was settled the third year.”

After this peace the disturbances with the people of the Upland districts lasted a year and a half. So says Thiodolf:—

“ No easy task it is to say  
How the king brought beneath his sway  
The Upland bonders, and would give  
Nought but their ploughs from which to live.

The king in eighteen months brought down  
 Their bonder power, and raised his own,  
 And the great honour he has gained  
 Will still in memory be retained."

SAGA IX.

Edward, Ethelred's son, was king of England after his brother Hardacanute. He was called Edward the Good; and so he was. King Edward's mother was Queen Emma, daughter of Richard earl of Rouen. Her brother was Earl Robert, whose son was William the Bastard, who at that time was earl at Rouen in Normandy. King Edward's queen was Gyda\*, a daughter of Earl Godwin the son of Ulfnad.† Gyda's brothers were, Earl Toste‡, the eldest; Earl Maurokari§ the next; Earl Walter|| the third; Earl Swend the fourth; and the fifth was Harald, who was the youngest, and he was brought up at King Edward's court, and was his foster-son. The king loved him very much, and kept him as his own son¶; for he had no children.

CHAPTER  
LXXVII.  
Of the  
kings of  
England.

One summer it happened that Harald, the son of Godwin, made an expedition to Bretland\*\* with his ships; but when they got to sea they met a contrary wind, and were driven off into the ocean. They landed west in Normandy, after suffering from a dangerous storm. They brought up at Rouen, where

CHAPTER  
LXXXVIII.  
Of Harald  
Godwins-  
son.

\* She is called Githa and Editha by English writers. See Rapin, vol. i. p. 142.

† Earl Godwin was the son of Ulfnoth; the same name as Ulfnad.

‡ Harald, and not Toste, was the eldest son of Earl Godwin, according to our English historians; but the enmity of Toste and others at his assuming the royal title is better accounted for by supposing he was the youngest, and the foster-son of King Edward.

§ Earl Morcar, as he is called in English history, was not Harald's brother, but the brother of his wife only.

|| Earl Walter was not a son of Earl Godwin, but of Siward, earl of Northumberland.

¶ This does not agree with the account of our historians, who say that King Edward favoured Edgar, son of his brother Edmund, who was brought up in Hungary.

\*\* This expedition has been against Wales — Bretland — by the context.

## SAGA IX.

they met Earl William, who received Harald and his company gladly. Harald remained there late in harvest, and was hospitably entertained; for the stormy weather continued, and there was no getting to sea, and this continued until winter set in; so the earl and Harald agreed that he should remain there all winter. Harald sat on the high seat on one side of the earl; and on the other side sat the earl's wife, one of the most beautiful women that could be seen. They often talked together for amusement at the drinking-table; and the earl went generally to bed, but Harald and the earl's wife sat long in the evenings talking together, and so it went on for a great part of the winter. In one of their conversations she said to Harald, "The earl has asked me what it is we have to talk about so much, for he is angry at it." Harald replies, "We shall then at once let him know all our conversation." The following day, Harald asked the earl to a conference, and they went together into the conference-chamber; where also the queen was, and some of the councillors. Then Harald began thus:—"I have to inform you, earl, that there lies more in my visit here than I have let you know. I would ask your daughter in marriage, and have often spoken over this matter with her mother, and she has promised to support my suit with you." As soon as Harald had made known this proposal of his, it was well received by all who were present. They explained the case to the earl; and at last it came so far, that the girl was contracted to Harald; but as she was very young, it was resolved that the wedding should be deferred for some years.

CHAPTER  
LXXIX.  
King  
Edward's  
death.

When spring came Harald rigged his ships, and set off; and he and the earl parted with great friendship. Harald sailed over to England to King Edward, but did not return to Valland to fulfil the marriage agreement. Edward was king over England for twenty-

three years, and died\* on a bed of sickness in London on the 5th of January, and was buried in Paul's church. Englishmen call him a saint.

The sons of Earl Godwin were the most powerful men in England. Toste was made chief of the English king's army, and was his land-defence man when the king began to grow old; and he was also placed above all the other earls. His brother Harald was always with the court itself, and nearest to the king in all service, and had the charge of the king's treasure-chamber. It is said that when the king was approaching his last hour, Harald and a few others were with him. Harald first leant down over the king, and then said, "I take you all to witness that the king has now given me the kingdom, and all the realm of England:" and then the king was taken dead out of the bed. The same day there was a meeting of the chiefs, at which there was some talk of choosing a king; and then Harald brought forward his witnesses that King Edward had given him the kingdom on his dying day. The meeting ended by choosing Harald as king, and he was consecrated and crowned the 13th day of Yule, in Paul's church. Then all the chiefs and all the people submitted to him. Now when his brother Earl Toste heard of this he took it very ill, as he thought himself quite as well entitled to be king. "I want," said he, "that the principal men of the country choose him whom they think best fitted for it." And sharp words passed between the brothers. King Harald says he will not give up his kingly dignity, for he is seated on the throne which kings sat upon, and is anointed and consecrated a king. On his side also was the strength of the people, for he had the king's whole treasure.

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
LXXX.  
Harald  
Godwins-  
son made  
king of  
England.

\* In the year 1066, according to the Saxon Chronicle.

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
LXXXI.  
Earl  
Toste's  
expedition  
to Den-  
mark.

Now when King Harald perceived that his brother Toste wanted to have him deprived of the kingdom, he did not trust him ; for Toste was a clever man, and a great warrior, and was in friendship with the principal men of the country. He therefore took the command of the army from Toste, and also all the power he had beyond that of the other earls of the country. Earl Toste, again, would not submit to be his own brother's serving-man ; therefore he went with his people over the sea to Flanders, and staid there a while, then went to Friesland, and from thence to Denmark to his relation King Swend. Earl Ulf, King Swend's father, and Gyda, Earl Toste's mother, were brother's and sister's children. The earl now asked King Swend for support and help of men ; and King Swend invited him to stay with him, with the promise that he should get so large an earldom in Denmark that he would be an important chief.

The earl replies, " My inclination is to go back to my estate in England ; but if I cannot get help from you for that purpose, I will agree to help you with all the power I can command in England, if you will go there with the Danish army, and win the country, as Canute your mother's brother did."

The king replied, " So much smaller a man am I than Canute the Great, that I can with difficulty defend my own Danish dominions against the Northmen. King Canute, on the other hand, got the Danish kingdom in heritage, took England by slash and blow, and sometimes was near losing his life in the contest ; and Norway he took without slash or blow. Now it suits me much better to be guided by my own slender ability, than to imitate my relation King Canute's lucky hits."

Then Earl Toste said, " The result of my errand here is less fortunate than I expected of thee who art so gallant a man, seeing that thy relative is in so

great need. It may be that I will seek friendly help where it could less be expected; and that I may find a chief who is less afraid, king, than thou art of a great enterprise."

Then the king and the earl parted, not just the best friends.

Earl Toste turned away then, and went to Norway, where he presented himself to King Harald, who was at that time in Viken. When they met the earl explained his errand to the king. He told him all his proceedings since he left England, and asked his aid to recover his dominions in England.

The king replied, that the Northmen had no great desire for a campaign in England, and to have English chiefs over them there. "People say," added he, "that the English are not to be trusted."

The earl replied, "Is it true what I have heard people tell in England, that thy relative King Magnus sent men to King Edward with the message that King Magnus had right to England as well as to Denmark, and had got that heritage after Hardacanute, in consequence of a regular agreement?"

The king replied, "How came it that he did not get it, if he had right to it?"

"Why," replied the earl, "hast thou not Denmark, as King Magnus thy predecessor had it?"

The king replies, "the Danes have nothing to brag of over us Northmen; for many a place have we laid in ashes to thy relations."

Then said the earl, "If thou wilt not tell me, I will tell thee. Magnus subdued Denmark, because all the chiefs of the country helped him; and thou hast not done it, because all the people of the country were against thee. Therefore, also, King Magnus did not strive for England, because all the nation would have Edward for king. Wilt thou take England now? I will bring the matter so far

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
LXXXII.  
Earl  
Toste's  
expedition  
to Norway.

**SAGA IX.** that most of the principal men in England shall be thy friends, and assist thee; for nothing is wanting to place me at the side of mybrother Harald but the king's name. All men allow that there never was such a warrior in the northern lands as thou art; and it appears to me extraordinary that thou hast been fighting for fifteen years for Denmark, and wilt not take England that lies open to thee."

King Harald weighed carefully the earl's words, and perceived at once that there was truth in much of what he said; and he himself had also a great desire to acquire dominions. Then King Harald and the earl talked long and frequently together; and at last he took the resolution to proceed in summer to England, and conquer the country. King Harald sent a message-token through all Norway, and ordered out a levy of one half of all the men in Norway able to carry arms. When this became generally known, there were many guesses about what might be the end of this expedition. Some reckoned up King Harald's great achievements, and thought he was also the man who could accomplish this. Others, again, said that England was difficult to attack; that it was very full of people; and the men-at-arms, who were called Thing-men, were so brave, that one of them was better than two of Harald's best men. Then said Ulf the marshal:—

"I am still ready gold to gain;  
But truly it would be in vain,  
And the king's marshal in the hall  
Might leave his good post once for all,  
If two of us in any strife  
Must from one Thingman fly for life.  
My lovely Norse maid, in my youth  
We thought the opposite the truth."

Ulf the marshal died that spring. King Harald stood over his grave, and said, as he was leaving it, "There lies now the truest of men, and the most devoted to his king."

Earl Toste sailed in spring west to Flanders, to meet the people who had left England with him, and others besides who had gathered to him both out of England and Flanders.

SAGA IX.

King Harald's fleet assembled in Solundir.\* When King Harald was ready to leave Nidaros he went to King Olaf's shrine, unlocked it, clipped his hair and nails, and locked the shrine again, and threw the keys into the Nid. Some say he threw them overboard outside of Agdaness; and since then the shrine of Saint Olaf the king has never been opened. Thirty-five years had passed since he was slain; and he lived thirty-five years here on earth. King Harald sailed with the ships he had about him to the south to meet his people, and a great fleet was collected; so that, according to the people's reckoning, King Harald had nearly 200 ships, besides provision-ships and small craft.

CHAPTER  
LXXXIII.  
Gyrder's  
dream.

While they lay in Solundir a man called Gyrder, on board the king's ship, had a dream. He thought he was standing in the king's ship, and saw a great witch-wife standing on the island, with a fork in one hand and a trough in the other. He thought also that he saw over all the fleet, and that a fowl was sitting upon every ship's stern, and that these fowls were all ravens or ernes; and the witch-wife sang this song:—

“ From the east I'll 'tice the king,  
To the west the king I'll bring;  
Many a noble bone will be  
In battle left for me.  
Ravens o'er Ginke's\* ship are flitting,  
Eyeing the prey they think most fitting.  
Upon the stem I'll sail with them!  
Upon the stem I'll sail with them!”

---

\* Solundir, the Sulen Isles, at the mouth of Sogne fiord.

† Ginke, a celebrated viking. Here Ginke's ship means Harald's, the leader of the army.



## SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
LXXXIV.  
Thord's  
dream.

There was also a man called Thord, in a ship which lay not far from the king's. He dreamt one night that he saw King Harald's fleet coming to land, and he knew the land to be England. He saw a great battle-array on the land; and he thought both sides began to fight, and had many banners flapping in the air. And before the army of the people of the country was riding a huge witch-wife upon a wolf; and the wolf had a man's carcass in his mouth, and the blood was dropping from his jaws; and when he had eaten up one body she threw another into his mouth, and so one after another, and he swallowed them all. And she sang thus:—

“ Skade's eagle eyes  
The king's ill luck espies;  
Though glancing shields  
Hide the green fields,  
The king's ill luck she spies.  
To bode the doom of this great king,  
The flesh of bleeding men I fling  
To hairy jaw and hungry maw!  
To hairy jaw and hungry maw!”

CHAPTER  
LXXXV.  
King  
Harald's  
dream.

King Harald also dreamt one night that he was in Nidaros, and met his brother King Olaf, who sang to him these verses:—

“ In many a fight  
My name was bright;  
Men weep, and tell  
How Olaf fell.  
Thy death is near;  
Thy corpse, I fear,  
The crow will feed,  
The witch-wife's steed.”

Many other dreams and forebodings were then told of, and most of them gloomy. Before King Harald left Drontheim, he let his son Magnus be proclaimed king, and set him as king over Norway while he was absent. Thora, the daughter of Thorberg, also remained behind; but he took with him Queen Elisof

and her two daughters, Maria and Ingigerd. Olaf, King Harald's son, also accompanied his father abroad.

SAGA IX.

When King Harald was clear for sea, and the wind became favourable, he sailed out into the ocean; and he himself landed in Shetland, but a part of his fleet in the Orkney Islands. King Harald stopped but a short time in Shetland before sailing to Orkney, from whence he took with him a great armed force, and the earls Paul and Erling, the sons of Earl Thorfinn; but he left behind him here the Queen Ellisof, and her daughters Maria and Ingigerd. Then he sailed, leaving Scotland and England westward of him, and landed at a place called Kliffönd.\* There he went on shore and plundered, and brought the country in subjection to him without opposition. Then he brought up at Skardaborg†, and fought with the people of the place. He went up a hill which is there, and made a great pile upon it, which he set on fire; and when the pile was in clear flame, his men took large forks and pitched the burning wood down into the town, so that one house caught fire after the other, and the town surrendered. The Northmen killed many people there, and took all the booty they could lay hold of. There was nothing left for the Englishmen now, if they would preserve their lives, but to submit to King Harald; and thus he subdued the country wherever he came. Then the king proceeded south along the land, and brought up at Hellorness‡, where there came a force that had been assembled to oppose him, with which he had a battle, and gained the victory.

CHAPTER  
LXXXVI.  
Battle at  
Scarbo-  
rough.

Thereafter the king sailed to the Humber, and up along the river, and then he landed. Up in Jorvik§ were two earls, Earl Mauro-kaare||, and his bro-

CHAPTER  
LXXXVII.  
Of Harald's  
order of  
battle.

\* Cleveland.

† Scarborough.

‡ Holderness.

§ York.

|| Morcar, or Morcad, in our histories.

## SAGA IX.

ther Earl Walthiof of Hundatunir \*, and they had an immense army. While the army of the earls was coming down from the upper part of the country, King Harald lay in the Usa.† King Harald now went on the land, and drew up his men. The one arm of his line stood at the outer edge of the river, the other turned up towards the land along a ditch; and there was also a morass, deep, broad, and full of water. The earls let their army proceed slowly down along the river, with all their troops in line. The king's banner was next the river, where the line was thickest. It was thinnest at the ditch, where also the weakest of the men were. When the earls advanced downwards along the ditch, the arm of the Northmen's line which was at the ditch gave way; and the Englishmen followed, thinking the Northmen would fly. The banner of Earl Mauro-kaare advanced then bravely.

CHAPTER  
LXXXVIII.  
The battle  
at the  
Humber.

When King Harald saw that the English array had come to the ditch against him, he ordered the charge to be sounded, and urged on his men. He ordered the banner which was called the Land-ravager to be carried before him, and made so severe an assault that all had to give way before it; and there was a great loss among the men of the earls, and they soon broke into flight, some running up the river, some down, and the most leaping into the ditch, which was so filled with dead that the Norsemen could go dry-foot over the fen. There Earl Mauro-kaare fell. So says Stein Herdisarson:—

“ The gallant Harald drove along,  
Flying but fighting, the whole throng.  
At last, confused, they could not fight,  
And the whole body took to flight.  
Up from the river's silent stream  
At once rose desperate splash and scream;

---

\* Huntington.

† The Ouse.

But they who stood like men this fray  
Round Mauro-kaare's\* body lay."

SAGA IX.

This song was composed by Stein Herdisarson about Olaf, son of King Harald; and he speaks of Olaf being in this battle with King Harald his father. These things are also spoken of in the song called "Harald's Stave:"—

"Earl Walthiof's men  
Lay in the fen,  
By sword down hewed,  
So thickly strewed,  
That Norsemen say  
They paved a way  
Across the fen  
For the brave Norsemen."

Earl Walthiof, and the people who escaped, fled up to the castle in York; and there the greatest loss of men had been. This battle took place upon the Wednesday next Mathias' day.†

Earl Toste had come from Flanders to King Harald as soon as he arrived in England, and the earl was present at all these battles. It happened, as he had foretold the king at their first meeting, that in England many people would flock to them, as being friends and relations of Earl Toste, and thus the king's forces were much strengthened. After the battle now told of, all people in the nearest districts submitted to Harald, but some fled. Then the king advanced to take the castle, and laid his army at Stafnfurdo-bryggia ‡; and as King Harald had gained so great a victory against so great chiefs and so great an army, the people were dismayed, and doubted if they could make any opposition. The men of the castle therefore determined,

CHAPTER  
LXXXIX.  
Of Earl  
Toste.

\* This appears to be a mistake of Snorro, or of the scald Stein Herdisarson. Mauro-kaare was not slain in this battle of Battlebridge. (See Torfæus, *Histor. Norv.* pt. iii. p. 308.) Mauro-kaare, or Morcad and Walthiof, were not brothers, as stated in chap. 87. Morcad's brother was Edwin, earl of Mercia.

† Saint Matthew's Day is the 20th September.

‡ Stanford Bridge.

SAGA IX.

in a council, to send a message to King Harald, and deliver up the castle into his power. All this was soon settled; so that on Sunday the king proceeded with the whole army to the castle, and appointed a Thing of the people without the castle, at which the people of the castle were to be present. At this Thing all the people accepted the condition of submitting to Harald, and gave him, as hostages, the children of the most considerable persons; for Earl Toste was well acquainted with all the people of that town. In the evening the king returned down to his ships, after this victory achieved with his own force, and was very merry. A Thing was appointed within the castle early on Monday morning, and then King Harald was to name officers to rule over the town, to give out laws, and bestow fiefs. The same evening, after sunset, King Harald Godwinsson came from the south to the castle with a numerous army, and rode into the city with the good-will and consent of the people of the castle. All the gates and walls were beset so that the Northmen could receive no intelligence, and the army remained all night in the town.

CHAPTER  
XC.  
Of King  
Harald's  
landing.

On Monday, when King Harald Sigurdsson had taken breakfast, he ordered the trumpets to sound for going on shore. The army accordingly got ready, and he divided the men into the parties who should go, and who should stay behind. In every division he allowed two men to land, and one to remain behind. Earl Toste and his retinue prepared to land with King Harald; and, for watching the ships, remained behind the king's son Olaf; the earls of Orkney, Paul and Erlend; and also Eystein Orre, a son of Thorberg Arneson, who was the most able and best beloved by the king of all the lendemen, and to whom the king had promised his daughter Maria. The weather was uncommonly fine, and it was hot sunshine. The men therefore laid aside their armour, and went on

the land only with their shields, helmets, and spears, and girt with swords; and many had also arrows and bows, and all were very merry. Now as they came near the castle a great army seemed coming against them, and they saw a cloud of dust as from horses' feet, and under it shining shields and bright armour. The king halted his people, and called to him Earl Toste, and asked him what army this could be. The earl replied, that he thought it most likely to be a hostile army; but possibly it might be some of his relations who were seeking for mercy and friendship, in order to obtain certain peace and safety from the king. Then the king said, "We must all halt, to discover what kind of a force this is." They did so; and the nearer this force came the greater it appeared, and their shining arms were to the sight like glancing ice.

SAGA IX.

Then said King Harald, "Let us now fall upon some good sensible counsel; for it is not to be concealed that this is an hostile army, and the king himself without doubt is here."

CHAPTER  
XCI.  
Of Earl  
Toste's  
counsel.

Then said the earl, "The first counsel is to turn about as fast as we can to our ships to get our men and our weapons, and then we will make a defence according to our ability; or otherwise let our ships defend us, for there these horsemen have no power over us."

Then King Harald said, "I have another counsel. Put three of our best horses under three of our briskest lads, and let them ride with all speed to tell our people to come quickly to our relief. The Englishmen shall have a hard fray of it before we give ourselves up for lost."

The earl said the king must order in this, as in all things, as he thought best; adding, at the same time, it was by no means his wish to fly. Then King Harald

SAGA IX.  
CHAPTER  
XCII.  
Of King  
Harald's  
array.

ordered his banner Land-ravager to be set up; and Frirek was the name of him who bore the banner.

Then King Harald arranged his army, and made the line of battle long, but not deep. He bent both wings of it back, so that they met together; and formed a wide ring equally thick all round, shield to shield, both in the front and rear ranks. The king himself and his retinue were within the circle; and there was the banner, and a body of chosen men. Earl Toste, with his retinue, was at another place, and had a different banner. The army was arranged in this way, because the king knew that horsemen were accustomed to ride forwards with great vigour, but to turn back immediately. Now the king ordered that his own and the earl's attendants should ride forwards where it was most required. "And our bowmen," said he, "shall be near to us; and they who stand in the first rank shall set the spear-shaft on the ground, and the spear-point against the horseman's breast, if he rides at them; and those who stand in the second rank shall set the spear-point against the horse's breast."

CHAPTER  
XCIII.  
Of King  
Harald  
Godwinson.

King Harald Godwinsson had come with an immense army, both of cavalry and infantry. Now King Harald Sigurdsson rode around his array, to see how every part was drawn up. He was upon a black horse, and the horse stumbled under him, so that the king fell off. He got up in haste, and said, "A fall is lucky for a traveller."

The English king Harald said to the Northmen who were with him, "Do ye know the stout man who fell from his horse, with the blue kirtle and the beautiful helmet?"

"That is the king himself," said they.

The English king said, "A great man, and of stately appearance is he; but I think his luck has left him."

CHAPTER  
XCIV.  
Of the

Twenty horsemen rode forward from the Thingmen's troops against the Northmen's array; and all

of them, and likewise their horses, were clothed in armour. SAGA IX.

One of the horsemen said, "Is Earl Toste in this army?" troop of the nobility.

The earl answered, "It is not to be denied that ye will find him here."

The horseman says, "Thy brother King Harald sends thee salutation, with the message that thou shalt have the whole of Northumberland; and rather than thou shouldst not submit to him, he will give thee the third part of his kingdom to rule over along with himself."

The earl replies, "This is something different from the enmity and scorn he offered last winter; and if this had been offered then it would have saved many a man's life who now is dead, and it would have been better for the kingdom of England. But if I accept of this offer, what will he give King Harald Sigurdsson for his trouble?"

The horseman replied, "He has also spoken of this; and will give him seven feet of English ground, or as much more as he may be taller than other men."

"Then," said the earl, "go now and tell King Harald to get ready for battle; for never shall the Northmen say with truth that Earl Toste left King Harald Sigurdsson to join his enemy's troops, when he came to fight west here in England. We shall rather all take the resolution to die with honour, or to gain England by a victory."

Then the horsemen rode back.

King Harald Sigurdsson said to the earl, "Who was the man who spoke so well?"

The earl replied, "That was King Harald Godwinson."

Then said King Harald Sigurdsson, "That was by far too long concealed from me; for they had come so near to our army, that this Harald should never have carried back the tidings of our men's slaughter."



## SAGA IX.

Then said the earl, "It was certainly imprudent for such chiefs, and it may be as you say; but I saw he was going to offer me peace and a great dominion, and that, on the other hand, I would be his murderer if I betrayed him; and I would rather he should be my murderer than I his, if one of two be to die."

King Harald Sigurdsson observed to his men, "That was but a little man, yet he sat firmly in his stirrups."

It is said that Harald made these verses at this time:—

"Advance! advance!  
No helmets glance,  
But blue swords play  
In our array.  
Advance! advance!  
No mail-coats glance,  
But hearts are here  
That ne'er knew fear."

His coat of mail was called Emma; and it was so long that it reached almost to the middle of his leg, and so strong that no weapon ever pierced it. Then said King Harald Sigurdsson, "These verses are but ill composed; I must try to make better;" and he composed the following:—

"In battle-storm we seek no lee,  
With skulking head, and bending knee,  
Behind the hollow shield.  
With eye and hand we fend the head;  
Courage and skill stand in the stead  
Of panzer, helm, and shield,  
In Hilda's bloody field."

Thereupon Thiodolf sang:—

"And should our king in battle fall,—  
A fate that God may give to all,—  
His sons will vengeance take;  
And never shone the sun upon  
Two nobler eaglets in his run,  
And them we'll ne'er forsake."

Now the battle began. The Englishmen made a hot assault upon the Northmen, who sustained it bravely. It was no easy matter for the English to ride against the Northmen on account of their spears; therefore they rode in a circle around them. And the fight at first was but loose and light, as long as the Northmen kept their order of battle; for although the English rode hard against the Northmen, they gave way again immediately, as they could do nothing against them. Now when the Northmen thought they perceived that the enemy were making but weak assaults, they set after them, and would drive them into flight; but when they had broken their shield-rampart the Englishmen rode up from all sides, and threw arrows and spears on them. Now when King Harald Sigurdsson saw this, he went into the fray where the greatest crash of weapons was; and there was a sharp conflict, in which many people fell on both sides. King Harald then was in a rage, and ran out in front of the array, and hewed down with both hands; so that neither helmet nor armour could withstand him, and all who were nearest gave way before him. It was then very near with the English that they had taken to flight. So says Arnor, the earl's scald:—

“Where battle-storm was ringing,  
Where arrow-cloud was singing,  
Harald stood there,  
Of armour bare,  
His deadly sword still swinging.  
The foemen feel its bite;  
His Norsemen rush to fight,  
Danger to share  
With Harald there,  
Where steel on steel was ringing.”

King Harald Sigurdsson was hit by an arrow in the windpipe, and that was his death-wound. He fell, and all who had advanced with him, except those who retired with the banner. There was after-

SAGA IX.  
CHAPTER  
XCV.  
Of the  
beginning  
of the  
battle.

CHAPTER  
XCVI.  
Fall of  
King  
Harald

## SAGA IX

wards the warmest conflict, and Earl Toste had taken charge of the king's banner. They began on both sides to form their array again, and for a long time there was a pause in fighting. Then Thiodolf sang these verses:—

“The army stands in hushed dismay;  
Stilled is the clamour of the fray.  
Harald is dead, and with him goes  
The spirit to withstand our foes.  
A bloody scatt the folk must pay  
For their king's folly on this day.  
He fell; and now, without disguise,  
We say this business was not wise.”

But before the battle began again Harald Godwinsson offered his brother Earl Toste peace, and also quarter to the Northmen who were still alive; but the Northmen called out all of them together that they would rather fall, one across the other, than accept of quarter from the Englishmen. Then each side set up a war-shout, and the battle began again. So says Arnor, the earl's scald:—

“The king, whose name would ill-doers scare,  
The gold-tipped arrow would not spare.  
Unhelmed, unpanzered, without shield,  
He fell among us in the field.  
The gallant men who saw him fall  
Would take no quarter; one and all  
Resolved to die with their loved king,  
Around his corpse in a corpse-ring.”

CHAPTER  
XCVII.  
Skirmish of  
Orre.

Eystein Orre came up at this moment from the ships with the men who followed him, and all were clad in armour. Then Eystein got King Harald's banner Land-ravager; and now was, for the third time, one of the sharpest of conflicts, in which many Englishmen fell, and they were near to taking flight. This conflict is called Orre's storm. Eystein and his men had hastened so fast from the ships that they were quite exhausted, and scarcely fit to fight before they came into the battle; but afterwards they became so furious, that they did not guard themselves with

their shields as long as they could stand upright. At last they threw off their coats of ring-mail, and then the Englishmen could easily lay their blows at them; and many fell from weariness, and died without a wound. Thus almost all the chief men fell among the Norway people. This happened towards evening; and then it went, as one might expect, that all had not the same fate, for many fled, and were lucky enough to escape in various ways; and darkness fell before the slaughter was altogether ended.

Styrkar, King Harald Sigurdsson's marshal, a gallant man, escaped upon a horse, on which he rode away in the evening. It was blowing a cold wind, and Styrkar had not much other clothing upon him but his shirt, and had a helmet on his head, and a drawn sword in his hand. As soon as his weariness was over, he began to feel cold. A waggoner met him in a lined skin-coat. Styrkar asks him, "Wilt thou sell thy coat, friend?"

SAGA IX.

CHAPTER  
XCVIII.  
Of Styrkar  
the mar-  
shal.

"Not to thee," says the peasant: "thou art a Northman; that I can hear by thy tongue."

Styrkar replies, "If I were a Northman, what wouldst thou do?"

"I would kill thee," replied the peasant; "but, as ill luck would have it, I have no weapon just now by me that would do it."

Then Styrkar says, "As you can't kill me, friend, I shall try if I can't kill you." And with that he swung his sword, and struck him on the neck, so that his head came off. He then took the skin-coat, sprang on his horse, and rode down to the strand.

Olaf Haraldsson had not gone on land with the others, and when he heard of his father's fall he made ready to sail away with the men who remained.

When the Earl of Rouen, William the Bastard, heard of his relation King Edward's death, and also that Harald Godwinsson was chosen, crowned, and

CHAPTER  
XCIX.  
Of William  
the Bas-  
tard.

## SAGA IX.

consecrated king of England, it appeared to him that he had a better right to the kingdom of England than Harald, by reason of the relationship between him and King Edward.\* He thought, also, that he had grounds for avenging the affront that Harald had put upon him with respect to his daughter. From all these grounds William gathered together a great army in Normandy, and had many men, and sufficient transport-shipping. The day that he rode out of the castle to his ships, and had mounted his horse, his wife came to him, and wanted to speak with him; but when he saw her he struck at her with his heel, and set his spurs so deep into her breast that she fell down dead†; and the earl rode on to his ships, and went with his ships over to England. His brother, Archbishop Otto, was with him; and when the earl came to England he began to plunder, and take possession of the land as he came along. Earl William was stouter and stronger than other men; a great horseman and warrior, but somewhat stern; and a very sensible man, but not considered a man to be relied on.

CHAPTER  
C.  
Fall of  
King  
Harald  
Godwinson.

King Harald Godwinsson gave King Harald Sigurdson's son Olaf leave to go away, with the men who had followed him and had not fallen in battle; but he himself turned round with his army to go south, for he had heard that William the Bastard was overwhelming the south of England with a vast army, and was subduing the country for himself. With King Harald went his brothers Swend and Gyrd, and Earl Walthiof. King Harald and Earl William

\* The relationship here alluded to is that Emma, the wife of Ethelred and mother of Edward the Confessor, was a sister of William, and that he, as uncle of Edward, was nearer than Harald in relationship; but this is evidently an error of Snorro. William's father was Robert Longspear, son of Richard; and Emma was Richard's daughter, and aunt, not sister, of William.

† This story is false, or relates to some concubine; for William's queen, Matilda, was crowned in London.

met each other south in England at Helsingja-port.\* There was a great battle, in which King Harald and his brother Earl Gyrder and a great part of his men fell. This was the nineteenth day after the fall of King Harald Sigurdsson. Harald's brother, Earl Walthiof, escaped by flight, and towards evening fell in with a division of William's people, consisting of 100 men; and when they saw Earl Walthiof's troop they fled to a wood. Earl Walthiof set fire to the wood, and they were all burnt. So says Thorkel Skallason in Walthiof's ballad:—

SAGA IX.

“Earl Walthiof the brave  
His foes a warning gave:  
Within the blazing grove  
A hundred men he drove.  
The wolf will soon return,  
And the witch's horse will burn  
Her sharp claws in the ash,  
To taste the Frenchman's flesh.”

William was proclaimed king of England. He sent a message to Earl Walthiof that they should be reconciled, and gave him assurance of safety to come to the place of meeting. The earl set out with a few men; but when he came to a heath north of Kastala-bryggia†, there met him two officers of King William, with many followers, who took him prisoner, put him in fetters, and afterwards he was beheaded; and the English call him a saint. Thorkel tells of this:—

CHAPTER  
CL.  
Earl  
Walthiof's  
death.

“William came o'er the sea,  
With bloody sword came he:  
Cold heart and bloody hand  
Now rule the English land.

---

\* Helsingja-port — Hastings.

† Kastala-bryggia may be Boroughbridge. According to the Saxon Chronicle, Earl Walthiof was executed at Winchelsea in the year 1076 for an alleged conspiracy, and his body was interred at Croyland. This is ten years after William's accession to the crown of England. He had been taken into favour by William, and sent to command in Northumberland, and made prisoner for a conspiracy in which he was accused of taking part. The Saxon Chronicle is certainly much better authority than the saga for the dates of historical events in England.

## SAGA IX.

Earl Walthiof he slew,—  
Walthiof the brave and true.  
Cold heart and bloody hand  
Now rule the English land."

William was after this king of England for twenty-one years, and his descendants have been so ever since. William died in his bed in Normandy, and after him his son William the Red was king there for fourteen years. Then Henry his brother took the kingdom. He was a son of William the First.

CHAPTER  
CII.  
Family  
register.

\* William's father was Robert Longspear; his father was Richard son of Richard, who was son of William the son of Hrolf Ganger, who first conquered Normandy. All these, one after the other, were Rouen earls; that is, counts of Rothemage † in Normandy. Hrolf Ganger was a son of Rognvald, earl of Møre in Norway, a brother of Earl Thorer the Silent, and of Torf Einar the earl of Orkney who killed Halfdan Haaleg because he had killed his father Rognvald earl of Møre, as is related in the Saga of Harald Haarfager. King Ethelred of England was married to Queen Emma, a sister of William the Bastard of Normandy ‡, and had two sons by her, Edward and Edmund §,

\* This chapter, says Thorlacius, is only to be found in the Heimskringla of Peringskiold, and is therefore suspected to be an interpolation of the saga transcriber, whose manuscript Peringskiold used.

† Rothemagi, Rothemadun, Ruda, Rudaborg, are the names given to Rouen, and its territory Normandy; and William the Conqueror and his predecessors are called by their contemporaries Ruda-Jarlar, — Earls of Rouen. The following is the succession of this genealogy:—1. Rognvald, earl of Møre in Norway. 2. Hrolf Ganger, conqueror of Normandy. 3. William: in his time the language of the Northmen was not used at Rouen, for he sent his son Richard to Bayeux to learn it. Normandy was a conquest, not a colony. (See Gibbon, chapter lvi. note.) 4. Richard. 5. Richard his son, the father of Emma. 6. Robert Longspear. 7. William the Conqueror.

‡ This is a mistake. Emma, the queen of Ethelred, and afterwards of Canute, was not the sister, but the aunt by the father's side, of William the Conqueror, according to the Saxon Chronicle.

§ It was not Edmund the king who was expelled by Canute, but his son Edmund. King Edmund died, or was cut off by Duke Eodric, in 1016.

who after him were kings of England, but afterwards were driven out by Canute the Great of Denmark; and Jatward, or Edward the Saint\*, was king of England after Hardacanute. Canute the Great married Emma after the death of Ethelred, and had by her Harald† and Hardacanute, or Hardaknut. King Edward was married to Gyda daughter of Earl Godwin, and a grand-daughter of Thorkel Sprakaleg, and sister's daughter to the Danish king Swend Ulfsson. As she and King Edward had no children, her brother Harald took the kingdom after King Edward, and thus came England out of the family of Ethelred the Good. Harald Godwinsson had been king of England nine months and a half‡ when he fell, and there was none remaining of Earl Godwin's descendants but Earl Toste's sons Ketil and Skule, and Gyde the daughter of Harald. She was married to Valdemar king of Novogorod, a son of Jarisleif and Queen Ingigerd, who was a daughter of King Olaf the Swede. By her he had King Harald, who was married to Christina, a daughter of King Inge Steinkelsson of Sweden. Their daughters were Malfrid and Ingeborg. Sigurd the Crusader married Malfrid, and afterwards she married King Eric Eymund of Denmark. Duke Canute Lavard married Ingeborg, Harald's daughter; and their children were the Danish king Valdemar, Christina, Katrina, and Margaret. King Valdemar married Sophia, a daughter of Valader king of Poland by Queen Rikize. The children of Valdemar and Sophia were King Valdemar and King Canute, and Christina, who was married to King Karl Sörkvisson. Their children were King Sörkvir, King Valdemar,

\* Edward the Confessor is here meant; not Saint Edward, who was killed about 959, and was the son of Edgar.

† Harald was not a son of Emma, but of Algiva, a former wife or concubine of Canute.

‡ Forty weeks and one day, according to the Saxon Chronicle.



## SAGA IX.

and Queen Rikize. Margaret the daughter of Duke Canute Lavard married Stig Huitaleder; and their children were Nicolas and Christina, who was married to King Karl Swerkerisson; and their son was King Swerker, who was father of King John. King Karl's mother was Queen Ulfhild, a daughter of Hakon the son of Finn, who was a son of Harek of Thiottö. Ulfhild was first married to the Danish king Nicolas, and afterwards to King Inge Hallsteinsson of Sweden. Lastly, she was married to Swerker, a son of Karl and Queen Rikize, who afterwards married Eric son of Canute, who was king of Sweden.

CHAPTER  
CIII.  
Of Olaf  
Haralds-  
son's expe-  
dition to  
Norway.

Olaf, the son of King Harald Sigurdsson, sailed with his fleet from England from Hrafnseyre\*, and came in autumn to the Orkney Isles, where the event had happened that Maria, a daughter of Harald Sigurdsson, died a sudden death the very day and hour her father King Harald fell. Olaf remained there all winter; but the summer after he proceeded east to Norway, where he was proclaimed king along with his brother Magnus. Queen Ellisof came from the West, along with her stepson Olaf and her daughter Ingigerd. There came also with Olaf over the West sea Skule, a son of Earl Toste, and who since has been called the king's foster-son, and his brother Ketil Krok. Both were gallant men, of high family in England, and both were very intelligent; and the brothers were much beloved by King Olaf. Ketil Krok went north to Halogaland, where King Olaf procured him a good marriage, and from him are descended many great people.† Skule, the king's foster-son, was a very clever man, and the handsomest man that could be seen.

\* Hrafnseyri. A town in Holderness, at the mouth of the Humber, was called Ravensere, but is now lost. See Camden, Brit. p. 900.

† Singular enough that the male line of the great Earl Godwin, and of his son King Harald, should be to seek among the peasantry of the north of Norway.

He was the commander of King Olaf's court-men, spoke at the Things\*, and took part in all the country affairs with the king. The king offered to give Skule whatever district in Norway he liked, with all the income and duties that belonged to the king in it. Skule thanked him very much for the offer, but said he would rather have something else from him. "For if there came a shift of kings," said he, "the gift might come to nothing. I would rather take some properties lying near to the merchant towns, where you, sire, usually take up your abode, and then I would enjoy your Yule-feasts." The king agreed to this, and conferred on him lands eastward at Konghelle, Opslo, Tunsburg, Sarpsburg, Bergen, and north at Nidaros. These were nearly the best properties at each place, and have since descended to the family branches which came from Skule. King Olaf gave Skule his female relative Gudrun, the daughter of Nefstein, in marriage. Her mother was Ingerid, a daughter of Sigurd Syr and Aasta, King Olaf the Saint's mother. Ingerid was a sister of King Olaf the Saint and of King Harald. Skule and Gudrun's son was Asolf of Reine, who married Thora, a daughter of Skopte Ogmundsson; and this Skopte was a grandson of Thorberg Arneson. Skule's and Gudrun's daughter was Ragnhild, who was married to Orm Kyrping; and his daughter was Aasa, mother of Biorn Buck. Asolf and Thora's son was Guttorm of Reine, father of Bard, and grandfather of King Inge and of Duke Skule. Asolf and Thora's daughter was Sigrid, who was married to Halkel Huk; and their son was John, father of Halkel, Rognvald, and Gregorius. Guttorm of Reine married Elrida, sister of Halkel Huk; and their daughters were Rangrid, Ingrid, and Gudrud. Rangrid was married to Biorn Byrdarswend;

\* Another instance of the old Norse or Icelandic tongue having been generally known in a part of England.

## SAGA IX.

and their daughters were Elrid and Ingeborg. Elrid was married to King Magnus; and they had a daughter, Christine, married to Reidar Sendeman. Thorer Skirfell had been married before to Elrid, and had two sons by her, Kiniad and Thorgrim Klofe; and after King Magnus Haraldsson's death\* she, Elrid, married the lagman in Gotland, and had a son called Harald. Among Ingeborg's sons was Thorstein Skolm-Olld. Rangrid was afterwards married to Frederic Kiæna, and their daughter was called Astrid. Ingerid, a daughter of Guttorm of Reine, was married to Guttorm Ostmansson of Jemteland. Guttorm of Reine afterwards married Bergliot, and their son was called Asulf, whose daughter Thorbiorg was married to Eric Griffel; and they had also a son called Asulf. Thorbiorg afterwards was married to the king's relative Reider. Guttorm of Reine married afterwards Sigrid, a daughter of Thorkel and Halkatla. Halkatla was a daughter of Swend Bryniulfsson and Ingerid, a sister of Canute the Great†; and Swend was a brother of Swerker in Sogn. Guttorm's and Sigrid's son was Baard Guttormsson; first married with Ulfhild, a daughter of Paul the bishop, afterwards with Cecilia, a daughter of King Sigurd Haraldsson; and their children were King Inge, Duke Skule, Guttorm, and a daughter Sigrid.

CHAPTER  
CIV.  
Of King  
Harald  
Sigurdsson.

One year after King Harald's fall his body was transported from England north to Nidaros, and was buried in Mary church which he had built. It was a common observation, that King Harald distinguished himself above all other men by wisdom and resources of mind; whether he had to take a resolution suddenly

\* It was not to King Magnus Haraldsson, but to King Magnus Erlingsson that this Elrid had been married.

† This Canute the Great (Riki) has been some nobleman, or other considerable personage, not Canute the king. The term is applied to any powerful man of great wealth and influence.

for himself and others, or after long deliberation. He was also, above all other men, bold, brave, and lucky, until his dying day, as above related; and bravery is half victory. So says Thiodolf:—

SAGA IX.

“Harald, who till his dying day  
Came off the best in many a fray,  
Had one good rule in battle-plain,  
In Sealand and elsewhere, to gain—  
That, be his foes’ strength more or less,  
Courage is always half success.”

King Harald was a handsome man, of noble appearance; his hair and beard yellow. He had a short beard, and long mustachoes. The one eyebrow was somewhat higher than the other. He had large hands\* and feet; but these were well made. His height was five ells.† He was stern and severe to his enemies, and avenged cruelly all opposition or misdeed. So says Thiodolf:—

“Severe alike to friends or foes,  
Who dared his royal will oppose;  
Severe in discipline to hold  
His men-at-arms wild and bold;  
Severe the bonders to repress;  
Severe to punish all excess;  
Severe was Harald — but we call  
That just which was alike to all.”

King Harald was most greedy of power, and of all distinction and honour. He was bountiful to the friends who suited him. So says Thiodolf:—

\* It is a singular physical circumstance, that in almost all the swords of those ages to be found in the collection of weapons in the Antiquarian Museum at Copenhagen, the handles indicate a size of hand very much smaller than the hands of modern people of any class or rank. No modern dandy, with the most delicate hands, would find room for his hand to grasp or wield with ease some of the swords of these Northmen.

† The old Norwegian ell was less than the present ell; and Thorlacius reckons, in a note on this chapter, that Harald’s stature would be about four Danish ells, viz. about eight feet. It appears that he exceeded the ordinary height of men by the offer made him of seven feet of English ground, or as much more as he required for a grave, in chapter 94.

SAGA IX.  

---

“ I got from him, in sea-fight strong,  
A mark of gold for my ship-song.  
Merit in any way  
He generously would pay.”

King Harald was fifty years old when he fell. We have no particular account of his youth before he was fifteen years old, when he was with his brother King Olaf at the battle of Stiklestad. He lived thirty-five years after that, and in all that time was never free from care and war. King Harald never fled from battle, but often tried cunning ways to escape when he had to do with great superiority of forces. All the men who followed King Harald in battle or skirmish said that when he stood in great danger, or any thing came suddenly upon him, he always took that course which all afterwards saw gave the best hope of a fortunate issue.

CHAPTER  
CV.  
King  
Harald and  
King Olaf  
compared.

When Haldor, a son of Bryniulf Ulfald the Old, who was a sensible man and a great chief, heard people talk of how unlike the brothers Saint Olaf and King Harald were in disposition, he used to say, “ I was in great friendship with both the brothers, and knew intimately the dispositions of both, and never did I know two men more like in disposition. Both were of the highest understanding, and bold in arms, and greedy of power and property; of great courage, but not acquainted with the way of winning the favour of the people; zealous in governing, and severe in their revenge. King Olaf forced the people into Christianity and good customs, and punished cruelly those who disobeyed. This just and rightful severity the chiefs of the country could not bear, but raised an army against him, and killed him in his own kingdom; and therefore he is held to be a saint. King Harald, again, marauded to obtain glory and power, forced all the people he could under his power, and died in another king’s dominions. Both brothers, in daily life, were of a worthy and considerate manner of living :

they were of great experience, and very laborious, and were known and celebrated far and wide for these qualities."

SAGA IX.

King Magnus Haraldsson ruled over Norway the first winter after King Harald's death, and afterwards two years along with his brother King Olaf. Thus there were two kings of Norway at that time; and Magnus had the northern and Olaf the eastern part of the country. King Magnus had a son called Hakon, who was fostered by Thoror of Steig in Gudbrandsdal, who was a brother of King Magnus by the mother's side; and Hakon was a most agreeable man.

CHAPTER  
CVI.  
King  
Magnus's  
death.

After King Harald Sigurdsson's death the Danish king Swend let it be known that the peace between the Northmen and the Danes was at an end, and insisted that the league between Harald and Swend was not for longer time than their lives. There was a levy in both kingdoms. Harald's sons called out the whole people in Norway for procuring men and ships, and Swend set out from the South with the Danish army. Messengers then went between with proposals for a peace; and the Northmen said they would either have the same league as was concluded between King Harald and Swend, or otherwise give battle instantly on the spot. Verses were made on this occasion; viz.—

"Ready for war or peace,  
King Olaf will not cease  
From foeman's hand  
To guard his land."

So says also Stein Herdisarson in his song of Olaf:—

"From Drontheim town, where in repose  
The holy king defies his foes,  
Another Olaf will defend  
His kingdom from the greedy Swend.

SAGA IX.  

---

King Olaf has both power and right,  
And the Saint's favour in the fight.  
The Saint will ne'er his kin forsake,  
And let Swend Ulfsson Norway take."

And by the intervention of good men a meeting was agreed upon between the kings, and that it should be at Konghelle. At this meeting friendship was concluded between the kings, and peace between the countries. The agreement was confirmed by Olaf taking in marriage Ingerid, King Swend's daughter; and this peace endured long, and Olaf reigned in quietness unknown before in Norway. King Magnus fell ill, and died of the ring-worm\* disease, after being ill for some time. He died and was buried at Nidaros. He was an amiable king, and bewailed by the people.

\* The disease of which King Magnus died—reforma-sot—could scarcely be the ring-worm of modern pathology, but some kind of scab, scurvy, or leprosy.

## X.

## SAGA OF OLAF KYRRE.\*

## SAGA X.

OLAF remained sole king of Norway after the death of his brother King Magnus. Olaf was a stout man, well grown in limbs; and every one said a handsomer man could not be seen, nor of a nobler appearance. His hair was yellow as silk, and became him well; his skin was white and fine over all his body; his eyes beautiful, and his limbs well proportioned. He was rather silent in general, and did not speak much even at Things; but he was merry in drinking parties. He loved drinking much, and was talkative enough then; but quite peaceful. He was cheerful in conversation, peacefully inclined during all his reign, and loving gentleness and moderation in all things. Stein Herdisarson speaks thus of him:—

CHAPTER  
I.  
Olaf's  
personal  
appearance.

“Our Drontheim king is brave and wise,  
His love of peace our borders prize;  
By friendly word and ready hand  
He holds good peace through every land.  
He is for all a lucky star;  
England he frightens from a war;  
The stiff-necked Danes he drives to peace;  
Troubles by his good influence cease.”

It was the fashion in Norway in old times for the king's high seat to be on the middle of a long bench, and the ale was handed across the fire†; but King

CHAPTER  
II.  
Of King  
Olaf's  
manner of  
living.

\* Olaf Kyrre, or the Quiet, reigned from about 1069 to 1093.

† We may understand the arrangement by supposing the fire in the middle of the room, the smoke escaping by a hole in the roof, and a long bench on each side of the fire; one bench occupied by the high seat of the king and great guests, the other by the rest of the guests; and the cup handed across the fire, which appears to have had a religious meaning previous to the introduction of Christianity.



## SAGA X.

Olaf had his high seat made on a high bench across the room; he also first had chimney-places in the rooms, and the floors strewed\* both summer and winter. In King Olaf's time many merchant towns arose in Norway, and many new ones were founded. Thus King Olaf founded a merchant town at Bergen, where very soon many wealthy people settled themselves, and it was regularly frequented by merchants from foreign lands. He had the foundations laid for the large Christ church, which was to be a stone church; but in his time there was little done to it. Besides, he completed the old Christ church, which was of wood. King Olaf also had a great feasting-house built in Nidaros, and in many other merchant towns, where before there were only private feasts; and in his time no one could drink in Norway but in these houses, adorned for the purpose with branches and leaves, and which stood under the king's protection. The great guild-bell in Drontheim, which was called the pride of the town, tolled to call together to these guilds. The guild-brethren built Margaret's church in Nidaros of stone. In King Olaf's time there were general entertainments, and hand-in-hand feasts.† At this time also much unusual splendour and foreign customs and fashions in the cut of clothes were introduced; as, for instance, costly hose plaited about the legs. Some had gold rings about the legs, and also used coats which had lists down the sides, and

\* Strewing the floors with fresh juniper-tops is still the universal custom in every house in Norway. It answers the purpose of keeping the dirt brought in on the shoes from soiling the wood of the floors.

† The feasts here mentioned in the saga appear to have been regular meetings of fraternities, or guilds, of which the members gave each other mutual protection and aid, and which acted as corporate bodies. Every private citizen in towns belonged to some guild or fraternity bound to avenge his death or injuries as brethren, and thus affording him protection. At the guilds or feasts of these fraternities each appears to have brought his own liquor: they were pic-nic feasts, and they went hand-in-hand through the streets to them like our Freemasons.

arms five ells long, and so narrow that they must be drawn up with ties, and lay in folds all the way up to the shoulders. The shoes were high, and all edged with silk, or even with gold. Many other kinds of wonderful ornaments were used at that time.

SAGA X.

King Olaf used the fashion, which was introduced from the courts of foreign kings, of letting his grand-butler stand at the end of the table, and fill the table-cups for himself and the other distinguished guests who sat at the table. He had also torch-bearers, who held as many candles at the table as there were guests of distinction present. There was also a marshal's bench outside of the table-circle\*, where the marshal and other persons of distinction sat with their faces towards the high seat. King Harald, and the kings before him, used to drink out of a deer-horn; and the ale was handed from the high seat to the other side over the fire, and he drank to the memory of any one he thought of. So says Stuff the scald:—

CHAPTER  
III.  
Fashion of  
King  
Olaf's  
court.

“ He who in battle is the first,  
And now in peace is best to trust,  
A welcome, hearty and sincere,  
Gave to me on my coming here.  
He whom the ravens watch with care,  
He who the gold rings does not spare,  
A golden horn full to the brink  
Gave me himself at Haug† to drink.”

King Olaf had 120 courtmen-at-arms, and 60 pursuivants, besides 60 house-servants, who provided what was wanted for the king's house wherever it might be, or did other work required for the king. When the bonders asked why he kept a greater retinue

CHAPTER  
IV.  
Arrangement of  
King  
Olaf's  
court.

\* Trapiza, — no doubt from the Greek word, — is used here by the saga writer, and seems to mean the space around the king's table in the hall, which appears, with the high seat, to have occupied one end; and by this description the fire has been in the middle, and the marshal's seat and the court upon the other side of the fire, facing the king's table.

† The name of the king's farm is Værdal.

## SAGA X.

than the law allowed, or former kings kept when they went in guest-quarters or feasts which the bonders had to provide for them, the king answered, "It does not happen that I rule the kingdom better, or produce greater respect for me than ye had for my father, although I have one half more people than he had. I do not by any means do it merely to plague you, or to make your condition harder than formerly."

CHAPTER  
V.

King  
Swend  
Ulfsson's  
death.

King Swend Ulfsson died ten years after the fall of both the Haralds.\* After him his son, Harald Hein, was king for three years; then Canute the Holy for seven years; afterwards Olaf, King Swend's third son, for eight years. Olaf the king of Norway was married to Ingigerd, a daughter of Swend the Danish king; and Olaf the Danish King Swend's son married Ingerid, a daughter of King Harald, and sister of King Olaf of Norway. King Olaf Haraldsson was called by some Olaf Kyrre, but by many Olaf the Bonder, because he sat in peace, without strife within or without the country, and gave no reasonable cause for others to plunder in his dominions. He had a son by Thora, John's daughter, who was called Magnus, and was one of the handsomest lads that could be seen, and was promising in every respect. He was brought up in the king's court.

CHAPTER  
VI.

Miracles of  
King Olaf  
the Saint.

King Olaf had a church of stone built in Nidaros, on the spot where King Olaf's body had first been buried; and the altar was placed directly over the spot where the king's grave had been. This church was consecrated, and called Christ Church; and King Olaf's shrine was removed to it, and was placed before the altar, and many miracles took place there. The following summer, on the same day of the year as the church was consecrated, which was the day before

\* The Norwegian King Harald, and the English King Harald Godwinsson.

Olafsmass, there was a great assemblage of people, and then a blind man was restored to sight. And on the mass-day itself, when the shrine and the holy relics were taken out and carried, and the shrine itself, according to custom, was taken and set down in the church-yard, a man who had long been dumb recovered his speech again, and sang with flowing tongue praise-hymns to God, and to the honour of King Olaf the Saint. The third miracle was of a woman who had come from Sweden, and had suffered much distress on this pilgrimage from her blindness; but, trusting in God's mercy, had come travelling to this solemnity. She was led blind into the church to hear mass this day; but before the service was ended she saw with both eyes, and got her sight fully and clearly, although she had been blind fourteen years. She returned with great joy, praising God and King Olaf the Saint.

SAGA X.

There happened a circumstance in Nidaros, when King Olaf's coffin was being carried about through the streets, that it became so heavy that people could not lift it from the spot. Now when the coffin was set down, the street was broken up to see what was under it at that spot, and the body of a child was found which had been murdered and concealed there. The body was carried away, the street put in order again as it had been before, and the shrine carried on according to custom.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Of the  
shrine of  
King Olaf  
the Saint.

King Olaf Kyrre was a great friend of his brother-in-law the Danish king, Canute the Holy. They appointed a meeting, and met at the Gotha river at Konghelle\*, where the kings used to have their meetings. There King Canute made the proposal that they

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Meeting of  
Olaf Kyrre  
and Canute  
the Saint,  
and their  
prepara-  
tions  
against  
England.

\* The estate of Konghelle was lately purchased by an English gentleman,—— Dan, Esq., as a sporting quarter. It was a celebrated place of meeting for the Swedish, Norwegian, and Danish kings, and rose to be a town of consequence; but is now in decay.

SAGA X.  

---

should send an army westward to England on account of the revenge they had to take there; first and foremost King Olaf himself, and also the Danish king. "Do one of two things," said King Canute,—"either take sixty ships, which I will furnish thee with, and be thou the leader; or give me sixty ships, and I shall be the leader." Then said King Olaf, "This speech of thine, King Canute, is altogether according to my mind; but there is this great difference between us: your family has had more luck in conquering England with great glory, and, among others, King Canute the Great; and it is likely that this good fortune follows your race. On the other hand, when King Harald my father went westward to England, he got his death there; and at that time the best men in Norway followed him. But Norway was so emptied then of chosen men, that such men have not since been to find in the country; nor, especially, such a leader as King Harald was for wisdom and bravery. For that expedition there was the most excellent outfit, and you know what was the end of it. Now I know my own capacity, and how little I am suited to be the leader; so I would rather you should go, with my help and assistance."

So King Olaf gave Canute sixty large ships, with excellent equipment and faithful men, and set his lendemen as chiefs over them; and all must allow that this armament was admirably equipped. It is also told in the saga about Canute, that the Northmen alone did not break the levy when the army was assembled, for they were obedient to the king; but as the Danes would not obey their king's orders, the Northmen also returned to Norway, with the king's leave and consent. This King Canute acknowledged, and gave them, on their way home, leave to trade in merchandise where they pleased through his country, and in his rivers, and at the same time sent the king

of Norway costly presents for his assistance. On the other hand, he was enraged against the Danes, and laid heavy fines upon them when he returned home to Denmark. This strife between them was carried so far that the Danes themselves killed King Canute, rather than submit to his just judgment against them.

SAGA X.

----

One summer, when King Olaf's men had gone round the country collecting his income and land dues, it happened that the king, on their return home, asked them where on their expedition they had been best entertained. They said it was in the house of a bonder, in a district in the province of Lister. "There is an old bonder there who knows many things before they happen. We asked him about many things, which he explained to us; and we never asked him any thing but he was sure to know all about it; nay, we even believe that he understands perfectly the language of birds." The king replies, "How can ye believe such nonsense?" and insisted that it was wrong to put confidence in such things. It happened soon after that the king was sailing along the coast; and as they sailed through several Sounds the king said, "What is that township up in the country?"

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Of Olaf  
Kyrre and  
a peasant  
who under-  
stood the  
language  
of birds.

They replied, "That is the district, sire, where we told you we were best entertained."

Then said the king, "What house is that which stands up there, not far from the Sound?"

They replied, "That house belongs to the wise old man we told you of, sire."

They saw now a horse standing close to the house. Then said the king, "Go there, and take that horse, and kill him."

They replied, "We would not like to do him such harm."

The king: "I will command. Cut off the horse's head; but take care of yourselves that ye let no blood come to the ground, and bear the horse out to my

## SAGA X.

ship. Go then and bring to me the old man ; but tell him nothing of what has happened, as ye shall answer for it with your lives."

They did as they were ordered, and then came to the old man, and told him the king's message. When he came before the king, the king asked him, " Who owns the house thou art dwelling in ? "

He replies, " Sire, you own it, and take rent for it."

The king: " Show us the way round the ness, for here thou must be a good pilot."

The old man went into his boat, and rowed before the king's ship ; and when he had rowed a little way a crow came flying over the ship, and croaking hideously. The peasant listens to the crow. The king said, " Do you think, bonder, that betokens any thing ? "

" Sire, that is certain," said he.

Then another crow flies over the ship, and screeches dreadfully. The bonder was so ill hearing this that he could not row, and the oars hung loose in his hands.

Then said the king, " Thy mind is turned much to these crows, bonder, and to what they say."

The bonder replies, " Now I suspect it is true what they say."

The third time the crow came flying screeching at its very worst, and almost settling on the ship. Now the bonder threw down his oars, regarded them no more, and stood up before the king.

Then the king said, " Thou art taking this much to heart, bonder ; what is it they say ? "

The peasant: " It is likely that either they or I have misunderstood ——."

" Say on," replied the king.

The bonder replied in a song:—

" The ' one-year old '  
Mere nonsense told ;

The two-years' chatter  
 Seemed senseless matter;  
 The three-years' croak  
 Of wonders spoke.  
 The foul bird said  
 My old mare's head  
 I row along;  
 And, in her song,  
 She said the thief  
 Was the land's chief."

"The three-year-old crow says that you bid me row here before your ship, and yet have taken my property from me."

The king said, "What is this, bonder! Wilt thou call me a thief? That is not judging well of me."

"It is true, sire," said the bonder, "that would not be well said, neither do I think you the thief; and there has been some joke played on me, for the crow said my horse is on board the ship."

After some conversation between the king and the bonder, the king gave him good presents, and remitted the land-rent of the place he lived on; and gave him the farm to be his own property for ever, besides other considerable gifts.

King Olaf was not niggardly in giving presents to his men, and gave all kinds of valuable articles. So says Stuff the scald:—

"The pillar of our royal race  
 Stands forth adorned with every grace.  
 What king before e'er took such pride  
 To scatter bounty far and wide?  
 To one he gives the ship of war,  
 Hung round with shields that gleam afar;  
 The merchant ship on one bestows,  
 With painted streaks in glowing rows.

"The man-at-arms a golden ring  
 Boasts as the present of his king;  
 At the king's table sits the guest,  
 By the king's bounty richly drest.  
 King Olaf, Norway's royal son,  
 Who from the English glory won,  
 Pours out with ready-giving hand  
 His wealth on children of the land.



SAGA X.  

---

“ Brave clothes to servants he awards,  
 Helms and ring-mail coats grace his guards;  
 Or axe and sword Hare’s\* warriors gain,  
 And heavy armour for the plain.  
 Gold, too, for service duly paid,  
 Red gold all pure, and duly weighed,  
 King Olaf gives — he loves to pay  
 All service in a royal way.”

CHAPTER  
 X.  
 Of King  
 Olaf  
 Kyrre’s  
 death.

King Olaf lived principally in his domains on his large farms. Once when he was east in Ranrike, on his estate of Haukaby, he took the disease which ended in his death. He had then been king of Norway for twenty-six years; for he was made king of Norway the year after King Harald’s death. King Olaf’s body was taken north to Nidaros, and buried in Christ church, which he himself had built there. He was the most amiable king of his time, and Norway was much improved in riches and cultivation during his reign.

\* Hare — a name of Thor or Odin, as wielder of the axe and sword in battle.

## XI.

## MAGNUS BAREFOOT'S SAGA.\*

## SAGA XI.

## CHAPTER

## I.

Beginning  
of the reign  
of King  
Magnus  
and his  
cousin  
Hakon.

MAGNUS, King Olaf's son, was, immediately after King Olaf's death, proclaimed at Viken king of all Norway; but the Upland people, on hearing of King Olaf's death, chose Hakon, Thorer's foster-son, a cousin† of King Magnus, as king. Thereupon Hakon and Thorer went north to the Drontheim country, and when they came to Nidaros they summoned a Thing at Ore; and at that Thing Hakon desired the bonders to give him the kingly title, which was agreed to, and the Drontheim people proclaimed him king of half of Norway, as his father King Magnus had been before. Hakon relieved the Drontheim people of all harbour duties, and gave them many other privileges. He did away with Yule-gifts, and gained by this the good-will of all the Drontheim people. Thereafter Hakon formed a court, and then proceeded to the Uplands, where he gave the Upland people the same privileges as the Drontheim people; so that they also were perfectly well affected to him, and were his friends. The people in Drontheim sang this ballad about him:—

“Young Hakon was the Norseman's pride,  
And Steigar-Thor was on his side.  
Young Hakon from the Upland came,  
With royal birth, and blood, and name.  
Young Hakon from the king demands  
His royal birthright, half the lands;  
Magnus will not the kingdom break,—  
The whole or nothing he will take.”

---

\* Magnus Barefoot reigned from about 1093 to 1103.

† Hakon was a son of Magnus, Harald Hardraade's son; and Magnus was a son of Olaf Kyrre, Harald Hardraade's son also.

SAGA XI

CHAPTER

II.

Hakon's  
death.

King Magnus proceeded north to the merchant town (Nidaros), and on his arrival went straight to the king's house, and there took up his abode. He remained here the first part of the winter, and kept seven long-ships in the open water of the river Nid, abreast of the king's house. Now when King Hakon heard that King Magnus was come to Drontheim, he came from the East over the Dovrefield, and thence down upon Drontheim to the merchant town, where he took up his abode in the house of Skule, opposite to Clement's church, which had formerly been the king's house. King Magnus was ill pleased with the great gifts which Hakon had given to the bonders to gain their favour, and thought it was so much given out of his own property. This irritated his mind; and he thought he had suffered injustice from his relative in this respect, that he must now put up with less income than his father and his predecessors before him had enjoyed; and he gave Thorer the blame. When King Hakon and Thorer observed this, they were alarmed for what Magnus might do; and they thought it suspicious that Magnus kept long-ships afloat rigged out, and with tents. The following spring, after Candlemas, King Magnus left the town in the night with his ships; the tents up, and lights burning in the tents. They brought up at Hafring\*, remained there all night, and kindled a fire on the land. Then Hakon and the men in the town thought some treachery was on foot, and he let the trumpets call all the men together out on the Ore, where the whole people of the town came to him, and the people were gathering together the whole night. When it was light in the morning, King Magnus saw the people from all districts gathered together on the Ore; and he sailed out of the fiord, and proceeded south to where the Gula-

\* A promontory about two miles north of the town.

thing is held. Hakon thanked the people for their support which they had given him, and got ready to travel east to Viken. But he first held a meeting in the town, where, in a speech, he asked the people for their friendship, promising them his; and added, that he had some suspicions of his relation King Magnus's intentions. Then King Hakon mounted his horse, and was ready to travel. All men promised him their good-will and support whenever he required them, and the people followed him out to the foot of the Steinberg. From thence King Hakon proceeded up the Dovrefield; but as he was going over the Fielde he rode all day after a ptarmigan, which flew up beside him, and in this chase a sickness overfell him, which ended in his death; and he died on the Fielde. His body was carried north, and came to the merchant town just half a month after he left it. The whole townspeople went to meet the body, sorrowing, and the most of them weeping; for all people loved him with sincere affection. King Hakon's body was interred in Christ church, and Hakon and Magnus had ruled the country for two years. Hakon was a man full twenty-five years old, and was one of the chiefs the most beloved by all the people. He had made a journey to Biarmeland, where he had given battle and gained a victory.

King Magnus sailed in autumn eastward to Viken; but when spring approached he went southwards to Halland\*, and plundered far and wide. He laid waste Viskardal and many other districts, and returned with a great booty back to his own kingdom. So says Biorn Cripplehand in his song on Magnus:—

CHAPTER  
III.  
Of a foray  
in Halland.

“ Through Halland wide around  
The clang and shriek resound ;

---

\* Halland was the district about the Gotha river belonging to Sweden, and formerly to Denmark.

## SAGA XL.

The houses burn,  
The people mourn,  
Through Halland wide around.

“The Norse king strides in flame,  
Through Viskadal he came;  
The fire sweeps,  
The widow weeps,  
The Norse king strides in flame.”

Here it is told that King Magnus made the greatest devastation through Halland.

CHAPTER  
IV.  
Of Thorer  
of Steige.

There was a man called Swend, a son of Harald Flett. He was a Danish man by family, a great viking and champion, and a very clever man, and of high birth in his own country. He had been some time with King Hakon Magnusson, and was very dear to him; but after King Hakon's decease Thorer of Steige, his foster-father, had no great confidence in any treaty or friendship with King Magnus, if the whole country came into his power, on account of the position in which Thorer had stood to King Magnus, and the opposition he had made to him. Thereupon Thorer and Swend took counsel with each other, which they afterwards carried into effect, — to raise, with Thorer's assistance, and his men, a troop against Magnus. But as Thorer was old and heavy, Swend took the command, and name of leader of the troop. In this design several chiefs took part, among whom the principal was Egil Aslaksson of Aurland. Egil was a lenderman, and married to Ingeborg, a daughter of Ogmund Thorbergsson, a sister of Skopte of Gizkö. The rich and powerful man Skialg Erlingsson from Jederen also joined their party. Thorkel Hammer-scald speaks of this in his ballad of Magnus: —

“Thorer and Egil were not wise, —  
They aimed too high to win a prize:  
There was no reason in their plan,  
And it hurt many a udalman.  
The stone, too great for them to throw,  
Fell back, and hurt them with the blow;  
And now the udalmen must rue  
That to their friends they were so true.”

Thorer and Swend collected a troop in the Uplands, and went down through Raumsdal into Sondmör, and there collected vessels, with which they afterwards sailed north to Drontheim. SAGA XI.

The lenderman Sigurd Ullstring, a son of Lodin Viggierskalle, collected men by sending round the war-token, as soon as he heard of Thorer and the troop which followed him, and had a rendezvous with all the men he could raise at Viggia. Swend and Thorer also met there with their people, fought with Sigurd, and gained the victory after giving him a great defeat; and Sigurd fled, and joined King Magnus. Thorer and his followers proceeded to the town (Nidaros), and remained there some time in the fiord, where many people joined them. King Magnus hearing this news immediately collected an army, and proceeded north to Drontheim. And when he came into the fiord Thorer and his party heard of it while they lay at Hafring, and they were ready to leave the fiord; and they rowed their ships to the strand at Vanwick, and left them, and came into Texdal in Seliowerf, and Thorer was carried in a litter over the Fielde. Then they got hold of ships, and sailed north to Halogaland. As soon as King Magnus was ready for sea, he sailed from Drontheim in pursuit of them. Thorer and his party went north all the way to Biarkö; and John, with his son Vidkunner, fled from thence. Thorer and his men robbed all the moveable goods, and burnt the house, and a good long-ship that belonged to Vidkunner. While the hull was burning the vessel heeled to one side, and Thorer called out, "Hard to starboard, Vidkunner!" Some verses were made about this burning in Biarkö: —

CHAPTER  
V.  
Of Thorer's  
adventures.

"The sweetest farm that I have seen  
Stood on Biarkö's island green;  
And now, where once this farm-house stood,  
Fire crackles through a pile of wood;

## SAGA XL.

And the clear red flame, burning high,  
Flashes across the dark night-sky.  
John and Vidkunner, this dark night,  
Will not be wandering without light."

CHAPTER  
VI.  
Death of  
Thorer and  
Egil.

John and Vidkunner travelled day and night till they met King Magnus. Swend and Thorer proceeded northwards with their men, and plundered far and wide in Halogaland. But while they lay in a fiord called Horm, Thorer and his party saw King Magnus coming under sail towards them; and thinking they had not men enough to fight him, they rowed away and fled. Thorer and Egil brought up at Hesiotun; but Swend rowed out to sea, and some of their people rowed into the fiords. King Magnus pursued Thorer, and the vessels struck together while they were landing. Thorer stood in the forecastle of his ship, and Sigurd Ullstring called out to him, and asked, "Art thou well, Thorer?" Thorer replied, "I am well in hands, but ill on my feet." And some one made these verses:—

"The vessels struck, and swords were out,  
When Ullstring calls out with a shout,  
'Old Thorer, how d'ye do?'  
The grey old warrior, firm and true  
To his own cause, cries 'How d'ye do?  
When loving friends, such as we two,  
Happen in bloody fray to meet,  
I'm brisk in hands, but slow in feet.'"

Then said Sigurd Ullstring, "Thou art pretty fat, Thorer." He replied, "My meat and my ale make me so." Then all Thorer's men fled up the country, and Thorer was taken prisoner. Egil was also taken prisoner, for he would not leave his wife. King Magnus then ordered both of them to be taken out to Vamber Holm; and when they were leading Thorer from the ship he tottered on his legs. Then Vidkunner called out, "More to larboard, Thorer!" When he was being led to the gallows he sang,—

"We were four comrades gay,—  
Let one by the helm stay."

When he came to the gallows he said, "Bad counsel comes to a bad end." Then Thorer was hanged; but when he was hoisted up the gallows-tree he was so heavy that his neck gave way, and the body fell down to the ground; for Thorer was a man exceedingly stout, both high of stature and thick. Egil was also led to the gallows; and when the king's thralls were about hanging him he said, "Ye should not hang me, for in truth each of you deserves much more to be hanged." People sang these verses about it: —

SAGA XL

"I hear, my girl, that Egil said,  
When to the gallows he was led,  
That the king's thralls far more than he  
Deserved to hang on gallows-tree.  
It might be so; but, death in view,  
A man should to himself be true, —  
End a stout life by death as stout,  
Showing no fear, or care, or doubt."

King Magnus sat near while they were being hanged, and was in such a rage that none of his men was so bold as to ask mercy for them. The king said, when Egil was spinning at the gallows, "Thy great friends help thee but poorly in time of need." From this people supposed that the king only wanted to have been entreated to have spared Egil's life. Biorn the Cripplehand speaks of these things: —

"King Magnus in the robbers' gore  
Dyed red his sword; and round the shore  
The wolves howled out their wild delight,  
At corpses swinging in their sight.  
Have ye not heard how the king's sword  
Punished the traitors to their lord?  
How the king's thralls hung on the gallows  
Old Thorer and his traitor-fellows?"

After this King Magnus sailed south to Drontheim, and brought up in the fiord, and punished severely all who had been guilty of treason towards him; killing some, and burning the houses of others. So says Biorn Cripplehand: —

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Of the punishment  
of the  
Drontheim  
people.



## SAGA XL

“He who despises fence of shields  
 Drove terror through the Drontheim fields,  
 When all the land through which he came  
 Was swimming in a flood of flame.  
 The raven-feeder, well I know,  
 Cut off two chieftains at a blow;  
 The wolf could scarcely ravenous be,  
 The ernes flew round the gallows-tree.”

Swend, Harald Flett's son, fled out to sea first, and sailed then to Denmark, and remained there; and at last came into great favour with King Eystein, the son of King Magnus, who took so great a liking to Swend that he made him his dish-bearer\*, and held him in great respect. King Magnus had now alone the whole kingdom, and he kept good peace in the land, and rooted out all vikings and lawless men. He was a man quick, warlike, and able, and more like in all things to his grandfather King Harald in disposition and talents than to his father.

CHAPTER  
 VIII.  
 Of the  
 peasant  
 Sweinke  
 the river  
 borderer,  
 and Sigurd  
 Ullstring.

There was a man called Sweinke Steinarsson, who was very wealthy, and dwelt in Viken at the Gotha river. He had brought up Hakon Magnusson before Thorer of Steige took him. Sweinke had not yet submitted to King Magnus. King Magnus ordered Sigurd Ullstring to be called, and told him he would send him to Sweinke with the command that he should quit the king's land and domain. “He has not yet submitted to us, or shown us due honour.” He added, that there were some lendersmen east in Viken, namely, Swend Bryggefod, Dag Elifsson, or Kolbiorn Klakka, who could bring this matter into right bearing. Then Sigurd said, “I did not know there was the man in Norway against whom three lendersmen besides myself were needful.” The king replied, “Thou needst not take this help, unless it be necessary.” Now Sigurd made himself ready for the journey with a ship, sailed

\* The dish-bearer, not cup-bearer, was an office of dignity equivalent to the chamberlain in modern courts, — the dapifer.

east to Viken, and there summoned the lendersmen to him. Then a Thing was appointed in Viken, to which the people were called who dwelt on the East river, besides others; so that it was a numerous assembly. When the Thing was formed they had to wait for Sweinke. They soon after saw a troop of men coming along, so well furnished with weapons that they looked like pieces of shining ice; and now came Sweinke and his people to the Thing, and set themselves down in a circle. All were clad in iron, with glowing arms, and 500 in number. Then Sigurd stood up, and spoke. "My master, King Magnus, sends God's salutation and his own to all friends, lendersmen and others, his subjects in the kingdom; also to the powerful bonders, and the people in general, with kind words and offers of friendship; and to all who will obey him he offers his friendship and good-will. Now the king will, with all cheerfulness and peace, show himself a gracious master to all who will submit to him, and to all in his dominions. He will be the leader and defender of all the men of Norway; and it will be good for you to accept his gracious speech, and this offer."

Then stood up a man in the troop of the river-borderers, who was of great stature and grim countenance, clad in a leather cloak, with a halberd on his shoulder, and a great steel hat upon his head. He looked sternly, and said, "Here is no need of wheels, says the fox, when he draws the trap over the ice." He said nothing more, but sat down again.

Soon after Sigurd Ullstring stood up again, and spoke thus: "But little concern or help have we for the king's affairs from you river-borderers, and but little friendship; yet by such means every man shows how much he respects himself. But now I shall produce more clearly the king's errand." Thereupon he demanded land-dues and levy-dues, together with all other rights of the king, from the great bonders. He

SAGA XL

bade each of them to consider with himself how they had conducted themselves in these matters; and that they should now promote their own honour, and do the king justice, if they had come short hitherto in doing so. And then he sat down.

Then the same man got up in the troop of river-borderers who had spoken before, lifted his hat a little up, and said, "The lads run well, say the Laplanders, who have scates for nothing." Then he sat himself down again.

Soon after Sigurd arose, after speaking with the lendermen, and said that so weighty a message as the king's ought not to be treated lightly as a jest. He was now somewhat angry; and added, that they ought not to receive the king's message and errand so scornfully, for it was not decent. He was dressed in a red or scarlet coat, and had a blue coat over it. He cast off his upper coat, and said, "Now it is come so far that every one must look to himself, and not loiter and jest with others; for by so doing every man will show what he is. We do not require now to be taught by others; for now we can see ourselves how much we are regarded. But this may be borne with; but not that ye treat so scornfully the king's message. Thereby every one shows how highly he considers himself. There is one man called Sweinke Steinarsson, who lives east at the river; and from him the king will have his just land-dues, together with his own land, or will banish him from the country. It is of no use here to seek excuses, or to answer with sharp words; for people are to be found who are his equals in power, although he now receives our speech so unworthily; and it is better now than afterwards to return to the right way, and do himself honour, rather than await disgrace for his obstinacy." He then sat down.

Sweinke then got up, threw back his steel-hat, and gave Sigurd many scornful words, and said, "Tut!

tut! 'tis a shame for the dogs, says the proverb, when the fox is allowed to piss in the peasant's well. Here will be a miracle! Thou useless fellow! with a coat without arms, and a kirtle with skirts, wilt thou drive me out of the country? Thy relation Sigurd Woolsack was sent before on this errand, and one called Gille the Backthief, and one who had still a worse name. They were a night in every house, and stole wherever they came. Wilt thou drive me out of the country? Formerly thou wast not so mighty, and thy pride was less when King Hakon, my foster-son, was in life. Then thou wert as frightened for him when he met thee on the road as a mouse in a mouse-trap, and hid thyself under a heap of clothes, like a dog on board a ship. Thou wast thrust into a leather-bag like corn in a sack, and driven from house and farm like a year-old colt from the mares; and dost thou dare to drive me from the land? Thou shouldst rather think thyself lucky to escape from hence with life. Let us stand up and attack him."

Then all his men stood up, and made a great clash with their weapons. Then Swend Bryggefod and the other lendersmen saw there was no other chance for Sigurd but to get him on horseback, which was done, and he rode off into the forest. The end was that Sweinke returned home to his farm, and Sigurd Ullstring came, with great difficulty, by land north to Drontheim to King Magnus, and told the result of his errand. "Did I not say," said the king, "that the help of my lendersmen would be needed?" Sigurd was ill pleased with his journey; insisted that he would be revenged, cost what it will; and urged the king much. The king ordered five ships to be fitted out; and as soon as they were ready for sea he sailed south along the land, and then east to Viken, where he was entertained in excellent guest-quarters by his lendersmen. The king told them he would seek out Sweinke.

## SAGA XI.

"For I will not conceal my suspicion that he thinks to make himself king of Norway." They said that Sweinke was both a powerful and an ungovernable man. Now the king went from Viken until he came to Sweinke's farm. Then the lendermen desired that they might be put on shore to see how matters stood; and when they came to the land they saw that Sweinke had already come down from the farm, and was on the road with a number of well-armed men. The lendermen held up a white shield in the air, as a peace-token; and when Sweinke saw it he halted his men, and they approached each other. Then said Kolbiorn Klakka, "King Magnus sends thee God's salutation and his own, and bids thee consider what becomes thee, and do him obedience, and not prepare thyself to give him battle." Kolbiorn offered to mediate peace between them, if he could, and told him to halt his troops.

Sweinke said he would wait for them where he was. "We came out to meet you," he said, "that ye might not tread down our corn-fields."

The lendermen returned to the king, and told him all was now at his pleasure.

The king said, "My doom is soon delivered. He shall fly the country, and never come back to Norway as long as the kingdom is mine; and he shall leave all his goods behind."

"But will it not be more for thy honour," said Kolbiorn, "and give thee a higher reputation among other kings, if, in banishing him from the country, thou shouldst allow him to keep his property, and show himself among other people? And we shall take care that he never come back while we live. Consider of this, sire, by yourself, and have respect for our assurance."

The king replied, "Let him then go forth immediately."

They went back, therefore, to Sweinke, and told him the king's words; and also that the king had ordered him out of the country, and he should show his obedience, since he had forgotten himself towards the king. "It is for the honour of both that thou shouldst show obedience to the king."

Then Sweinke said, "There must be some great change if the king speaks agreeably to me; but why should I fly the country and my properties? Listen now to what I say. It appears to me better to die upon my property than to fly from my udal estates. Tell the king that I will not stir from them even an arrow-flight."

Kolbiorn replied, "This is scarcely prudent, or right; for it is better for one's own honour to give way to the best chief, than to make opposition to one's own loss. A gallant man succeeds wheresoever he goes; and thou wilt be the more respected wheresoever thou art, with men of power, just because thou hast made head so boldly against so powerful a chief. Hear our promises, and pay some attention to our errand. We offer thee to manage thy estates, and take them faithfully under our protection; and also never, against thy will, to pay scatt for thy land until thou comest back. We will pledge our lives and properties upon this. Do not throw away good counsel from thee, and avoid thus the ill fortune of other good men."

Then Sweinke was silent for a short time, and said at last, "Your endeavours are wise; but I have my suspicions that ye are changing a little the king's message. In consideration, however, of the great good-will that ye show me, I will hold your advice in such respect that I will go out of the country for the whole winter, if, according to your promises, I can then retain my estates in peace. Tell the king, also,

SAGA XI. these my words, — that I do this on your account, not on his.”

Thereupon they returned to the king, and said that Sweinke left all in the king's hands. “But entreats you to have respect to his honour. He will be away for three years, and then come back, if it be the king's pleasure. Do this; let all things be done according to what is suitable for the royal dignity, and according to our entreaty, now that the matter is entirely in thy power, and we shall do all we can to prevent his returning against thy will.”

The king replied, “Ye treat this matter like men, and, for your sakes, shall all things be as ye desire. Tell him so.”

They thanked the king, and then went to Sweinke, and told him the king's gracious intentions. “We will be glad,” said they, “if ye can be reconciled. The king requires, indeed, that thy absence shall be for three years; but, if we know the truth rightly, we expect that before that time he will find he cannot do without thee in this part of the country. It will be to thy own future honour, therefore, to agree to this.”

Sweinke replies, “What condition is better than this? Tell the king that I shall not vex him longer with my presence here, and accept of my goods and estates on this condition.”

Thereupon he went home with his men, and set off directly; for he had prepared every thing beforehand. Kolbiorn remains behind, and makes ready a feast for King Magnus, which also was thought of and prepared. Sweinke, on the other hand, rides up to Gotland with all the men he thought proper to take with him. The king let himself be entertained in guest-quarters at his house, returned to Viken, and Sweinke's estates were nominally the king's, but Kolbiorn had them under his charge. The king received guest-

quarters in Viken, proceeded from thence northwards, and there was peace for a while; but now that the river-borderers were without a chief, marauding gangs infested them, and the king saw that this eastern part of the kingdom would be laid waste. It appeared to him, therefore, most suitable and advisable to make Sweinke himself oppose the stream, and twice he sent messages to him. But he did not stir until King Magnus himself was south in Denmark, when Sweinke and the king met, and made a full reconciliation; on which Sweinke returned home to his house and estates, and was afterwards King Magnus's best and trustiest friend, who strengthened his kingdom on the eastern border; and their friendship continued as long as they lived.

King Magnus undertook an expedition out of the country, with many fine men and a good assortment of shipping. With this armament he sailed out into the West sea, and first came to the Orkney Islands. There he took the two earls, Paul and Erlend, prisoners, and sent them east to Norway, and placed his son Sigurd as chief over the islands, leaving some counsellors to assist him. From thence King Magnus, with his followers, proceeded to the Southern Hebrides\*, and when he came there began to burn and lay waste the inhabited places, killing the people, and

CHAPTER  
IX.  
King  
Magnus  
makes war  
on the  
Southern  
Hebrides.

\* Sudreyia, or the South Isles, were so called in reference to their situation from the Feroe, Orkney, and Shetland Isles; and the name is still retained in the title of the bishopric of Sodor and Man. The Sudreyia are the Hebrides, or, as Pinkerton will have it, the Hebrudes: in which he is probably right, the word being Oybodur—*island habitations*; reduced to Ebudæ in Latin. The names mentioned in the saga are Liadhus (Lewis), Ivist (Uist, north and south), Skid (Skye), Raunoyar (Rasey and Rona), Myl (Mull), Mylarkalfr (Coll? or Calf of Mull), Tyroist (Tiree), Helga Oyen (Iona), Il (Islay), Gudoy (Gigha), Heroy or Hersoy (Arran), Bot (Bute), Kumroyjar (the Cumbray Isles), Mon (Man), Satiri (the peninsula of Cantire). The Hebrudes and Man were sold in 1266 to the Scottish crown by King Magnus the Law Improver, for 4000 marks sterling, and 100 marks yearly as feu duty.



SAGA XI. plundering wherever he came with his men ; and the country people fled in all directions, some into Scotland-fiord \*, others south to Cantire, or out to Ireland : some obtained life and safety by entering into his service. So says Biorn Cripplehand :—

“ In Lewis Isle with fearful blaze  
The house-destroying fire plays ;  
To hills and rocks the people fly,  
Fearing all shelter but the sky.  
In Uist the king deep crimson made  
The lightning of his glancing blade ;  
The peasant lost his land and life  
Who dared to bide the Norseman's strife.

“ The hungry battle-birds were filled  
In Skye with blood of foemen killed,  
And wolves on Tyree's lonely shore  
Dyed red their hairy jaws in gore.  
The men of Mull were tired of flight ;  
The Scottish foemen would not fight,  
And many an island-girl's wail  
Was heard as through the isles we sail.”

CHAPTER  
X.  
Of Lag-  
madr, King  
Gudrod's  
son.

King Magnus came with his forces to the Holy Island (Iona), and gave peace and safety to all men there. It is told that the king opened the door of the little Columb's Kirk there, but did not go in, but instantly locked the door again, and said that no man should be so bold as to go into that church hereafter ; which has been the case ever since. From thence King Magnus sailed to Islay, where he plundered and burnt ; and when he had taken that country he proceeded south around Cantire, marauding on both sides in Scotland and Ireland, and advanced with his foray to Man, where he plundered. So says Biorn Cripplehand :—

“ On Sanda's † plain our shields they spy :  
From Isla smoke rose heaven-high,

---

\* Skotland-fiord is the sea between the northern Hebudes and the mainland of Scotland.

† Sandey is here probably the small isle Sandera, beyond the Mull of Cantire.

Whirling up from the flashing blaze  
 The king's men o'er the island raise.  
 South of Cantire the people fled,  
 Scared by our swords in blood dyed red,  
 And our brave champion onward goes  
 To meet in Man the Norsemen's foes."

Lagmadr (Lawman) was the name of the son of Gudrod king of the Hebudes. Lawman was sent to defend the most northerly islands; but when King Magnus and his army came to the Hebudes, Lawman fled here and there about the isles, and at last King Magnus's men took him and his ship's crew as he was flying over to Ireland. The king put him in irons to secure him. So says Biorn Cripplehand:—

"To Gudrod's son no rock or cave,  
 Shore-side or hill, a refuge gave;  
 Hunted around from isle to isle,  
 This Lawman found no safe asyle.  
 From isle to isle, o'er firth and sound,  
 Close on his track his foe he found.  
 At Ness\* the Agder chief at length  
 Seized him, and iron-chained his strength."

Afterwards King Magnus sailed to Wales†; and when he came to the sound of Anglesey there came against him an army from Wales, which was led by two earls‡, — Hugo the Brave, and Hugo the Stout. They began immediately to give battle, and there was a severe conflict. King Magnus shot with the bow; but Hugo the Brave was all over in armour, so that nothing was bare about him excepting one eye. King

CHAPTER  
 XI.  
 Of the  
 fall of Earl  
 Hugo the  
 Brave.

\* This Ness is supposed to be in Scalpa, on the south-west side of Skye.

† The country occupied by the ancient Britons, or Wales, is called Bretland in the Icelandic sagas, and the inhabitants Brettar; and Saxland was the part of England occupied by the Anglo-Saxons.

‡ Gibson, in his edition of Cambden, vol. ii. p. 808., shows that there were two Hugos—an earl of Cheshire, and an earl of Shropshire—of Norman descent, who had ravaged Anglesey, and built a castle (Aber Lhienawg) to keep down the people; and on the arrival of King Magnus one of them, the Hugo earl of Chester, was killed by an arrow.

## SAGA XI.

Magnus let fly an arrow at him, as also did a Halogaland man who was beside the king. They both shot at once. The one shaft hit the nose-screen of the helmet, which was bent by it to one side, and the other arrow hit the earl's eye, and went through his head; and that was found to be the king's. Earl Hugo fell, and the Britons fled with the loss of many people. So says Biorn Cripplehand:—

“The swinger of the sword  
 Stood by Anglesey's ford;  
 His quick shaft flew,  
 And Hugo slew.  
 His sword gleamed a while  
 O'er Anglesey Isle,  
 And his Norsemen's band  
 Scoured the Anglesey land.”

There was also sung the following verse about it:—

“On the panzers arrows rattle,  
 Where our Norse king stands in battle;  
 From the helmets blood-streams flow,  
 Where our Norse king draws his bow:  
 His bowstring twangs,—its biting hail  
 Rattles against the ring-linked mail.  
 Up in the land in deadly strife  
 Our Norse king took Earl Hugo's life.”

King Magnus gained the victory in this battle, and then took Anglesey Isle, which was the farthest south the Norway kings of former days had ever extended their rule. Anglesey is a third part of Wales. After this battle King Magnus turned back with his fleet, and came first to Scotland. Then men went between the Scottish king Melkolf\* and King Magnus, and a peace was made between them; so that all the islands lying west of Scotland, between which and the mainland he could pass in a vessel with her rudder shipped, should be held to belong to the king of Norway. Now when King Magnus came north to Cantire, he had a

\* According to Buchanan it was not in the time of King Malcolm III., but of his brother Donald Bane, that the Hebrides were conquered by King Magnus Barefoot.

skiff drawn over the strand at Cantire, and shipped the rudder of it. The king himself sat in the stern-sheets, and held the tiller; and thus he appropriated to himself the land that lay on the larboard side. Cantire is a great district, better than the best of the southern isles of the Hebudes, excepting Man; and there is a small neck of land between it and the mainland of Scotland, over which long-ships are often drawn.

SAGA XI.

King Magnus was all the winter in the southern isles, and his men went over all the fiords of Scotland, rowing within all the inhabited and uninhabited isles, and took possession for the king of Norway of all the islands west of Scotland. King Magnus contracted in marriage his son Sigurd to Biadmynia, King Moriartak's daughter. Moriartak was a son of the Irish king Thiolf, and ruled over Connaught. Magnus gave his son the title of king, and set him over the Orkneys and Hebudes; and gave him in charge of his relation Hakon Paulsson. The summer after, King Magnus, with his fleet, returned east to Norway. Earl Erlend\* died of sickness at Nidaros, and is buried there; and Earl Paul\* died in Bergen.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
Death of  
the Earls of  
Orkney.

Skopte Ogmundsson, a grandson of Thorberg, was a gallant lenderman, who dwelt at Gizka in Sondmör, and was married to Gudrun, a daughter of Thord Folasson, who carried King Olaf's banner at Stiklastad when he fell. Their children were Ogmund, Finn, Thord, and Thora, who was married to Asolf Skulesson. Skopte's and Gudrun's sons were the most promising and popular men in their youth.

Steinkel the Swedish king died about the same time as the two Haralds† fell, and the king who came after him in Sweden was called Hakon. Afterwards Inge,

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
Quarrels  
of King  
Magnus

\* The two earls of Orkney, Erlend and Paul.

† The two Haralds meant are Harald Haardrade of Norway, and the English king Harald Godwinsson, who fell at Hastings.

SAGA XI.  
and King  
Inge.

a son of Steinkel, was king, and was a good and powerful king, strong and stout beyond most men; and he was king of Sweden when King Magnus was king of Norway. King Magnus insisted that the boundaries of the countries in old times had been so, that the Gotha river divided the kingdoms of the Swedish and Norwegian kings, but afterwards the Wener lake up to Værmeland. Thus King Magnus insisted that he was owner of all the places lying west of the Wener lake up to Værmeland, which are the districts of Sundal, Nordal, Vear, and Vardyniar, with all the woods belonging thereto. But these had for a long time been under the Swedish dominion, and with respect to scatt were joined to West Gotland; and, besides, the forest-settlers preferred being under the Swedish king. King Magnus rode from Viken up to Gotland with a great and fine army, and when he came to the forest-settlements he plundered and burnt all round; on which the people submitted, and took the oath of fidelity to him. When he came to the Wener lake, when autumn was advanced he went out to the island Qualdinsey, and made a stronghold of turf and wood, and dug a ditch around it. When the work was finished, provisions and other necessities that might be required were brought to it. The king left in it 300 men, who were the chosen of his forces, and Finn Skoptesson and Sigurd Ullstring as their commanders. The king himself returned to Viken.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
Of the  
Northmen.

When the Swedish king heard this he drew together people, and the report came that he would ride against these Northmen; but there was delay about his riding, and the Northmen made these lines:—

“The fat-hipped king, with heavy sides,  
Finds he must mount before he rides.”

But when the ice set in upon the Wener lake King Inge rode down, and had near 300 men with him. He sent a message to the Northmen who sat in the

burgh that they might retire with all the booty they had taken, and go to Norway. When the messengers brought this message, Sigurd Ullstring replied to it; saying that King Inge must take the trouble to come, if he wished to drive them away like cattle out of a grass field, and said he must come nearer if he wished them to remove. The messengers returned with this answer to the king, who then rode out with all his army to the island, and again sent a message to the Northmen that they might go away, taking with them their weapons, clothes, and horses; but must leave behind all their booty. This they refused. The king made an assault upon them, and they shot at each other. Then the king ordered timber and stones to be collected, and he filled up the ditch; and then he fastened anchors to long spars which were brought up to the timber-walls, and, by the strength of many hands, the walls were broken down. Thereafter a large pile of wood was set on fire, and the lighted brands were flung in among them. Then the Northmen asked for quarter. The king ordered them to go out without weapons or cloaks. As they went out each of them received a stroke with a whip, and then they set off for Norway, and all the forest-men submitted again to King Inge. Sigurd and his people went to King Magnus, and told him their misfortune.

The spring after, as soon as the ice broke up, King Magnus, with a great army, sailed eastwards to the Gotha river, and went up the eastern arm of it, laying waste all that belonged to the Swedish dominions. When they came to Foxerne they landed from their vessels; but as they came over a river on their way an army of Gotland people came against them, and there was immediately a great battle, in which the Northmen were overwhelmed by numbers, driven to flight, and many of them killed near to a waterfall. King Magnus fled, and the Gotlanders pursued, and

SAGA XL

CHAPTER  
XV.  
Battle at  
Foxerne.

**SAGA XI.** killed those they could get near. King Magnus was easily known. He was a very stout man, and had a red short cloak over him, and bright yellow hair like silk that fell over his shoulders. Ogmund Skoptesson, who was a tall and handsome man, rode on one side of the king. He said, "Sire, give me that cloak."

The king said, "What would you do with it?"

"I would like to have it," said Ogmund; "and you have given me greater gifts, sire."

The road was such that there were great and wide plains, so that the Gotlanders and Northmen were always in sight of each other, unless where clumps of wood and bushes concealed them from each other now and then. The king gave Ogmund the cloak, and he put it on. When they came out again upon the plain ground, Ogmund and his people rode off right across the road. The Gotlanders, supposing this must be the king, rode all after him, and the king proceeded to the ships. Ogmund escaped with great difficulty; however he reached the ships at last in safety. King Magnus then sailed down the river, and proceeded north to Viken.

**CHAPTER  
XVI.**  
Magnus's  
second  
battle with  
Inge at  
Foxerne.

When King Magnus was east in Viken, there came to him a foreigner called Gifford. He gave himself out for a good knight, and offered his services to King Magnus; for he understood that in the king's dominions there was something to be done. The king received him well. At that time the king was preparing to go to Gotland, on which country the king had pretensions; and besides he would repay the Gotland people the disgrace they had occasioned him in spring, when he was obliged to fly from them. He had then a great force in arms, and the West Gotlanders in the northern districts submitted to him. He set up his camp on the borders, intending to make a foray from thence. When King Inge heard of this he collected troops, and hastened to oppose King

Magnus; and when King Magnus heard of this expedition, many of the chiefs of the people urged him to turn back: but this the king would not listen to, but in the night-time went unsuspectedly against the Swedish king. They met at Foxerne; and when he was drawing up his men in battle order he asked, "Where is Gifford?" but he was not to be found. Then the king made these verses: —

SAGA XL

"Cannot the foreign knight abide  
Our rough array?— where does he hide?"

Then a scald who followed the king replied,—

"The king asks where the foreign knight  
In our array rides to the fight:  
Gifford the knight rode quite away  
When our men joined in bloody fray.  
When swords were wet the knight was slow  
With his bay horse in front to go:  
The foreign knight could not abide  
Our rough array, and went to hide."

There was a great slaughter, and after the battle the field was covered with the Swedes slain, and King Inge escaped by flight. King Magnus gained a great victory. Then came Gifford riding down from the country, and people did not speak well of him for not being in the fight. He went away, and proceeded westward to England; and the voyage was stormy, and Gifford lay in bed. There was an Iceland man called Elldiarn, who went to bale out the water in the ship's hold, and when he saw where Gifford was lying he made this verse: —

"Does it beseem a courtman bold  
Here to be dosing in the hold?  
The bearded knight should danger face:  
The leak gains on our ship apace.  
Here, ply this bucket! bale who can;  
We need the work of every man.  
Our sea-horse stands full to the breast,—  
Sluggards and cowards must not rest."

When they came west to England, Gifford said the Northmen had slandered him. A meeting was ap-



SAGA XI.

pointed, and a count came to it, and the case was brought before him for trial. He said he was not much acquainted with law cases, as he was but young, and had only been a short time in office; and also, of all things, he said what he least understood to judge about was poetry. "But let us hear what it was." Then Elldiarn sang:—

"I heard that in the bloody fight  
Gifford drove all our foes to flight:  
Brave Gifford would the foe abide,  
While all our men ran off to hide.  
At Foxerne the fight was won  
By Gifford's valour all alone:  
Where Gifford fought, alone was he;  
Not one survived to fight or flee."

Then said the count, "Although I know but little about scald-craft, I can hear that this is no slander, but rather the highest praise and honour." Gifford could say nothing against it, yet he felt it was a mockery.

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
Meeting of  
the kings  
at the  
Gotha  
river.

The following summer a meeting of the kings was agreed upon at Konghelle on the Gotha river; and King Magnus, the Swedish king Inge, and the Danish king Eric Swendsson all met there, after giving each other safe conduct to the meeting. Now when the Thing had sat down the kings went forward upon the plain, apart from the rest of the people, and they talked with each other a little while. Then they returned to their people, and a treaty was brought about, by which each should possess the dominions his forefathers had held before him; but each should make good to his own men the waste and manslaughter suffered by them, and then they should agree between themselves about settling this with each other. King Magnus should marry King Inge's daughter Margaret, who afterwards was called Peace-offering. This was proclaimed to the people; and thus, within

a little hour, the greatest enemies were made the best of friends. SAGA XI.

It was observed by the people that none had ever seen men with more of the air of chiefs than these had. King Inge was the largest and stoutest, and, from his age, of the most dignified appearance. King Magnus appeared the most gallant and brisk, and King Eric the most handsome. But they were all handsome men; stout, gallant, and ready in speech. After this was settled they parted.

King Magnus got Margaret, King Inge's daughter, as above related; and she was sent from Sweden to Norway with an honourable retinue. King Magnus had some children before, whose names shall here be given. The one of his sons who was of a mean mother was called Eystein; the other, who was a year younger, was called Sigurd, and his mother's name was Thora. Olaf was the name of a third son, who was much younger than the two first mentioned, and whose mother was Sigrid, a daughter of Saxe of Vik, who was a respectable man in the Drontheim country; she was the king's concubine. People say that when King Magnus came home from his viking cruise to the Western countries, he and many of his people brought with them a great deal of the habits and fashion of clothing of those western parts. They went about on the streets with bare legs, and had short kirtles and over-cloaks\*; and therefore his men called him Magnus Barefoot or Bareleg. Some called him Magnus the Tall, others Magnus the Strife-lover. He was distinguished among other men by his tall stature. The mark of his height is put down in Mary church, in the merchant town of Nidaros, which King Harald built. In the northern door there were

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
King  
Magnus's  
marriage.

\* This proves that the kilt or philibeg and plaid were used in the Western countries, the Hebudes, in 1099.

## SAGA XI.

cut into the wall three crosses,—one for Harald's stature, one for Olaf's, and one for Magnus's; and which crosses each of them could with the greatest ease kiss. The upper was Harald's cross; the lowest was Magnus's; and Olaf's was in the middle, about equally distant from both.

It is said that Magnus composed the following verses about the emperor's daughter:—

“The ring of arms where blue swords gleam,  
The battle-shout, the eagle's scream,  
The joy of war, no more can please:  
Matilda\* is far o'er the seas.  
My sword may break, my shield be cleft,  
Of land or life I may be reft;  
Yet I could sleep, but for one care,—  
One, o'er the seas, with light-brown hair.”

He also composed the following:—

“The time that breeds delay feels long,  
The scald feels weary of his song;  
What sweetens, brightens, eases life?  
'Tis a sweet-smiling lovely wife.  
My time feels long in Thing affairs,  
In Things my loved one ne'er appears.  
The folk full-dressed, while I am sad,  
Talk and oppose—can I be glad?”

When King Magnus heard the friendly words the emperor's daughter had spoken about him,—that she had said such a man as King Magnus was appeared to her an excellent man, he composed the following:—

“The lover hears,—across the sea,  
A favouring word was breathed to me.  
The lovely one with light-brown hair  
May trust her thoughts to senseless air:  
Her thoughts will find like thoughts in me;  
And though my love I cannot see,  
Affection's thoughts fly in the wind,  
And meet each other, true and kind.”

---

\* This Matilda is considered by Torfæus (Hist. Norv. vol. iii. lib. 7. c. 5. p. 439.) to have been a daughter of the emperor Henry IV.

Skopte Ogmundsson came into variance with King Magnus, and they quarrelled about the inheritance of a deceased person which Skopte retained; but the king demanded it with so much earnestness, that it had a dangerous appearance. Many meetings were held about the affair, and Skopte took the resolution that he and his son should never put themselves into the king's power at the same time; and besides there was no necessity to do so. When Skopte was with the king he represented to him that there was relationship between the king and him; and also that he, Skopte, had always been the king's friend, and his father's likewise, and that their friendship had never been shaken. He added, "People might know that I have sense enough not to hold a strife, sire, with you, if I was wrong in what I asked; but it is inherited from my ancestors to defend my rights against any man, without distinction of persons." The king was just the same on this point, and his resolution was by no means softened by such a speech. Then Skopte went home.

Then Finn Skoptesson went to the king, spoke with him, and entreated him to render justice to the father and son in this business. The king answers angrily and sharply. Then said Finn, "I expected something else, sire, from you, than that you would use the law's vexations against me when I took my seat in Qualdinsey Island, which few of your other friends would do; as they said, what was true, that those who were left there were deserted and doomed to death, if King Inge had not shown greater generosity to us than you did; although many consider that we brought shame and disgrace only from thence." The king was not to be moved by this speech, and Finn returned home.

Then came Ogmund Skoptesson to the king; and when he came before him he produced his errand,

SAGA XI.

CHAPTER  
XIX.Of the  
quarrel of  
King Mag-  
nus and  
Skopte Og-  
mundsson.CHAPTER  
XX.Finn  
Skoptes-  
son's pro-  
ceedings.CHAPTER  
XXI.

Ogmund

## SAGA XI.

Skoptes-  
son's pro-  
ceedings.

and begged the king to do what was right and proper towards him and his father. The king insisted that the right was on his side, and said they were "particularly impudent."

Then said Ogmund, "It is a very easy thing for thee, having the power, to do me and my father injustice; and I must say the old proverb is true, that one whose life you save gives none, or a very bad return. This I shall add, that never again shall I come into thy service; nor my father, if I can help it." Then Ogmund went home, and they never saw each other again.

CHAPTER  
XXII.

Skopte Og-  
mundsson's  
voyage  
abroad.

The spring after, Skopte Ogmundsson made ready to travel out of the country. They had five longships all well equipped. His sons, Ogmund, Finn, and Thord, accompanied him on this journey. It was very late before they were ready, and in autumn they went over to Flanders, and wintered there. Early in spring they sailed westward to Valland, and staid there all summer. Then they sailed farther, and through Nörfasund\*; and came in autumn to Rome, where Skopte died. All, both father and sons, died on this journey. Thord, who died in Sicily, lived the longest. It is a common saying among the people, that Skopte was the first Northman who sailed through Nörfasund; and this voyage was much celebrated.

CHAPTER  
XXIII.

Miracle of  
King Olaf  
the Saint  
at a fire.

It happened once in the merchant town (Nidaros), where King Olaf reposes, that there broke out a fire in the town which spread around. Then Olaf's shrine was taken out of the church, and set up opposite the fire. Thereupon came a crazy foolish man, struck the shrine, threatened the holy saint, and said all must be consumed by the flames, both churches and other houses, if he did not save them by his

\* Nörfasund, — the Streights of Gibraltar.

prayers. Now the burning of the church did cease, by the help of Almighty God; but the insane man got sore eyes on the following night, and he lay there until King Olaf entreated God Almighty to be merciful to him; after which he recovered in the same church.

SAGA XI.

It happened once in the merchant town that a woman was brought to the place where the holy King Olaf reposes. She was so miserably shaped, that she was altogether crumpled up; so that both her feet lay in a circle against her loins. But as she was diligent in her prayers, often weeping and making vows to King Olaf, he cured her great infirmities; so that feet, legs, and other limbs straightened, and every limb and part came to the right use for which they were made. Before she could not creep there, and now she went away active and brisk to her family and home.

CHAPTER  
XXIV.  
Miracle of  
King Olaf  
the Saint  
on a lame  
woman.

When King Magnus had been nine years king of Norway, he equipped himself to go out of the country with a great force. He sailed out into the West sea with the finest men who could be got in Norway. All the powerful men of the country followed him; such as Sigurd Hranesson and his brother Ulf, Vidkunner Johnsson, Dag Eilifsson, Sorker of Sogn, Eyvind Olboge the king's marshal, and many other great men. With all this armament the king sailed west to the Orkney Islands, from whence he took with him Earl Erlend's sons, Magnus and Erling, and then sailed to the southern Hebudes. But as he lay under the Scotch land, Magnus Erlendsson \* ran away in the night from the king's ship, swam to the shore, escaped into the woods, and came at last to the Scotch king's court. King Magnus sailed to

CHAPTER  
XXV.  
War in  
Ireland

\* This was Saint Magnus, earl of Orkney, to whom the cathedral of Kirkwall is dedicated, and whose miracles are equal to Saint Olaf's.

## SAGA XL

Ireland with his fleet, and plundered there. King Moriartak came to his assistance, and they conquered a great part of the country, both Dublin and Dyflinar-skiri (Dublin shire). King Magnus was in winter up in Connaught with King Moriartak, but set men to defend the country he had taken. Towards spring both kings went westward with their army all the way to Ulster\*, where they had many battles, subdued the country, and had conquered the greatest part of Ulster when Moriartak returned home to Connaught.†

CHAPTER  
XXVI.  
King  
Magnus's  
foray on  
the land.

King Magnus rigged his ships, and intended returning to Norway, but set his men to defend the country of Dublin. He lay at Ulster ready for sea with his whole fleet. As they thought they needed cattle for ship-provision, King Magnus sent a message to King Moriartak, telling him to send some cattle for slaughter; and appointed the day before Bartholomew's day as the day they should arrive, if the messengers reached him in safety; but the cattle had not made their appearance the evening before Bartholomew's mass. On the mass-day itself, when the sun rose in the sky, King Magnus went on shore himself with the greater part of his men, to look after his people, and to carry off cattle from the coast. The weather was calm, the sun shone, and the road lay through mires and mosses, and there were paths cut through; but there was brushwood on each side of the road. When they came somewhat farther, they reached a height from which they had a wide view. They saw from it a great dust rising up the country, as of horsemen, and they said to each other "That must be the Irish army;" but others said, "It was their own men returning with the cattle." They halted there; and Eyvind Olboge said, "How, sire, do you

\* Uladstir is Ulster.

† Kunnacter is Connaught.

SAGA XI.

intend to direct the march? The men think we are advancing imprudently. You know the Irish are treacherous; think, therefore, of a good counsel for your men." Then the king said, "Let us draw up our men, and be ready, if there be treachery." This was done, and the king and Eyvind went before the line. King Magnus had a helmet on his head; a red shield, in which was inlaid a gilded lion; and was girt with the sword Legbiter, of which the hilt was of tooth (ivory), and the hand-grip wound about with gold thread; and the sword was extremely sharp. In his hand he had a short spear, and a red silk short cloak over his coat, on which, both before and behind, was embroidered a lion in yellow silk; and all men acknowledged that they never had seen a brisker, statelier man. Eyvind had also a red silk cloak like the king's; and he also was a stout, handsome, war-like man.

When the dust-cloud approached nearer they knew their own men, who were driving the cattle. The Irish king had been faithful to the promises he had given the king, and had sent them. Thereupon they all turned towards the ships, and it was mid-day. When they came to the mires they went but slowly over the boggy places; and then the Irish started up on every side against them from every bushy point of land, and the battle began instantly. The Northmen were going divided in various heaps, so that many of them fell.

CHAPTER  
XXVII.  
Fall of  
King  
Magnus.

Then said Eyvind to the king, "Unfortunate is this march to our people, and we must instantly hit upon some good plan."

The king answered, "Call all the men together with the war-horns under the banner, and the men who are here shall make a rampart with their shields, and thus we will retreat backwards out of the mires;



SAGA XI.

and we will clear ourselves fast enough when we get upon firm ground."

The Irish shot boldly; and although they fell in crowds, there came always two in the place of one. Now when the king had come to the nearest ditch there was a very difficult crossing, and few places were passable; so that many Northmen fell there. Then the king called to his lenderman Thorgrim Skindhue, who was an Upland man, and ordered him to go over the ditch with his division. "We shall defend you," said he, "in the mean time, so that no harm shall come to you. Go out then to those holms, and shoot at them from thence; for ye are good bowmen."

When Thorgrim and his men came over the ditch they cast their shields behind their backs, and set off to the ships.

When the king saw this, he said, "Thou art deserting thy king in an unmanly way. I was foolish in making thee a lenderman, and driving Sigurd Hund out of the country; for never would he have behaved so."

King Magnus received a wound, being pierced by a spear through both thighs above the knees. The king laid hold of the shaft between his legs, broke the spear in two, and said, "Thus we break spear-shafts, my lads; let us go briskly on. Nothing hurts me." A little after King Magnus was struck in the neck with an Irish axe, and this was his death-wound. Then those who were behind fled. Vidkunner Johnsson instantly killed the man who had given the king his death-wound, and fled, after having received three wounds; but brought the king's banner and the sword Legbiter to the ships. Vidkunner was the last man who fled; the other next to him was Sigurd Hranesson, and the third before him Dag Eilifsson. There fell with King Magnus, Eyvind Olboge, Ulf

Hranesson, and many other great people. Many of the Northmen fell, but many more of the Irish. The Northmen who escaped sailed away immediately in autumn. Erling, Earl Erlend's\* son, fell with King Magnus in Ireland; but the men who fled from Ireland came to the Orkney Islands. Now when King Sigurd heard that his father had fallen, he set off immediately, leaving the Irish king's daughter behind, and proceeded in autumn with the whole fleet directly to Norway.

SAGA XL

King Magnus was ten years king of Norway, and in his days there was good peace kept within the country; but the people were sorely oppressed with levies. King Magnus was beloved by his men, but the bonders thought him harsh. The words have been transmitted from him that he said when his friends observed that he proceeded incautiously when he was on his expeditions abroad,—“that kings are made for honour, not for long life.” King Magnus was nearly thirty years of age when he fell. Vidkunner did not fly until he had killed the man who gave the king his mortal wound, and for this cause King Magnus's sons had him in the most affectionate regard.

CHAPTER  
XXVIII.  
Of King  
Magnus  
and Vid-  
kunner  
Johnsson.

\* Erlend, the earl of Orkney, who was taken in the former expedition, and died in Drontheim.

## XII.

**SAGA XII. SAGA OF SIGURD THE CRUSADER, AND HIS BROTHERS EYSTEIN AND OLAF.\***

**CHAPTER**  
**I.**  
**Beginning**  
**of the reign**  
**of King**  
**Magnus's**  
**sons.**

**AFTER** King Magnus Barefoot's fall, his sons, Eystein, Sigurd, and Olaf, took the kingdom of Norway. Eystein got the northern, and Sigurd the southern part of the country. King Olaf was then four or five years old, and the third part of the country which he had was under the management of his two brothers. King Sigurd was chosen king when he was thirteen or fourteen years old, and Eystein was a year older. When King Magnus's sons were chosen kings, the men who had followed Skopte Ogmundsson returned home. Some had been to Jerusalem, some to Constantinople; and there they had made themselves renowned, and they had many kinds of novelties to talk about. By these extraordinary tidings many men in Norway were incited to the same expedition; and it was also told that the Northmen who liked to go into the military service at Constantinople found many opportunities of getting property. Then these Northmen desired much that one of the two kings, either Eystein or Sigurd, should go as commander of the troop which was preparing for this expedition. The kings agreed to this, and carried on the equipment at their common expense. Many great men, both of the lenders and bonders, took part in this enterprise; and when all was ready for the journey it was determined that Sigurd should go,

\* They reigned from about 1103 to about 1130.

and Eystein, in the mean time, should rule the kingdom upon their joint account. SAGA XII

A year or two after King Magnus's fall, Hakon, a son of Earl Paul, came from Orkney. The kings gave him the earldom and government of the Orkney Islands, as the earls before him, his father Paul or his uncle Erlend, had possessed it; and Earl Hakon then sailed back immediately to Orkney. CHAPTER II.  
Of the Earls of Orkney.

Four years after the fall of King Magnus, King Sigurd sailed with his people from Norway. He had then sixty ships. So says Thorarin Stutfeld:— CHAPTER III.  
King Sigurd's journey out of the country.

“A young king just and kind,  
People of loyal mind:  
Such brave men soon agree,—  
To distant lands they sail with glee.  
To the distant Holy Land  
A brave and pious band,  
Magnificent and gay,  
In sixty long-ships glide away.”

King Sigurd sailed in autumn to England, where Henry, son of William the Bastard, was then king, and Sigurd remained with him all winter. So says Einar Skuleson:—

“The king is on the waves!  
The storm he boldly braves.  
His ocean-steed,  
With winged speed,  
O'er the white-flashing surges,  
To England's coast he urges;  
And there he stays the winter o'er:  
More gallant king ne'er trod that shore.”

In spring King Sigurd and his fleet sailed westward to Valland\*, and in autumn came to Galicia†, where he staid the second winter. So says Einar Skuleson:— CHAPTER IV.  
Of King Sigurd's journey.

“Our king, whose land so wide  
No kingdom stands beside,

---

\* Valland,—the west of France.

† Galizo land,—the province of Galicia, in the north-west of Spain.

SAGA XII.  
—

In Jacob's land\* next winter spent,  
On holy things intent ;  
And I have heard the royal youth  
Cut off an earl who swerved from truth.  
Our brave king will endure no ill, —  
The hawks with him will get their fill."

It went thus : — The earl who ruled over the land made an agreement with King Sigurd, that he should provide King Sigurd and his men a market at which they could purchase victuals all the winter ; but this he did not fulfil longer than to about Yule. It began then to be difficult to get food and necessities, for it is a poor barren land. Then King Sigurd with a great body of men went against a castle which belonged to the earl ; and the earl fled from it, having but few people. King Sigurd took there a great deal of victuals and of other booty, which he put on board of his ships, and then made ready and proceeded westward to Spain. It so fell out, as the king was sailing past Spain, that some vikings who were cruising for plunder met him with a fleet of galleys, and King Sigurd attacked them. This was his first battle with heathen men ; and he won it, and took eight galleys from them. So says Halldor Skualldre :—

" Bold vikings, not slow  
To the death-fray to go,  
Meet our Norse king by chance,  
And their galleys advance.  
The bold vikings lost  
Many a man of their host,  
And eight galleys too,  
With cargo and crew."

Thereafter King Sigurd sailed against a castle called Sintre†, and fought another battle. This castle is in Spain, and was occupied by many heathens, who from thence plundered Christian people. King Sigurd took the castle, and killed every man in it, because they

\* Jacob's land. Galicia is called Jacob's land by the scald, from Saint James of Compostella : the apostle James, whose relics are held in veneration at Compostella in Spain. Portugal appears to have been reckoned part of Spain, and Galicia a distinct country.

† Sintre, now Cintra, in Portugal ; then reckoned part of Spain.

refused to be baptized; and he got there an immense booty. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

SAGA XII.

“From Spain I have much news to tell  
Of what our generous king befell.  
And first he routs the viking crew,  
At Cintra next the heathens slew;  
The men he treated as God’s foes,  
Who dared the true faith to oppose.  
No man he spared who would not take  
The Christian faith for Jesus’ sake.”

After this King Sigurd sailed with his fleet to Lisbon, which is a great city in Spain, half Christian and half heathen; for there lies the division between Christian Spain and heathen Spain\*, and all the districts which lie west of the city are occupied by heathens. There King Sigurd had his third battle with the heathens, and gained the victory, and with it a great booty. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

CHAPTER  
V.  
Lisbon  
taken.

“The son of kings on Lisbon’s plains  
A third and bloody battle gains.  
He and his Norsemen boldly land,  
Running their stout ships on the strand.”

Then King Sigurd sailed westwards along heathen Spain, and brought up at a town called Alkassi†; and here he had his fourth battle with the heathens, and took the town, and killed so many people that the town was left empty. They got there also immense booty. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

“A fourth great battle, I am told,  
Our Norse king and his people hold  
At Alkassi; and here again  
The victory fell to our Norsemen.”

---

\* The heathen Spain would be the parts of the Peninsula occupied by the Moors.

† There is some difficulty in finding a town corresponding to this Alkassi. It cannot be Alkassir in Fez in Africa, as some have supposed, as the context does not agree with it; nor with Algesiras, which is within the Streights of Gibraltar (Norfasund), and it would have been so described. Alcasser de Sal lies too far inland to have been the place. Lady Grosvenor, in her *Yacht Voyage*, 1841, speaks of a Moorish palace near Seville, called Alcasir, which would correspond best with the saga account.

SAGA XII. And also this verse :—

“ I heard that through the town he went,  
And heathen widows’ wild lament  
Resounded in the empty halls;  
For every townsman flies or falls.”

CHAPTER  
VI.  
Battle in  
the island  
Formen-  
tara.

King Sigurd then proceeded on his voyage, and came to Nörfa sound\* ; and in the sound he was met by a large viking force, and the king gave them battle : and this was his fifth engagement with heathens since the time he left Norway. He gained the victory here also. So says Halldor Skualldre :—

“ Ye moistened your dry swords with blood,  
As through Niorfa sound ye stood :  
The screaming raven got a feast,  
As ye sailed onward to the East.”

King Sigurd then sailed eastward along the coast of Serkland†, and came to an island there called Formentara. There a great many heathen Moors had taken up their dwelling in a cave, and had built a strong stone-wall before its mouth. It was high up to climb to the wall, so that whoever attempted to ascend was driven back with stones or missile weapons. They herried the country all round, and carried all their booty to their cave. King Sigurd landed on this island, and went to the cave ; but it lay in a precipice, and there was a high winding path to the stone-wall, and the precipice above projected over it. The heathens defended the stone-wall, and were not afraid of the Northmen’s arms ; for they could throw stones, or shoot down upon the Northmen under their feet : neither did the Northmen, under such circumstances, dare to mount up. The heathens took their clothes and other valuable things, carried them out upon the wall, spread them out before the Northmen, shouted,

\* Nörfa Sound, — the Streights of Gibraltar ; so called from Nörfa, the first Norse viking who passed through it.

† Serkland is the Saracen’s land, the North of Africa ; and the inhabitants blumen, — the Moors.

and defied them, and upbraided them as cowards. Then Sigurd fell upon this plan. He had two ship's boats, such as we call barks, drawn up the precipice right above the mouth of the cave; and had thick ropes fastened around the stem, stern, and hull of each. In these boats as many men went as could find room, and then the boats were lowered by the ropes down in front of the mouth of the cave; and the men in the boats shot with stones and missiles into the cave, and the heathens were thus driven from the stone-wall. Then Sigurd with his troops climbed up the precipice to the foot of the stone-wall, which they succeeded in breaking down, so that they came into the cave. Now the heathens fled within the stone-wall that was built across the cave; on which the king ordered large trees to be brought to the cave, made a great pile in the mouth of it, and set fire to the wood. When the fire and smoke got the upper hand, some of the heathens lost their lives in it; some fled; some fell by the hands of the Northmen; and part were killed, part burned; and the Northmen made the greatest booty they had got on all their expeditions. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

“ Formentara lay  
In the victor's way;  
His ships' stems fly  
To victory.  
The blumen there  
Must fire bear,  
And Norsemen's steel  
At their hearts feel.”

And also thus:—

“ 'Twas a feat of renown, —  
The boat lowered down,  
With a boat's crew brave,  
In front of the cave;  
While up the rock scaling,  
And comrades up trailing,  
The Norsemen gain,  
And the blumen are slain.”



SAGA XII.

And also Thorarin Stuttfeld says:—

“ The king’s men up the mountain’s side  
 Drag two boats from the ocean’s tide:  
 The two boats lay,  
 Like hill-wolves gray.  
 Now o’er the rock in ropes they’re swinging,  
 Well manned, and death to blumen bringing:  
 They hang before  
 The robbers’ door.”

CHAPTER  
 VII.  
 Of the  
 battles at  
 Ivitsa and  
 Minorca.

Thereafter King Sigurd proceeded on his expedition, and came to an island called Ivitsa (Ivica), and had there his seventh battle, and gained a victory. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

“ His ships at Ivica now ride,  
 The king’s, whose fame spreads far and wide;  
 And here the bearers of the shield  
 Their arms again in battle wield.”

Thereafter King Sigurd came to an island called Minorca, and held there his eighth battle, with heathen men, and gained the victory. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

“ On green Minorca’s plains  
 The eighth battle now he gains:  
 Again the heathen foe  
 Falls at the Norse king’s blow.”

CHAPTER  
 VIII.  
 Earl Roger  
 made a  
 king.

In spring King Sigurd came to Sicily, and remained a long time there. There was then a Duke Roger in Sicily, who received the king kindly, and invited him to a feast. King Sigurd came to it with a great retinue, and was splendidly entertained. Every day Duke Roger stood at the company’s table, doing service to the king; but the seventh day of the feast, when the people had come to table, and had wiped their hands, King Sigurd took the Duke by the hand, led him up to the high seat, and saluted him with the title of king; and gave the right that there should be always a king over the dominion of Sicily, although before there had only been earls or dukes over that country.\*

\* It appears to have been the feudal idea of the times that a title, or

It is written in the chronicles, that Earl Roger let himself first be called king of Sicily in the year of our Lord 1102, having before contented himself with the title of earl only of Sicily, although he was duke of Calabria and Apulia, and was called Roger the Great; and when he afterwards made the king of Tunet or Tunis tributary to him, he had these words engraved on his sword,—

SAGA XII.  
CHAPTER  
IX.  
Of King  
Roger.

“Apulus et Calaber, Siculus mihi servit et Afer.”

King Roger of Sicily was a very great king. He won and subdued all Apulia, and many large islands besides in the Greek sea; and therefore he was called Roger the Great. His son was William king of Sicily, who for a long time had great hostility with the emperor of Constantinople. King William had three daughters, but no son. One of his daughters he married to the Emperor Henry, a son of the Emperor Frederic; and their son was Frederic, who for a short time after was emperor of Rome. His second daughter was married to the Duke of Kypur.\* The third daughter, Margaret, was married to the chief of the corsairs; but the Emperor Henry killed both these brothers-in-law. The daughter of Roger the Great, king of Sicily, was married to the Emperor Manuel of Constantinople; and their son was the Emperor Kirialax.†

In summer King Sigurd sailed across the Greek sea to Palestine‡, and came to Acre§, where he landed, and went by land to Jerusalem.¶ Now when Baldwin, king of Palestine, heard that King Sigurd would visit

CHAPTER  
X.  
King Si-  
gurd's ex-  
pedition to  
Palestine.

dignity, must be conferred by a superior in title or dignity; and thus a wandering king from the North could raise the Earl Roger of Sicily to the kingly title.

\* Kypur—Cyprus.

† Kirialax. Kuriou Alexou—the Emperor Alexis Comnenis.

‡ Jorsalaland—Palestine; the land of Jerusalem.

§ Akersborg—Acre.

¶ Jorsalaborg—Jerusalem.

## SAGA XII.

the city, he let valuable clothes be brought and spread upon the road, and the nearer to the city the more valuable; and said, "Now ye must know that a celebrated king from the northern part of the earth is come to visit us; and many are the gallant deeds and celebrated actions told of him, therefore we shall receive him well; and in doing so we shall also know his magnificence and power. If he ride straight on to the city, taking little notice of these splendid preparations, I will conclude that he has enough of such things in his own kingdom; but, on the other hand, if he rides off the road, I shall not think so highly of his royal dignity at home." Now King Sigurd rides to the city with great state; and when he saw this magnificence, he rode straight forward over the clothes, and told all his men to do the same. King Baldwin received him particularly well, and rode with him all the way to the river Jordan, and then back to the city of Jerusalem. Einar Skuleson speaks thus of it:—

"Good reason has the scald to sing  
The generous temper of the king,  
Whose sea-cold keel from northern waves  
Ploughs the blue sea that green isles laves.  
At Acre scarce were we made fast,  
In holy ground our anchors cast,  
When the king made a joyful morn  
To all who toil with him had borne."

And again he made these lines:—

"To Jerusalem he came,  
He who loves war's noble game,  
(The scald no greater monarch finds  
Beneath the heaven's wide hall of winds)  
All sin and evil from him flings  
In Jordan's wave: for all his sins  
(Which all must praise) he pardon wins."

King Sigurd staid a long time in the land of Jerusalem in autumn, and in the beginning of winter.

King Baldwin made a magnificent feast for King Sigurd and many of his people, and gave him many holy relics. By the orders of King Baldwin and the

patriarch, there was taken a splinter off the holy cross ; and on this holy relic both made oath, that this wood was of the holy cross upon which God himself had been tortured. Then this holy relic was given to King Sigurd ; with the condition that he, and twelve other men with him, should swear to promote Christianity with all his power, and erect an archbishop's seat in Norway if he could ; and also that the cross should be kept where the holy King Olaf reposed, and that he should introduce tithes, and also pay them himself. After this King Sigurd returned to his ships at Acre ; and then King Baldwin prepared to go to Syria, to a town called Saet, which some think had been Sidon. This castle, which belonged to the heathens, he wished to conquer, and lay under the Christians. On this expedition King Sigurd accompanied him with all his men, and sixty ships ; and after the kings had besieged the town some time it surrendered, and they took possession of it, and of a great treasure of money ; and their men found other booty. King Sigurd made a present of his share to King Baldwin. So says Halldor Skualldre :—

“ He who for wolves provides the feast  
Seized on the city in the East,  
The heathen nest ; and honour drew,  
And gold to give, from those he slew.”

Einar Skuleson also tells of it :—

“ The Norsemen's king, the scalds relate,  
Has ta'en the heathen town of Saet :  
The slinging engine with dread noise  
Gables and roofs with stones destroys.  
The town wall totters too, — it falls ;  
The Norsemen mount the blackened walls.  
He who stains red the raven's bill  
Has won, — the town lies at his will.”

Thereafter King Sigurd went to his ships, and made ready to leave Palestine. They sailed north to the island Cyprus ; and King Sigurd staid there a while, and then went to the Greek country, and came to the

## SAGA XII.

land with all his fleet at Engilsness.\* Here he lay still for a fortnight, although every day it blew a breeze for going before the wind to the north; but Sigurd would wait a side wind, so that the sails might stretch fore and aft in the ship: for in all his sails there was silk joined in, before and behind in the sail, and neither those before nor those behind the ships could see the slightest appearance of this, if the vessel was before the wind; so they would rather wait a side wind.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
King Sigurd's expedition to Constantinople.

When King Sigurd sailed into Constantinople, he steered near the land. Over all the land there are burghs, castles, country towns, the one upon the other without interval. There from the land one could see into the bights of the sails; and the sails stood so close beside each other, that they seemed to form one enclosure. All the people turned out to see King Sigurd sailing past. The Emperor Alexius had also heard of King Sigurd's expedition, and ordered the city port of Constantinople to be opened, which is called the Gold Tower, through which the emperor rides when he has been long absent from Constantinople, or has made a campaign in which he has been victorious. The emperor had precious cloths spread out from the Gold Tower to Loktiar, which is the name of the emperor's most splendid hall. King Sigurd ordered his men to ride in great state into the city, and not to regard all the new things they might see; and this they did. The emperor sent singers and stringed instruments to meet them; and with this great splendour King Sigurd and his followers were received into Constantinople. It is told that King Sigurd had his horse shod with golden shoes before he rode into the city, and managed so that one of the

\* Engilsness, — supposed to be the ness at the river Ægos, called Ægisnes in the Orkeyinga Saga, within the Dardanelles; not Cape Saint Angelo in the Morea.

shoes came off in the street, but that none of his men should regard it. When King Sigurd came to the magnificent hall, every thing was in the grandest style; and when King Sigurd's men had come to their seats, and were ready to drink, the emperor's messengers came into the hall, bearing between them purses of gold and silver, which they said the emperor had sent to King Sigurd: but the king did not look upon it, but told his men to divide it among themselves. When the messengers returned to the emperor, and told him this, he said, "This king must be very powerful and rich not to care for such things, or even give a word of thanks for them;" and ordered them to return with great chests filled with gold. They come again to King Sigurd, and say, "These gifts and presents are sent thee from the emperor." King Sigurd said, "This is a great and handsome treasure, my men; divide it among you." The messengers return, and tell this to the emperor. He replies, "This king must either exceed other kings in power and wealth, or he has not so much understanding as a king ought to have. Go thou now the third time, and carry him the costliest purple, and these chests with ornaments of gold:" to which he added two gold rings. Now the messengers went again to King Sigurd, and told him the emperor had sent him this great treasure. Then he stood up, and took the rings, and put them on his hand; and the king made a beautiful oration in Greek, in which he thanked the emperor in many fine expressions for all this honour and magnificence, but divided the treasure again very equitably among his men. King Sigurd remained here some time. The Emperor Alexius sent his men to him to ask if he would rather accept from the emperor six lispund of gold, or would have the emperor give the games in his honour which the emperor was used to have

**SAGA XII.** played at the Padreimr.\* King Sigurd preferred the games, and the messengers said the spectacle would not cost the emperor less than the money offered. Then the emperor prepared for the games, which were held in the usual way: but this day every thing went on better for the king than for the queen; for the queen has always the half part in the games, and their men, therefore, always strive against each other in all games. The Greeks accordingly think that when the king's men win more games at the Padreimr than the queen's, the king will gain the victory when he goes into battle. People who have been in Constantinople tell that the Padreimr is thus constructed:—A high wall surrounds a flat plain, which may be compared to a round bare Thing-place, with earthen banks all around at the stone-wall, on which banks the spectators sit; but the games themselves are in the flat plain. There are many sorts of old events represented concerning the Asers, Volsungers, and Giukungers, in these games†; and all the figures are cast in copper, or metal, with so great art that they appear to be living things; and to the people it appears as if they were really present in the games. The games themselves are so artfully and cleverly managed, that people appear to be riding in the air; and at them also are used shot-fire‡, and all kinds of harp-playing, singing, and music instruments.

**CHAPTER  
XIII.**  
King Sigurd makes  
a great

It is related that King Sigurd one day was to give the emperor a feast, and he ordered his men to provide sumptuously all that was necessary for the en-

\* Padreimr, or Padrennir,—the Hippodrome where the great spectacles were given.

† It is not likely that the feats of the Asers, Volsungers, and Giukungers were represented in the games of the Hippodrome at Constantinople; but very likely that the Væringers, and other Northmen there, would apply the names of their own mythology to the representations taken from the Greek mythology.

‡ Fire-works, or the Greek fire, probably were used.

tertainment; and when all things were provided which are suitable for an entertainment given by a great personage to persons of high dignity, King Sigurd ordered his men to go to the street in the city where fire-wood was sold, as they would require a great quantity to prepare the feast. They said the king need not be afraid of wanting fire-wood, for every day many loads were brought into the town. When it was necessary, however, to have fire-wood, it was found that it was all sold, which they told the king. He replied, "Go and try if you can get walnuts. They will answer as well as wood for fuel." They went and got as many as they needed. Now came the emperor, and his grandees and court, and sat down to table. All was very splendid; and King Sigurd received the emperor with great state, and entertained him magnificently. When the queen and the emperor found that nothing was wanting, she sent some persons to inquire what they had used for fire-wood; and they came to a house filled with walnuts, and they came back and told the queen. "Truly," said she, "this is a magnificent king, who spares no expense where his honour is concerned." She had contrived this to try what they would do when they could get no fire-wood to dress their feast with.

King Sigurd soon after prepared for his return home. He gave the emperor all his ships; and the valuable figure-heads which were on the king's ships were set up in Peter's church, where they have since been to be seen. The emperor gave the king many horses and guides to conduct him through all his dominions, and appointed markets for him in his territories at which he could buy food and drink. Then King Sigurd left Constantinople; but a great many Northmen remained, and went into the emperor's pay. Then King Sigurd travelled from Bulgaria, and

SAGA XII  
feast for the  
emperor of  
Constantinople.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
King  
Sigurd the  
Crusader's  
return  
home.



## SAGA XII.

through Hungary, Pannonia, Suabia, and Bavaria. In Suabia he met the Roman emperor Lotharius, who received him in the most friendly way, gave him guides through his dominions, and had markets established for him at which he could purchase all he required. When King Sigurd came to Sleswick in Denmark, Earl Eilif made a sumptuous feast for him; and it was then midsummer. In Heidaby\* he met the Danish king Nicolaus, who received him in the most friendly way, made a great entertainment for him, accompanied him north to Jutland, and gave him a ship provided with every thing needful. From thence the king returned to Norway, and was joyfully welcomed on his return to his kingdom. It was the common talk among the people, that none had ever made so honourable a journey from Norway as this of King Sigurd. He was twenty years of age, and had been three years on these travels. His brother Olaf was then twelve years old.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
King  
Eystein's  
doings at  
home in  
the mean-  
time.

King Eystein had also effected much in the country that was useful while King Sigurd was on his journey. He had a large hall built in Bergen, which was the greatest and most celebrated lodging-inn in Norway. He also established a monastery at Nordness in Bergen, and endowed it with much property. He also built Michael's church, which is a very splendid stone temple. In the king's house there he also built the Church of the Apostles, and the great hall, which is the most magnificent wooden structure that was ever built in Norway. He also built a church at Agdaness with a parapet; and a harbour, where formerly there had been a barren spot only. In Nidaros he built in the King's street the church of Saint Nicolas, which was particularly ornamented with carved work, and all in wood. He also built a church north in Vaage

\* The town opposite to Slesvig, on the river Slie.

in Halogaland, and endowed it with property and revenues. SAGA XII.

King Eystein sent a verbal message to the most intelligent and powerful of the men of Jemteland, and invited them to him; received them all as they came, with great kindness; accompanied them part of the way home, and gave them presents, and thus enticed them into a friendship with him. Now as many of them became accustomed to visit him and receive gifts from him, and he also sent gifts to some who did not come themselves, he soon gained the favour of all the people who had most influence in the country. Then he spoke to the Jemteland people, and told them they had done ill in turning away from the kings of Norway, and withdrawing from them their taxes and allegiance. He represented to them how many useful things they could get from Norway, and how inconvenient it was for them to apply to the Swedish king for what they needed.\* By these speeches he brought matters so far, that the Jemteland people of their own accord offered to be subject to him, which they said was useful and necessary for them; and thus, on both sides, it was agreed that the Jemtelanders should put their whole country under King Eystein. The first beginning was with the men of consequence, who persuaded the people to take an oath of fidelity to King Eystein; and then they went to King Eystein, and confirmed the country to him by oath; and this arrangement has since continued for a long time. King Eystein thus conquered Jemteland by his wisdom, and not by hostile inroads as some of his forefathers had done.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
Of King  
Eystein.

King Eystein was the handsomest man that could be seen. He had blue open eyes; his hair yellow and

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
Of King  
Eystein's

\* The dried fish of Norway are a necessary article of food to the people of this district, which they cannot get from the Baltic coast of Sweden.

## SAGA XII.

perfections  
of body  
and mind.

curling; his stature not tall, but of the middle size. He was wise, intelligent, and acquainted with the laws and history. He had much knowledge of mankind, was quick in counsel, prudent in words, and very eloquent and very generous. He was very merry, yet modest; and was liked and beloved, indeed, by all the people. He was married to Ingebord, a daughter of Guttorm son of Thorer of Steige; and their daughter was Maria, who afterwards married Gudbrand Skafhaugsson. King Eystein had in many ways improved the laws and privileges of the country people, and kept strictly to the laws; and he made himself acquainted with all the laws of Norway, and showed in every thing great prudence and understanding. From this it could be easily seen what a valuable man King Eystein was, how full of friendship, and how much he turned his mind to examining and avoiding every thing that could be of disadvantage to his friends.

There was an Iceland man in the king's house called Ivar Ingemundsson. The man was witty, of great family, and also a poet; and the king was particularly kind to him, which will be seen from what we are now going to relate. Ivar was one day out of spirits; and when the king perceived it he called Ivar to him, entered into conversation with him, and asked him why he was so melancholy. "Before, when thou wast with us, we had much amusement with thy conversation. Art thou no longer satisfied to be with us?"

Ivar replied, it was not the case.

The king: "I do not ask thee on this account; for I know thou art a man of too good an understanding to believe that I would do any thing against thee. Tell me then what it is."

He replied, "I cannot tell thee what it is."

Then said the king, "I will try to guess what it is. Is there any man who displeases thee?"

To this he replied, "No."

"Dost thou think thou art held in less esteem by me than thou wouldst like to be?"

To this he also replied, "No."

"Hast thou observed any thing whatever that has made an impression on thee at which thou art ill pleased?"

He replied, it was not this either.

The king: "It is difficult now to guess. Is there any girl here, or in any other country, to whom thy affections are engaged?"

He said it was so.

The king said, "Do not be melancholy on that account. Go to Iceland when springs sets in, and I shall give thee money, and presents, and with these my letters and seal to the men who have the principal sway there; and I know no man there who will not obey my persuasions or threats."

Ivar replied, "My fate is heavier, sire; for my own brother has the girl."

Then said the king, "Throw it out of thy mind; and I know a counsel against this. After Yule I will travel in guest-quarters. Thou shalt come along with me, and thou wilt have an opportunity of seeing many beautiful girls; and, provided they are not of the royal stock, I will get thee one of them in marriage."

Ivar replies, "Sire, my fate is still the heavier; for as oft as I see beautiful and excellent girls I only remember the more that girl, and they increase my misery."

The king: "Then I will give thee property to manage, and estates for thy amusement."

He replied, "For that I have no desire."

The king: "Then I will give thee money, that thou mayst travel in other countries."

He said he did not wish this.

Then said the king, "It is difficult for me to seek

## SAGA XII.

farther, for I have proposed every thing that occurs to me. There is but one thing else; and that is but little compared to what I have offered thee. Come to me every day after the tables are removed, and, if I am not sitting upon important business, I shall talk with thee about the girl in every way that I can think of; and I shall do so at leisure. It sometimes happens that sorrow is lightened by being brought out openly; and thou shalt never go away without some gift."

He replied, "This I will do, sire, and return thanks for this inquiry."

And now they did so constantly; and when the king was not occupied with weightier affairs he talked with him, and his sorrow by degrees wore away, and he was again in good spirits.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
Of King  
Sigurd.

King Sigurd was a stout and strong man, with brown hair; of a manly appearance, but not handsome; well grown; of little speech, and often not friendly, but good to his friends, and faithful; not very eloquent, but moral and polite. King Sigurd was self-willed, and severe in his revenge; strict in observing the law; was generous; and withal an able, powerful king. His brother Olaf was a tall, thin man; handsome in countenance; lively, modest, and popular. When all these brothers, Eystein, Sigurd, and Olaf, were kings of Norway, they did away with many burthens which the Danes had laid upon the people in the time that Swend Alfifason ruled Norway; and on this account they were much beloved, both by the people and the great men of the country.

CHAPTER  
XIX.  
Of King  
Sigurd's  
dream.

Once King Sigurd fell into low spirits, so that few could get him to converse, and he sat but a short time at the drinking table. This was heavy on his counsellors, friends, and court; and they begged King Eystein to consider how they could discover the cause why the people who came to the king could get no reply to what they laid before him. King Eystein

answered them, that it was difficult to speak with the king about this; but at last, on the entreaty of many, he promised to do it. Once, when they were both together, King Eystein brought the matter before his brother, and asked the cause of his melancholy. "It is a great grief, sire, to many to see thee so melancholy; and we would like to know what has occasioned it, or if perchance thou hast heard any news of great weight?"

King Sigurd replies, that it was not so.

"Is it then, brother," says King Eystein, "that you would like to travel out of the country, and augment your dominions as our father did?"

He answered, that it was not that either.

"Is it, then, that any man here in the country has offended?"

To this also the king said "No."

"Then I would like to know if you have dreamt any thing that has occasioned this depression of mind?"

The king answered, that it was so.

"Tell me then, brother, thy dream."

King Sigurd said, "I will not tell it, unless thou interpret it as it may turn out; and I shall be quick at perceiving if thy interpretation be right or not."

King Eystein replies, "This is a very difficult matter, sir, on both sides; as I am exposed to thy anger if I cannot interpret it, and to the blame of the public if I can do nothing in the matter; but I will rather fall under your displeasure, even if my interpretation should not be agreeable."

King Sigurd replies, "It appeared to me, in a dream, as if we brothers were all sitting on a bench in front of Christ church in Drontheim; and it appeared to me as if our relative King Olaf the Saint came out of the church adorned with the royal raiment glancing and splendid, and with the most

SAGA XII. delightful and joyful countenance. He went to our brother King Olaf, took him by the hand, and said cheerfully to him, 'Come with me, friend.' On which he appeared to stand up and go into the church. Soon after King Olaf the Saint came out of the church, but not so gay and brilliant as before. Now he went to thee, brother, and said to thee that thou shouldst go with him; on which he led thee with him, and ye went into the church. Then I thought, and waited for it, that he would come to me, and meet me; but it was not so. Then I was seized with great sorrow, and great dread and anxiety fell upon me, so that I was altogether without strength; and then I awoke."

King Eystein replies, "Thus I interpret your dream, sire, — That the bench betokens the kingdom we brothers have; and as you thought King Olaf came with so glad a countenance to our brother King Olaf, he will likely live the shortest time of us brothers, and have all good to expect hereafter; for he is amiable, young in years, and has gone but little into excess, and King Olaf the Saint must help him. But as you thought he came towards me, but not with so much joy, I may possibly live a few years longer, but not become old, and I trust his providence will stand over me; but that he did not come to me with the same splendour and glory as to our brother Olaf, that will be because, in many ways, I have sinned and transgressed his command. If he delayed coming to thee, I think that in no way betokens thy death, but rather a long life: but it may be that some heavy accident may occur to thee, as there was an unaccountable dread overpowering thee; but I foretel that thou wilt be the oldest of us, and wilt rule the kingdom longest."

Then said Sigurd, "This is well and intelligibly interpreted, and it is likely it will be so." And now the king began to be cheerful again.

King Sigurd married Malmfrid, a daughter of King Harald Waldemarsson eastward in Novogorod. Waldemar was a son of Jorisleif the Old and Ingigerd, daughter of the Swedish king Olaf the Swede. King Harald Waldemarsson's mother was Queen Gyde the Old, a daughter of the English king Harald Godwins-son. Queen Malmfrid's mother was Queen Christina, a daughter of the Swedish king Inge Steinkelsson. Harald Waldemarsson's other daughter, sister to Malmfrid, was Ingeborg, who was married to Canute Lavard, a son of the Danish king Eric the Good, and grandson of King Swend Ulfsson. Canute's and Ingeborg's children were, the Danish king Waldemar, who came to the Danish kingdom after Swend Ericsson; and daughters Margaret, Christina, and Catherine. Margaret was married to Stig Huetaleder; and their daughter was Christina, married to the Swedish king Karl Sorkvisson, King John's father. Christina, who was married to Earl Erling Skakke, was a daughter of King Sigurd and Malmfrid.

The king's relative, Sigurd Hranesson, came into strife with King Sigurd; he was married to Skialdvor, a sister of King Magnus Barefoot by the mother's side. He had had the Lapland collectorship\* on the king's account, because of their relationship and long friendship, and also of the many services Sigurd Hranesson had done to the kings; for he was a very distinguished, popular man. But it happened to him, as it often does to others, that persons more wicked and jealous than upright slandered him to King Sigurd, and whispered in the king's ear that he took more of the Laplanders' tribute to himself than was proper. They spoke so long about this, that King Sigurd conceived

SAGA XII.

CHAPTER

XX.

Of King  
Sigurd's  
marriage.

CHAPTER

XXI.

Here be-  
gins the  
account of  
the cases  
before the  
Thing.

\* The journey to Lapland to collect the taxes, with which a profitable trade in furs was connected, was, even in the earliest times, one of the greatest offices the king had to confer in respect of gain. Furs were always at a high value in the middle ages for ornamental purposes.



**SAGA XII.** a dislike and anger to him, and sent a message to him. When he appeared before the king, the king carried these feelings with him, and said, "I did not expect that thou shouldst have repaid me for thy great fiefs and other dignities by taking the king's property, and abstracting a greater portion of it than is allowable."

Sigurd Hranesson replies, "It is not true that has been told you; for I have only taken such portion as I had your permission to take."

King Sigurd replies, "Thou shalt not slip away with this; but the matter shall be seriously treated before it comes to an end." With that they parted.

Soon after, by the advice of his friends, the king laid an action against Sigurd Hranesson at the Thing-meeting in Bergen, and would have him made an outlaw. Now when the business took this turn, and appeared so dangerous, Sigurd Hranesson went to King Eystein, and told him what mischief King Sigurd intended to do him, and entreated his assistance. King Eystein replied, "This is a difficult matter that you propose to me, to speak against my brother; and there is a great difference between defending a cause and pursuing it in law:" and added, that this was a matter which concerned him and Sigurd equally. "But for thy distress, and our relationship, I shall bring in a word for thee."

Soon after Eystein visited King Sigurd, and entreated him to spare the man, reminding him of the relationship between them and Sigurd Hranesson, who was married to their aunt Skialdvor; and said he would pay the penalty for the crime committed against the king, although he could not with truth impute any blame to him in the matter. Besides, he reminded the king of the long friendship with Sigurd Hranesson. King Sigurd replied, that it was better government to punish such acts. Then King Eystein

replied, "If thou, brother, wilt follow the law, and punish such acts according to the country's privileges, then it would be most correct that Sigurd Hranesson produce his witnesses, and that the case be judged at the Thing, but not at a meeting; for the case comes under the law of the land, not under Biarkö law."\*

Then said Sigurd, "It may possibly be so that the case belongs to it, as thou sayest, King Eystein; and if it be against law what has hitherto been done in this case, then we shall bring it before the Thing." Then the kings parted, and each seemed determined to take his own way. King Sigurd summoned the parties in the case before the Arnarness Thing, and intended to pursue it there. King Eystein came also to the Thing-place; and when the case was brought forward for judgment, King Eystein went to the Thing before judgment was given upon Sigurd Hranesson. Now King Sigurd told the lagmen to pronounce the judgment; but King Eystein replied thus: "I trust there are here men acquainted sufficiently with the laws of Norway, to know that they cannot condemn a lenderman to be outlawed at this Thing."† And he then explained how the law was, so that every man clearly understood it. Then said King Sigurd, "Thou art taking up this matter very warmly, King Eystein, and it is likely the case will cost more trouble before it comes to an end than we intended; but nevertheless we shall follow it out. I will have him condemned to be outlawed in his native place." Then said King Eystein, "There are certainly not many things which do not succeed with

\* The meaning here is not clear. It may be that higher up in the north than Biarkö, the Thing circle and jurisdiction were not so well established; and that there meetings and summary proceedings prevailed, and not regular Thing-law. Biarkö-ret was a particular and old code.

† This Arnarness Thing was probably not the competent court; for it appears by the Grey Goose that all forms and jurisdictions were settled and highly important points in the administration of law.

## SAGA XII.

thee, and especially when there are but few and small folks to oppose one who has carried through such great things." And thus they parted, without any thing being concluded in the case. Thereafter King Sigurd called together a Gula Thing, went himself there, and summoned to him many high chiefs. King Eystein came there also with his suite\*; and many meetings and conferences were held among people of understanding concerning this case, and it was tried and examined before the lagmen. Now King Eystein objected that all the parties summoned in any cases tried here belonged to the Thing-district; but in this case the deed and the parties belonged to Halogaland. The Thing accordingly ended in doing nothing, as King Eystein had thus made it incompetent. The kings parted in great wrath; and King Eystein went north to Drontheim. King Sigurd, on the other hand, summoned to him all lendermen, and also the house-servants of the lendermen, and named out of every district a number of the bonders from the south parts of the country, so that he had collected a large army about him; and proceeded with all this crowd northwards along the coast to Halogaland, and intended to use all his power to make Sigurd Hranesson an outlaw among his own relations. For this purpose he summoned to him the Halogaland and Numadal people, and appointed a Thing at Krafnesta. King Eystein prepared himself also, and proceeded with many people from the town of Nidaros to the Thing, where he made Sigurd Hranesson, by hand-shake before witnesses, deliver over to him the following and defending this case. At this Thing both the kings spoke, each for his own side. Then King Eystein asks the lagmen, where that law was

\* The French word *suite* seems connected with the old Norman or Icelandic word *sveitir* of the same meaning.

made in Norway which gave the bonders the right to judge between the kings of the country, when they had pleas with each other. "I shall bring witnesses to prove that Sigurd has given the case into my hands; and it is with me, not with Sigurd Hranesson, that King Sigurd has to do in this case." The lagmen said, that disputes between kings must be judged only at the Ore Thing in Nidaros. SAGA XII.

King Eystein said, "So I thought that it should be there, and the case must be removed there."

Then King Sigurd said, "The more difficulties and inconvenience thou bringest upon me in this matter, the more I will persevere in it." And with that they parted.

Both kings then went south to Nidaros town, where they summoned a Thing from eight districts. King Eystein was in the town with a great many people, but Sigurd was on board his ships. When the Thing was opened, peace and safe conduct were given to all; and when the people were all collected, and the case should be gone into, Bergthor Bok, a son of Swend Bryggefod, stood up, and gave his evidence that Sigurd Hranesson had concealed a part of the Laplanders' taxes.

Then King Eystein stood up and said, "If thy accusation were true, although we do not know what truth there may be in thy testimony, yet this case has already been dismissed from three Things, and a fourth time from a town meeting; and therefore I require that the lagmen acquit Sigurd in this case according to law." And they did so.

Then said King Sigurd, "I see sufficiently, King Eystein, that thou hast carried this case by law-quirks\*, which I do not understand. But now there

\* These law-quirks show a singularly advanced state of law, and deference to the Law Things, amidst such social disorder and misdeeds.

SAGA XII. — remains, King Eystein, a way of determining the case which I am more used to, and which I shall now apply."

He then retired to his ships, had the tents taken down, laid his whole fleet out at the holm, and held a Thing of his people; and told them that early in the morning they should land at Hlevold, and give battle to King Eystein. But in the evening, as King Sigurd sat at his table in his ship taking his repast, before he was aware of it a man cast himself on the floor of the forehold, and at the king's feet. This was Sigurd Hranesson, who begged the king to take what course with regard to him the king himself thought proper, for he would not be the cause of any unhappy division between the brothers. Then came Bishop Magne and Queen Malmfrid, and many other great personages, and entreated forgiveness for Sigurd Hranesson; and at their entreaty the king raised him up, took him by the hand and placed him among his men, and took him along with himself to the south part of the country. In autumn the king gave Sigurd Hranesson leave to go north to his farm, gave him an employment, and was always afterwards his friend. After this day, however, the brothers were never much together, and there was no cordiality or cheerfulness among them.

CHAPTER  
XXII.  
Of King  
Olaf's  
death.

In the thirteenth year of the government of the brothers, King Olaf Magnusson fell into a sickness which ended in his death. He was buried in Christ church in Nidaros, and many were in great grief at his death. King Olaf's mother was Sigrid, a daughter of Saxe of Vik, a sister of Kare Ostraad, who was called the king's foster-father, and who was a great and popular man. Saxe had another daughter called Thora, who had a son called Sigurd Slembeegn, who afterwards gave himself out for a son of King Magnus Barefoot. Kare the king's foster-father was married to Borghild, a daughter of Dag Eilifsson; and their

son was Sigurd Ostraad, a lenderman, and father to John who was married to Sigrid, a sister of King Inge Baardsson. After Olaf's death, Eystein and Sigurd ruled the country, the three brothers together having been kings of Norway for twelve years; namely, five years after King Sigurd returned home, and seven years before. King Olaf was seventeen years old when he died, and it happened on the 24th of December. King Eystein had been about a year in the east part of the country at that time, and King Sigurd was then in the north. King Eystein remained a long time that winter in Sarpsburg.

SAGA XII.

There was once a powerful and rich bonder called Olaf of Dal, who dwelt in Great Dal in Aamord\*, and had two children,—a son called Hakon Fauk, and a daughter called Borghild, who was a very beautiful girl, and prudent, and well skilled in many things. Olaf and his children were a long time in winter in Sarpsburg, and Borghild conversed very often with King Eystein; so that many reports were spread about their friendship. The following summer King Eystein went north, and King Sigurd came eastward, where he remained all winter, and was long in Konghelle, which town he greatly enlarged and improved. He built there a great castle of turf and stone, dug a great ditch around it, and built a church and several houses within the castle. The holy cross he allowed to remain at Konghelle, and therein did not fulfil the oath he had taken in Palestine; but, on the other hand, he established tithe, and most of the other things to which he had bound himself by oath. The reason of his keeping the cross east at the frontier of the country was, that he thought it would be a protection to all the land; but it proved the greatest misfortune to place this relic within the power of the heathens, as it afterwards turned out.

CHAPTER  
XXIII.  
Magnus  
the Blind;  
his birth.

\* Somewhere about Fredericstad.

## SAGA XII

When Borghild, Olaf's daughter, heard it whispered that people talked ill of her conversations and intimacy with King Eystein, she went to Sarpsburg; and after suitable fasts she carried the iron as a proof of her innocence, and cleared herself thereby fully from all offence. When King Sigurd heard this, he rode one day as far as usually was two days' travelling, and came to Dal to Olaf, where he remained all night, made Borghild his concubine, and took her away with him. They had a son, who was called Magnus, and he was sent immediately to Halogaland, to be fostered at Biarkö by Vidkun Jonsson; and he was brought up there. Magnus grew up to be the handsomest man that could be seen, and was very soon stout and strong.

CHAPTER  
XXIV.  
Comparison between the  
two kings.

King Eystein and King Sigurd went both in spring to guest-quarters in the Uplands; and each was entertained in a separate house, and the houses were not very distant from each other. The bonders, however, thought it more convenient that both should be entertained together by turns in each house; and thus they were both at first in the house of King Eystein. But in the evening, when the people began to drink, the ale was not good; so that the guests were very quiet and still. Then said King Eystein, "Why are the people so silent? It is more usual in drinking parties that people are merry, so let us fall upon some jest over our ale that will amuse people; for surely, brother Sigurd, all people are well pleased when we talk cheerfully."

Sigurd replies, bluntly, "Do you talk as much as you please, but give me leave to be silent."

Eystein says, "It is a common custom over the ale-table to compare one person with another, and now let us do so." Then Sigurd was silent.

"I see," says King Eystein, "that I must begin this amusement. Now I will take thee, brother, to compare myself with, and will make it appear so as

if we had both equal reputation and property, and that there is no difference in our birth and education."

Then King Sigurd replies, "Do you remember that I was always able to break your back, if I had pleased, although you are a year older?"

Then King Eystein replied, "But I remember that you was not so good at the games which require agility."

Sigurd: "Do you remember that I could drag you under water, when we swam together, as often as I pleased?"

Eystein: "But I could swim as far as you, and could dive as well as you; and I could run upon snow-scates so well that nobody could beat me, and you could no more do it than an ox."

Sigurd: "Methinks it is a more useful and suitable accomplishment for a chief to be expert at his bow; and I think you could scarcely draw my bow, even if you took your foot to help."

Eystein: "I am not strong at the bow as you are, but there is less difference between our shooting near; and I can use the snow-scates much better than you, and in former times that was held a great accomplishment."

Sigurd: "It appears to me much better for a chief who is to be the superior of other men, that he is conspicuous in a crowd, and strong and powerful in weapons above other men; easily seen, and easily known, where there are many together."

Eystein: "It is not less a distinction and an ornament that a man is of a handsome appearance, so as to be easily known from others on that account; and this appears to me to suit a chief best, because the best ornament is allied to beauty. I am moreover more knowing in the law than you, and on every subject my words flow more easily than yours."



## SAGA XII

Sigurd: "It may be that you know more law-quirks, for I have had something else to do; neither will any deny you a smooth tongue. But there are many who say that your words are not to be trusted; that what you promise is little to be regarded; and that you talk just according to what those who are about you say, which is not kingly."

Eystein: "This is because, when people bring their cases before me, I wish first to give every man that satisfaction in his affair which he desires; but afterwards comes the opposite party, and then there is something to be given or taken away very often, in order to mediate between them, so that both may be satisfied. It often happens too that I promise whatever is desired of me, that all may be joyful about me. It would be an easy matter for me to do as you do,—to promise evil to all; and I never hear any complain of your not keeping this promise to them."

Sigurd: "It is the conversation of all that the expedition I made out of the country was a princely expedition, while you in the mean time sat at home like your father's daughter."

Eystein: "Now you betake yourself to your cudgel. I would not have brought up this conversation if I had not known what to reply on this point. I can truly say that I equipped you from home like a sister, before you went upon this expedition."

Sigurd: "You must have heard that on this expedition I was in many a battle in the Saracen's land, and gained the victory in all; and you must have heard of the many valuable articles I acquired, the like of which were never seen before in this country, and I was the most respected wherever the most gallant men were; and, on the other hand, you cannot conceal that you have only a home-bred reputation. I went to Palestine, and I came to Apulia; but I did not see you there, brother. I gave Roger

the Great the title of king; I won seven battles, and you were in none of them. I was at our Lord's grave; but did not see thee there, my brother. On this expedition I went all the way to Jordan, where our Lord was baptized, and swam across the river; but did not see thee there. On the edge of the river-bank there was a bush of willows, and there I twisted a knot of willows which is waiting thee there; for I said this knot thou shouldst untie, and fulfil the vow, brother, that is bound up in it." SAGA XII.

Eystein: "It is but little I have to set up against this. I have heard that you had several battles abroad, but it was more useful for the country what I was doing in the mean time here at home. In the north at Vaage I built fish-houses, so that all the poor people could earn a livelihood, and support themselves. I built there a priest's house, and endowed a church, where before all the people almost were heathen; and on this account I think all these people will remember that Eystein was once king of Norway. The road from Drontheim goes over the Dovrefielde, and many people had to sleep out of doors, and make a very severe journey; but I built inns, and supported them with money; and all travellers know that Eystein has been king in Norway. Out at Agdaness was a barren waste, and no harbour, and many a ship was lost there; and now there is a good harbour and ship-station, and a church also built there. Then I raised beacons on all the high fielde, of which all the people in the interior enjoy the benefit. In Bergen I built a royal hall, and the church of the Apostles, with a stair between the two; so that all the kings who come after me will remember my name. I built Michael's church, and founded a monastery beside it. I settled the laws, brother, so that every man can obtain justice from his fellow-man; and according as these are observed the country

## SAGA XII.

will be the better governed. I set a warping post and iron ring in the sound of Sinsholm.\* The Jemte-land people are again joined to this kingdom, and more by prudence and kind words than by force and war. Now although all this that I have reckoned up be but small doings, yet I am not sure if the people of the country have not been better served by it than by your killing bludmen for the devil in the land of the Saracens, and sending them to hell. Now if you prize yourself on your good deeds, I think the places I have raised for chaste people of God will serve me not less for my soul's salvation. So if you tied a knot for me, I will not go to untie it; and if I had been inclined to tie a knot for thee, thou wouldst not have been king of Norway at thy return to this country, when with a single ship you came into my fleet. Now let men of understanding judge what you have above me, and you will discover that here in Norway there are men equal to you."

Thereupon both were silent, and there was anger on both sides. More things passed between the brothers, from which it appeared that each of them would be greater than the other; however, peace was preserved between them as long as they lived. It is told that once when King Sigurd had taken his seat, and Eystein had not arrived, Ingeborg, Guttorm's daughter, the wife of King Eystein, said to Sigurd, "The many great achievements, Sigurd, which you have performed in foreign lands, will long be held in remembrance." He answered her in these verses:—

"White was my shield  
When I took the field,  
And red when I came home:  
The brave takes all  
That may befall;  
Fate deals out what's to come.

---

\* This locality is not known. The text refers to a post and rings for the warping vessels through some narrow sound.

“ My men I taught,  
 In the onslaught,  
 The blow to give and fend —  
 The weal or woe  
 Of every blow  
 Is just what God may send.”

SAGA XII.

It is told that King Sigurd was at a feast in the Upland, and a bath was made ready for him. When the king came to the bath, and the tent was raised over the bathing-tub, the king thought there was a fish in the tub beside him; and a great laughter came upon him, so that he was beside himself, and was out of his mind, and often afterwards these fits returned.

CHAPTER  
 XXV.  
 Of the  
 bath.

Magnus Barefoot's daughter, Ragnhild, was married by her brothers to Harald Kefia, a son of the Danish king Eric the Good; and their sons were Magnus, Olaf, Canute, and Harald.

King Eystein built a large ship at Nidaros, which, in size and shape, was like the Long Serpent which King Olaf Tryggvesson had built. At the head there was a dragon's head, and at the stern a crooked tail, and both were gilded over. The ship was high-sided; but the fore and aft parts appeared less than they should be. He also made in Nidaros many and large dry-docks of the best material, and well timbered, so that they were admired by all who saw them.

CHAPTER  
 XXVI.  
 Of King  
 Eystein's  
 shipbuild-  
 ing, and of  
 his death.

Six years after King Olaf's death, it happened that King Eystein, at a feast at Hustad in Stein, was seized with an illness which soon carried him off. He died the 28th of August, and his body was carried north to Nidaros, and buried in Christ church; and it is generally said that so many mourners never stood over any man's grave in Norway as over King Eystein's, at least since the time Magnus the Good, Saint Olaf's son, died. Eystein had been twenty years king of Norway; and after his decease his

## SAGA XII.

CHAPTER  
XXVII.  
Of the baptizing the  
people of  
Smöland.

brother King Sigurd was the sole king of Norway as long as he lived.

The Danish king Nicolas, a son of Swend Ulfsson, married afterwards the Queen Margaret, a daughter of King Inge, who had before been married to King Magnus Barefoot; and their son was called Magnus Strong. King Magnus sent a message to King Sigurd the Crusader, and asked him if he would go with him with all his might and help to the east of the Swedish dominion, to Smöland, to baptize the inhabitants; for the people who dwelt there had no regard for Christianity, although some of them had allowed themselves to be baptized. At that time there were many people all around in the Swedish dominions who were heathens, and many were bad Christians; for there were some of the kings who renounced Christianity, and continued heathen sacrifices, as Blot Swein, and afterwards Eric Aarsal, had done. King Sigurd promised to undertake this journey, and the kings appointed their meeting at Ore Sound.\* King Sigurd then summoned all people in Norway to a levy, both of men and ships; and when the fleet was assembled he had about 300 ships. King Nicolas came very early to the meeting-place, and staid there a long time; and the bonders murmured much, and said the Northmen did not intend to come. Thereupon the Danish army dispersed, and the king went away with all his fleet. King Sigurd came there soon afterwards, and was ill pleased; but sailed east to Sumarros, and held a House-thing, at which Sigurd spoke about King Nicolas's breach of faith; and the Northmen, on this account, determined to go marauding in his country. They first plundered a village called Tumathorp, which is not far from Lund; and then sailed east to the merchant-town of Calmar, where they

\* Ore Sound was the Sound, at the entrance into the Baltic.

plundered, as well as in Smöland, and imposed on the country a tribute of 1500 cattle for ship provision; and the people of Smöland received Christianity. After this King Sigurd turned about with his fleet, and came back to his kingdom with many valuable articles and great booty, which he had gathered on this expedition; and this levy was called the Calmar levy. This was the summer before the eclipse. This was the only levy King Sigurd carried out as long as he was king.

SAGA XII.

It happened once when King Sigurd was going from the drinking-table to vespers, that his men were very drunk and merry; and many of them sat outside the church singing the evening song, but their singing was very irregular. Then the king said, "Who is that fellow I see standing at the church with a skin jacket on?" They answered, that they did not know. Then the king said,—

CHAPTER  
XXVIII.  
Of Thorarin  
Stuttfeld.

"This skin-clad man, in sorry plight,  
Puts all our wisdom here to flight."

Then the fellow came forward and said,—

"I thought that here I might be known,  
Although my dress is scanty grown.  
'Tis poor, but I must be content:  
Unless, great king, it's thy intent  
To give me better; for I have seen  
When I and rags had strangers been."

The king answered, "Come to me to-morrow when I am at the drink-table." The night passed away; and the morning after, the Iclander, who was afterwards called Thorarin Stuttfeld, went into the drinking-room. A man stood outside of the door of the room with a horn in his hand, and said, "Iclander! the king says that if thou wilt deserve any gift from him thou shalt compose a song before going in, and make it about a man whose name is Hakon Serkson, and

SAGA XII — who is called Mörstrut\*; and speak about that surname in thy song." The man who spoke to him was called Arne Fioruskeff. Then they went into the room; and when Thorarin came before the king's seat he recited these verses:—

"Drontheim's warrior-king has said  
The scald should be by gifts repaid,  
If he before this meeting gave  
The king's friend Serke a passing stave.  
The generous king has let me know  
My stave, to please, must be framed so  
That my poor verse extol the fame  
Of one called Hakon Lump by name."

Then said the king, "I never said so, and somebody has been making a mock of thee. Hakon himself shall determine what punishment thou shalt have. Go into his suite." Hakon said, "He shall be welcome among us, for I can see where the joke came from;" and he placed the Icelander at his side next to himself, and they were very merry. The day was drawing to a close, and the liquor began to get into their heads, when Hakon said, "Dost thou not think, Icelander, that thou owest me some penalty? and dost thou not see that some trick has been played upon thee?"

Thorarin replies, "It is true, indeed, that I owe thee some compensation."

Hakon says, "Then we shall be quits, if thou wilt make me another stave about Arne."

He said he was ready to do so; and they crossed over to the side of the room where Arne was sitting, and Thorarin gave these verses:—

"Fioruskeff has often spread,  
With evil heart and idle head,  
The eagle's voidings\* round the land,  
Lampoons and lies, with ready hand."

---

\* Morstrutr is a short, fat, punchy fellow.

† The eagle's voidings is an allusion to the story in the Edda. When Odin, in the shape of an eagle, stole the poet's drink from its

Yet this landlouper\* we all know,  
 In Africa scarce fed a crow.  
 Of all his arms used in the field,  
 Those in most use were helm and shield."

SAGA XII.

Arne sprang up instantly, drew his sword, and was going to fall upon him; but Hakon told him to let it alone and be quiet, and bade him remember that if it came to a quarrel he would come off the worst himself.

Thorarin afterwards went up to the king, and said he had composed a poem which he wished the king to hear. The king consented, and the song is known by the name of the Stuttfeld Poem. The king asked Thorarin what he intended to do. He replied, it was his intention to go to Rome. Then the king gave him much money for his pilgrimage, and told him to visit him on his return, and promised to provide for him. But it is not related whether they ever met again.

It is the general opinion among the people, that that there never was a king more able to act for himself, or more adapted to govern, than King Sigurd; but latterly it happened that he could with difficulty govern his own mind and reason, so that, now and then, unhappy and heavy occurrences took place; although he was always respected as a great prince, and stood in great reputation on account of his foreign expedition. It is told that King Sigurd, one holiday in Easter, sat at table with many people, among whom were many of his friends; and when he came to his high seat, people saw that his countenance was very wild, and as if he had been weeping, so that people were afraid of what might follow. The king

CHAPTER  
 XXIX.  
 Of Sigurd  
 and Ottar  
 Birting.

owner Suttung, he voided it in his flight when he was pursued; and this excrement fell into the hands of the bad poets, and is their inspiration, or poet's-drink.

\* Fiöruskeifr, is a landlouper, as well as Arne's surname.



**SAGA XII.** rolled his eyes, and looked at those who were seated on the benches; but none of his men ventured to speak to him. Then he seized the holy book which he had brought with him from abroad, and which was written all over with gilded letters; so that never had such a costly book come to Norway. His queen sat by his side. Then said King Sigurd, "Many are the changes which may take place during a man's lifetime. I had two things which were dear to me above all when I came from abroad, and these were this book and the queen; and now I think the one is only worse and more loathsome than the other, and nothing I have belonging to me that I more detest. The queen does not know herself how hideous she is; for a goat's horn is standing out on her head, and the better I liked her before the worse I like her now; and as to this book, it is good for nothing." Thereupon he cast the book on the fire which was burning on the hall-floor, and gave the queen a blow with his fist between the eyes. The queen wept; but more at the king's illness than at the blow, or the affront she had suffered.

Then a man stood up before the king: his name was Ottar Birting; and he was one of the torch-bearers, although a bonder's son, and was on service that day. He was of small stature, but of agreeable appearance; lively, bold, and full of fun; black haired, and of a dark skin; so that it was a nickname to call him Birting, — or fair. He ran and snatched the book which the king had cast into the fire, held it out, and said, "Different were the days, sire, when you came with great state and splendour to Norway, and with great fame and honour; for then all your friends came to meet you with joy, and were glad at your coming. All as one man would have you for king, and have you in the highest regard and honour. But now days of sorrow are come over

us; for on this holy festival many of your friends have come to you, and cannot be cheerful on account of your melancholy and ill-health. It is much to be desired that you would be merry with them; and do, good king, take this saving advice,—make peace first with the queen, and make her joyful, whom you have so highly affronted, with a friendly word; and then all your chiefs, friends, and servan's : that is my advice."

SAGA XII.

Then said King Sigurd, "Dost thou dare to give me advice, thou great lump of a houseman's lad!—thou peasant boy of the meanest, most contemptible race and family!" And he sprang up, drew his sword, and swung it with both hands, as if going to cut him down.

But Ottar stood quiet and upright; did not stir from the spot, nor show the slightest sign of fear; and the king turned round the sword-blade which he had waved over Ottar's head, and gently touched him on the shoulder with it. Then he sat down in silence on his high seat.

All were silent who were in the hall, for nobody dared to say a word. Now the king looked around him, milder than before, and said, "It is difficult to know what there is in people. Here sat my friends, and lendermen, marshals, and shield-bearers, and all the best men in the land; but none did so well against me as this man, who appears to you of little worth compared to any of you, although now I esteem him most. I came here like a madman, and would have destroyed my precious property; but he turned aside my deed, and was not afraid of death for it. Then he made an able speech, ordering his words so that they were honourable to me, and not saying a single word about things which could increase my vexation; but even avoiding what might, with truth, have been said. So excellent was his speech, that no

**SAGA XII.** man here, however great his understanding, could have spoken better. Then I sprang up in a pretended rage, and made as if I would have cut him down; but he was as courageous as if he had nothing to fear: and seeing that, I let go my purpose; for he was altogether innocent. Now ye shall know, my friends, how I intend to reward him: he was before my torch-bearer, and shall now be my lenderman; and there shall follow what is still more, that he shall be the most distinguished of my lendermen."

Then the king, in presence of all, thanked the bonder's son for having appeased his passion by sensible words and steady courage, and having done what his chief lendermen had not ventured to do; and then made him one of his principal lendermen.

Often these fits of insanity, and wonderful whims, came over the king; and when any of his lower servants recalled him to himself, he listened to them best, and bestowed on them property and farms. Ot-tar became one of the most celebrated men in Norway for various good and praiseworthy deeds.

**CHAPTER  
XXX.  
Of King  
Sigurd's  
dream.**

In King Sigurd's latter days he was once at an entertainment at one of his farms; and in the morning when he was dressed he was silent and still, so that his friends were afraid he was not able to govern himself. Now the farm-bailiff, who was a man of good sense and courage, brought him into conversation, and asked if he had heard any news of such importance that it disturbed his mirth; or if the entertainment had not satisfied him; or if there was any thing else that people could remedy.

King Sigurd said, that none of the things he had mentioned was the cause. "But it is, that I think upon the dream I had in the night."

"Sire," replied he, "may it prove a lucky dream! I would gladly hear it."

The king: "I thought that I was in Jederen, and looked out towards the sea; and that I saw something very black moving itself; and when it came near it appeared to be a large tree, of which the branches stretched far above the water, and the roots were down in the sea. Now when the tree came to the shore it broke in pieces, and drove all about the land, both the mainland, and the out-islands, rocks, and strands; and it appeared to me as if I saw over all Norway along the sea-coast, and saw pieces of that tree, some small and some large, driven into every bight."

Then said the bailiff, "It is likely that you can best interpret this dream yourself; and I would willingly hear your interpretation of it."

Then said the king, "This dream appears to me to denote the arrival in this country of some man who will fix his seat here, and whose posterity will spread itself over the land; but with unequal power, as the dream shows."

It so happened once, that King Sigurd sat in a gloomy mood among many worthy men. It was a Friday evening, and the kitchen-master asked what meat should be made ready.

CHAPTER  
XXXI.  
Of Aslak  
Hane.

The king replies, "What else but flesh-meat?" And so harsh were his words that nobody dared to contradict him, and all were ill at ease. Now when people prepared to go to table, dishes of warm flesh-meat were carried in; but all were silent, and grieved at the king's illness. Before the blessing was pronounced\* over the meat, a man called Aslak Hane spoke. He had been a long time with King Sigurd on his journey abroad, and was not a man of any great family; and was small of stature, but fiery.

\* Or rather signed over the meat; viz. the sign of the cross made over it.

## SAGA XII

When he perceived how it was, and that none dared to accost the king, he asked, "What is it, sire, that is smoking on the dish before you?"

The king replies, "What do you mean, Aslak? what do you think it is?"

Aslak: "I think it is flesh-meat; and I would it were not so."

The king: "But if it be so, Aslak?"

He replied, "It would be vexatious to know that a gallant king, who has gained so much honour in the world, should so forget himself. When you rose up out of Jordan, after bathing in the same waters as God himself, with palm-leaves in your hands, and the cross upon your breast, it was something else you promised, sire, than to eat flesh-meat on a Friday. If a meaner man were to do so, he would merit a heavy punishment. This royal hall is not so beset as it should be, when it falls upon me, a mean man, to challenge such an act."

The king sat silent, and did not partake of the meat; and when the time for eating was drawing to an end, the king ordered the flesh dishes to be removed, and other food was brought in, such as it is permitted to use. When the meal-time was almost past, the king began to be cheerful, and to drink. People advised Aslak to fly, but he said he would not do so. "I do not see how it could help me; and, to tell the truth, it is as good to die now that I have got my will, and have prevented the king from committing a sin. It is for him to kill me if he likes."

Towards evening the king called him, and said, "Who set thee on, Aslak Hane, to speak such free words to me in the hearing of so many people?"

"No one, sire, but myself."

The king: "Thou wouldst like, no doubt, to know what thou art to have for such boldness: what thinkest thou it deserves?"

He replies, "If it be well rewarded, sire, I shall be glad ; but should it be otherwise, then it is your concern." SAGA XII.

Then the king said, "Smaller is thy reward than thou hast deserved. I give thee three farms. It has turned out, what could not have been expected, that thou hast prevented me from a great crime, — thou, and not the lendersmen, who are indebted to me for so much good." And so it ended.

One Yule eve the king sat in the hall, and the tables were laid out; and the king said, "Get me flesh-meat." CHAPTER  
XX XII.  
Of a  
woman  
brought  
one night  
in Yule to  
the king.

They answered, "Sire, it is not the custom to eat flesh-meat on Yule eve."

The king said, "If it be not the custom, I will make it the custom."

They went out, and brought him a seal.\* The king stuck his knife into it, but did not eat of it. Then the king said, "Bring me a girl here into the hall." They brought him a woman whose head-dress went far down her brows. The king took her hand in his hands, looked at her, and said, "An ill looking girl!"†

\* \* \* \* \*

Halkel Huk, a son of John Smiorbalt, who was lenderman in Mære, made a voyage in the West sea, all the way to the South Hebudes. A man came to him out of Ireland called Gille Krist‡, and gave him- CHAPTER  
XXXIII.  
Harald  
Gille  
comes to  
Norway.

\* The flesh of seals and porpoises appears to have been in common use in that age, and probably was not reckoned altogether flesh-meat not to be used on Fridays or fish-days.

† What follows in this chapter is rather too coarse and indecent to be translated, and is not necessary, nor relevant, unless as showing the king's insanity.

‡ Query, Gilchrist?

SAGA XII

self out for a son of King Magnus Barefoot. His mother came with him, and said his other name was Harald. Halkel received the man, brought him to Norway with him, and went immediately to King Sigurd with Harald and his mother. When they had told their story to the king, he talked over the matter with his principal men, and bade them give their opinions upon it. They were of different opinions, and all left it to the king himself, although there were several who opposed this; and the king followed his own counsel. King Sigurd ordered Harald to be called before him, and told him that he would not deny him the proof, by ordeal, of who his father was; but on condition that if he should prove his descent according to his claim, he should not desire the kingdom in the lifetime of King Sigurd, or of King Magnus: and to this he bound himself by oath. King Sigurd said he must tread over hot iron to prove his birth; but this ordeal was thought by many too severe, as he was to undergo it merely to prove his father, and without getting the kingdom; but Harald agreed to it, and fixed on the trial by iron: and this ordeal was the greatest ever made in Norway; for nine glowing ploughshares were laid down, and Harald went over them with bare feet, attended by two bishops, and invoking the holy Saint Columb. His bed was ready on the spot.

Then said Magnus, King Sigurd's son, "He does not tread on the irons in a manly way."

The king replies, "Evil and wicked is thy speech; for he has done it admirably."

Thereupon Harald was laid in bed, and three days after the iron trial the ordeal was taken to proof, and the feet were found unburnt. Thereafter King Sigurd acknowledged Harald's relationship; but his

son Magnus conceived a great hatred of him, and in this many chiefs followed Magnus. King Sigurd trusted so much to his favour with the whole people of the country, that he desired all men, under oath, to promise to accept King Magnus after him as their king; and all the people took this oath.

Harald Gille was a tall, slender-grown man, of a long neck and face, black eyes, and dark hair, brisk and quick; and wore generally the Irish dress of short light clothes. The Norse language was difficult for Harald, and he brought out words which many laughed at; but King Sigurd did not permit this, when he was present. Harald used to attend the king to bed in the evening; but it once happened that Magnus and his people detained him, and they sat late drinking together. Harald spoke with another man about different things in the west in Ireland; and among other things, said that there were men in Ireland so swift of foot that no horse could overtake them in running. Magnus the king's son heard this, and said, "Now he is lying, as he usually does."

Harald replies, "It is true that there are men in Ireland whom no horse in Norway could overtake." They exchanged some words about this, and both were drunk. Magnus had got a horse he had sent for from Gotland, — a beautiful animal, and very swift. Those who were present thought that no horse was so swift, and asked Harald's opinion. Then said Magnus, "Thou shalt make a wager with me, and stake thy head if thou canst not run so fast as I ride upon my horse, and I shall stake my gold ring."

Harald replies, "I did not say that I could run so swiftly; but I said that men are to be found in Ireland who will run as fast; and on that I would wager."

The king's son Magnus replies, "I will not go to



SAGA XII. Ireland about it: we are wagering here, and not there."

Harald on this went to bed, and would not speak to him more about it. This was in Opslo. The following morning, when the early mass was over, Magnus rode up the street, and sent a message to Harald to come to him. When Harald came he was dressed thus. He had on a shirt and trousers which were bound with ribands under his foot-soles, a short cloak, an Irish hat on his head, and a spear-shaft in his hand. Magnus set up a mark for the race. Harald said, "Thou hast made the course too long;" but Magnus thought if it were even longer, it would still be too short. There were many spectators. They began the race, and Harald followed always the horse's pace; and when they came to the end of the race-course, Magnus said, "Thou hadst hold of the saddle-girths, and the horse dragged thee along." Magnus had his swift runner, the Gotland horse. They began the race again, and Harald ran the whole race-course before the horse. When they came to the end Harald asked, "Had I hold of the saddle-girths now?"

Magnus replied, "Thou hadst the start at first."

Then Magnus let his horse breathe a while, and when he was ready he put spurs to him, and set off in full gallop. Harald stood still, and Magnus looked back, and called out, "Set off now."

Then Harald ran quickly past the horse, and came to the end of the course so long before him that he lay down, and got up and saluted Magnus as he came in.

Then they went home to the town. In the mean time King Sigurd had been at high mass, and knew nothing of this until after he had dined that day. Then he said to Magnus angrily, "Thou callest Harald useless; but I think thou art a great fool, and knowest nothing of the customs of foreign people. Dost thou

not know that men in other countries exercise themselves in other feats than in filling themselves with ale, and making themselves mad, and so unfit for every thing that they scarcely know each other? Give Harald his ring, and do not try to make a fool of him again, as long as I am above ground and have the rule here."

SAGA XII.

It happened once that Sigurd was out in his ship, which lay in the harbour; and there lay a merchant ship, which was an Iceland trader, at the side of it. Harald Gille was in the fore-castle of the king's ship, and Swend Rimhildsson, a son of Canute Swendsson of Jederen, had his berth the next before him. There was also Sigurd Sigurdsson, a gallant lenderman, who himself commanded a ship. It was a day of beautiful weather and warm sunshine, and many went out to swim, both from the long-ship and the merchant vessel. An Iceland man, who was among the swimmers, amused himself by drawing those under water who could not swim so well as himself; and at that the spectators laughed. When King Sigurd saw and heard this, he cast off his clothes, sprang into the water, and swam to the Iclander, seized him, and pressed him under the water, and held him there; and as soon as the Iclander came up the king pressed him down again, and thus the one time after the other.

CHAPTER  
XXXV.  
Of Sigurd's  
swimming.

Then said Sigurd Sigurdsson, "Shall we let the king kill this man?"

Somebody said, "No one has any wish to interfere."

Sigurd replies, that "if Dag Eilifsson were here, we should not be without one who dared."

Then Sigurd sprang overboard, swam to the king, took hold of him, and said, "Sire, do not kill the man. Every body sees that you are a much better swimmer."

The king replies, "Let me loose, Sigurd; I shall be his death, for he will destroy our people under water."

## SAGA XII.

Sigurd says, "Let us first amuse ourselves; and, Icelander, do thou set off to the land," which he did. The king now got loose from Sigurd, and swam to his ship, and Sigurd went his way: but the king ordered that Sigurd should not presume to come into his presence; so he went up into the country.

CHAPTER  
XXXVI.  
Of Harald  
and Swend  
Rimhilds-  
son.

In the evening, when people were going to bed, some of the ship's men were still at their games up in the country. Harald was with those who played on the land, and told his footboy to go out to the ship, make his bed, and wait for him there. The lad did as he was ordered. The king had gone to sleep; and as the boy thought Harald late, he laid himself in Harald's berth. Swend Rimhildsson said, "It is a shame for brave men to be brought from their farms at home, and to have here serving boys to sleep beside them." The lad said that Harald had ordered him to come there. Swend Rimhildsson said, "We do not so much care for Harald himself lying here, if he do not bring here his slaves and beggars;" and seized a riding-whip, and struck the boy on the head until the blood flowed from him. The boy ran immediately up the country, and told Harald what had happened, who went immediately out to the ship, to the aft part of the forecastle, and with a pole-axe struck Swend so that he received a severe wound on his hands; and then Harald went on shore. Swend ran to the land after him, and, gathering his friends, took Harald prisoner, and they were about hanging him. But while they were busy about this, Sigurd Sigurdsson went out to the king's ship and awoke him. When the king opened his eyes and recognised Sigurd, he said, "For this reason thou shalt die, that thou hast intruded into my presence; for thou knowest that I forbade thee:" and with these words the king sprang up.

Sigurd replied, "That is in your power as soon as

you please ; but other business is more urgent. Go to the land as quickly as possible to help thy brother ; for the Rogaland people are going to hang him."

SAGA XII.

Then said the king, "God give us luck, Sigurd ! Call my trumpeter, and let him call the people all to land, and to meet me."

The king sprang on the land, and all who knew him followed him to where the gallows was being erected. The king instantly took Harald to him ; and all the people gathered to the king in full armour, as they heard the trumpet. Then the king ordered that Swend and all his comrades should depart from the country as outlaws ; but by the intercession of good men the king was prevailed on to let them remain and hold their properties, but no mulct should be paid for Swend's wound.

Then Sigurd Sigurdsson asked if the king wished that he should go forth out of the country.

"That will I not," said the king ; "for I can never be without thee."

There was a young and poor man called Kolbein ; and Thora, King Sigurd the Crusader's mother, had ordered his tongue to be cut out of his mouth, and for no other cause than that this young man had taken a piece of meat out of the king-mother's tub, which he said the cook had given him, and which the cook had not ventured to serve up to her. This man had long gone about speechless. So says Einar Skuleson in Olaf's ballad :—

CHAPTER  
XXXVII.  
Of King  
Olaf's mi-  
racle on a  
man whose  
tongue had  
been cut  
out from  
the root.

"The proud rich dame, for little cause,  
Had the lad's tongue cut from his jaws :  
The helpless man, of speech deprived,  
His dreadful sore wound scarce survived.  
A few weeks since at Lid was seen,  
As well as ever he had been,  
The same poor lad—to speech restored  
By Olaf's power, whom he adored."

Afterwards the young man came to Nidaros, and

## SAGA XII

watched in the Christ church; but at the second mass for Olaf before matins he fell asleep, and thought he saw King Olaf the Saint coming to him; and that Olaf talked to him, and took hold with his hands of the stump of his tongue and pulled it. Now when he awoke he found himself restored, and joyfully did he thank our Lord and the holy Saint Olaf, who had pitied and helped him; for he had come there speechless, and had gone to the holy shrine, and went away cured, and with his speech clear and distinct.

CHAPTER  
XXXVIII.  
Of King  
Olaf's mi-  
racle with  
a prisoner.

The heathens took prisoner a young man of Danish family, and carried him to Vendland, where he was in fetters along with other prisoners. In the day time he was alone in irons, without a guard; but at night a peasant's son was beside him in the chain, that he might not escape from them. This poor man never got sleep or rest from vexation and sorrow, and considered in many ways what could help him; for he had a great dread of slavery, and was pining with hunger and torture. He could not again expect to be ransomed by his friends, as they had already restored him twice from heathen lands with their own money; and he well knew that it would be difficult and expensive for them to submit a third time to this burden. It is well with the man who does not undergo so much in the world as this man knew he had suffered. He saw but one way; and that was to get off and escape if he could. He resolved upon this in the night time, killed the peasant, and cut his foot off after killing him; and set off to the forest with the chain upon his leg. Now when the people knew this, soon after daylight in the morning, they pursued him with two dogs accustomed to trace any one who escaped, and to find him in the forest however carefully he might be concealed. They got him into their hands, and beat him, and did him all kinds of mischief; and, dragging him home, left him barely alive, and showed him no mercy. They

tortured him severely; put him in a dark room, in which there lay already sixteen Christian men; and bound him both with iron and other tyings, as fast as they could. Then he began to think that the misery and pain he had endured before were but shadows to his present sufferings. He saw no man before his eyes in this prison who would beg for mercy for him; no one had compassion on his wretchedness, except the Christian men who lay bound with him, who sorrowed with him, and bemoaned his fate together with their own misfortunes and helplessness. One day they advised him to make a vow to the holy King Olaf, to devote himself to some office in his sacred house, if he, by God's compassion and Saint Olaf's prayers, could get away from this prison. He gladly agreed to this, and made a vow, and prepared himself for the situation they mentioned to him. The night after he thought in his sleep that he saw a man, not tall, standing at his side, who spoke to him thus: "Hear, thou wretched man! why dost thou not get up?"

He replied, "Sir, who are you?"

"I am King Olaf, on whom thou hast called."

"O, my good lord! gladly would I raise myself; but I lie bound with iron and with chains on my legs, and also the other men who lie here."

Thereupon the king accosts him with the words, "Stand up at once, and be not afraid; for thou art loose."

He awoke immediately, and told his comrades what had appeared to him in this dream. They told him to stand up, and try if it was true. He stood up, and observed that he was loose. Now said his fellow-prisoners this would help him but little, for the door was locked both on the inside and on the outside. Then an old man who sat there in a deplorable condition put in his word, and told him not to doubt the

SAGA XII. mercy of the man who had loosened his chains: "For he has wrought this miracle on thee that thou shouldst enjoy his mercy, and hereafter be free, without suffering more misery and torture. Make haste, then, and seek the door; and if thou are able to slip out, thou art saved."

He did so, found the door open, slipped out, and away to the forest. As soon as the Vendland people were aware of this they set loose the dogs, and pursued him in great haste; and the poor man lay hid, and saw well where they were following him. But now the hounds lost the trace when they came nearer, and all the eyes that sought him were struck with a blindness, so that nobody could find him, although he lay before their feet; and they all returned home, vexed that they could not find him. King Olaf did not permit this man's destruction after he had reached the forest, and restored him also to his health and hearing; for they had so long tortured and beaten him that he had become deaf. At last he came on board of a ship, with two other Christian men who had been long afflicted in that country. All of them worked zealously in this vessel, and so had a successful flight. Then he repaired to the holy man's house, strong and fit to bear arms. Now he was vexed at his vow, went from his promise to the holy king, ran away one day, and came in the evening to a bonder who gave him lodging for God's sake. Then in the night he saw three girls coming to him; and handsome and nobly dressed were they. They spoke to him directly, and sharply reprimanded him for having been so bold as to run from the good king who had shown so much compassion to him, first in freeing him from his irons, and then from the prison; and yet he had deserted the mild master into whose service he had entered. Then he awoke full of terror, got up early, and told the house-father his dream. The good man

had nothing so earnest in life as to send him back to the holy place. This miracle was first written down by a man who himself saw the man, and the marks of the chains upon his body.

In the last period of King Sigurd's life, his new and extraordinary resolution was whispered about, — that he would be divorced from his queen, and would take Cecilia, who was a great man's daughter, to wife. He ordered accordingly a great feast to be prepared, and intended to hold his wedding with her in Bergen. Now when Bishop Magne heard this, he was very sorry; and one day the bishop goes to the king's hall, and with him a priest called Sigurd, who was afterwards bishop of Bergen. When they came to the king's hall, the bishop sent the king a message that he would like to meet him; and asked the king to come out to him. He did so, and came out with a drawn sword in his hand. He received the bishop kindly, and asked him to go in and sit down to table with him.

The bishop replies, "I have other business now. Is it true, sire, what is told me, that thou has the intention of marrying, and of driving away thy queen, and taking another wife?"

The king said it was true.

Then the bishop changed countenance, and angrily replied, "How can it come into your mind, sire, to do such an act in our bishopric as to betray God's word and law, and the holy church? It surprises me that you treat with such contempt our episcopal office, and your own royal office. I will now do what is my duty; and in the name of God, of the holy King Olaf, of Peter the apostle, and of the other saints, forbid thee this wickedness."

While he thus spoke he stood straight up, as if stretching out his neck to the blow, and as if ready if the king chose to let the sword fall; and the priest

SAGA XII.

CHAPTER  
XXXIX.  
King  
Sigurd  
marries  
Cecilia.



SAGA XII.

Sigurd, who afterwards was bishop, has declared that the sky appeared to him no bigger than a calf's skin, so frightful did the appearance of the king present itself to him. The king returned to the hall, however, without saying a word; and the bishop went to his house and home so cheerful and gay that he laughed, and saluted every child on his way, and was playing with his fingers. Then the priest Sigurd asked him the reason; saying, "Why are you so cheerful, sir? Do you not consider that the king may be exasperated against you? and would it not be better to get out of the way?"

Then said the bishop, "It appears to me more likely that he will not act so; and besides, what death could be better, or more desirable, than to leave life for the honour of God? or to die for the holy cause of Christianity and our own office, by preventing that which is not right? I am so cheerful because I have done what I ought to do."

There was much noise in the town about this. The king got ready for a journey, and took with him corn, malt, and honey. He went south to Stavanger, and prepared a feast there for his marriage with Cecilia. When the bishop who ruled there heard of this he went to the king, and asked if it were true that he intended to marry in the lifetime of the queen.

The king said it was so.

The bishop answers, "If it be so, sire, you must know how much such a thing is forbidden to inferior persons. Now it appears as if you thought it was allowable for you, because you have great power, and that it is proper for you, although it is against right and propriety; but I do not know how you will do it in our bishopric, dishonouring thereby God's command, the holy church, and our episcopal authority. But you must bestow a great amount of gifts and

estates on this foundation, and thereby pay the mulct due to God and to us for such transgression." SAGA XII.

Then said the said the king, "Take what thou wilt of our possessions. Thou art far more reasonable than Bishop Magne."

Then the king went away, as well pleased with this bishop as ill pleased with him who had laid a prohibition on him. Thereafter the king married the girl, and loved her tenderly.

King Sigurd improved the town of Konghelle so much, that there was not a greater town in Norway at the time, and he remained there long for the defence of the frontiers. He built a king's house in the castle, and imposed a duty on all the districts in the neighbourhood of the town, as well as on the townspeople, — that every person of nine years of age and upwards should bring to the castle five missile stones for weapons, or as many large stakes sharp at one end and five ells long. In the castle the king built a cross-church of timber, and carefully put together, as far as regards the wood and other materials. The cross-church was consecrated in the 24th year of King Sigurd's reign. Here the king deposited the piece of the holy cross, and many other holy relics. It was called the Castle Church; and before the high altar he placed the tables he had got made in the Greek country, which were of copper and silver, all gilt, and beautifully adorned with jewels. Here was also the shrine which the Danish king Eric Eymund had sent to King Sigurd; and the altar book, written with gold letters, which the patriarch had presented to King Sigurd.

Three years after the consecration of the cross-church, when King Sigurd was stopping at Viken, he fell sick. Then his friends entreated him to separate from his wife (Cecilia), which she herself also desired; and she entreated the king that she might be allowed

CHAPTER  
XL.  
Improve-  
ment of the  
merchant  
town of  
Konghelle.

CHAPTER  
XLI.  
King  
Sigurd's  
death.

**SAGA XII** to go away, as it would be most for his advantage. The king said, "Little did I think that thou wouldst leave me like the others;" and turned from her, and became red as blood in the face. She went away nevertheless. His illness now increased, and he died of it; and his body was removed for burial to Opslo. He died the night before Mary's-mass, and was buried in Halvart's church, where he was laid in the stone-wall without the choir on the south side. His son Magnus was in the town at the time, and took possession of the whole of the king's treasury when King Sigurd died. Sigurd had been king of Norway twenty-seven years from the death of his father Magnus Barefoot, and was forty years of age when he died. The time of his reign was good for the country; for there was peace, and crops were good.-

## XIII.

## SAGA OF MAGNUS THE BLIND\* AND OF HARALD GILLE.†

SAGA XIII

KING SIGURD's son Magnus was proclaimed in Opslo king of all the country immediately after his father's death, according to the oath which the whole nation had sworn to King Sigurd; and many went into his service, and many became his lendersmen. Magnus was the handsomest man then in Norway; of a passionate temper, and cruel, but distinguished in bodily exercises. The favour of the people he owed most to the respect for his father. He was a great drinker, greedy of money, hard, and obstinate.

CHAPTER  
I.  
Magnus  
and Harald  
proclaimed  
kings.

Harald Gille, on the other hand, was very pleasing in intercourse, gay, and full of mirth; and so generous that he spared in nothing for the sake of his friends. He willingly listened to good advice, so that he allowed others to consult with him and give counsel. With all this he obtained favour and a good repute, and many men attached themselves as much to him as to King Magnus. Harald was in Tunsberg when he heard of his brother King Sigurd's death. He called together his friends to a meeting, and it was resolved to hold the Hauga Thing† there in the town. At this Thing, Harald was chosen king of half the country, and it was called a forced oath which had been taken from him to renounce his paternal heritage. Then

\* Reigned from 1130 to 1135.

† To 1136.

‡ Hauga-thing means a Thing held at the tumuli or burial mounds; but whether this was a local name at Tunsberg, or the name of a Thing held for a solemn purpose at the burial mounds of their ancestors for proclaiming a king, seems uncertain.

**SAGA XIII.** Harald formed a court, and appointed lendersmen; and very soon he had as many people about him as King Magnus. Then men went between them, and matters stood in this way for seven days; but King Magnus, finding he had fewer people, was obliged to give way, and to divide the kingdom with Harald in two parts. The kingdom accordingly was so divided that each of them should have the half part of the kingdom which King Sigurd had possessed; but that King Magnus alone should inherit the fleet of ships, the table service, the valuable articles, and the moveable effects which had belonged to his father King Sigurd. He was notwithstanding the least satisfied with his share. Although they were of such different dispositions, they ruled the country for some time in peace. King Harald had a son called Sigurd, by Thora, a daughter of Guttorm Graabard. King Harald afterwards married Ingirid, a daughter of Rognvald, who was a son of the Swedish king Inge Steinkelsson. King Magnus was married to a daughter of Canute Lavard, and she was sister of the Danish king Waldemar; but King Magnus having no affection for her, sent her back to Denmark; and from that day every thing went ill with him, and he brought upon himself the enmity of her family.

**CHAPTER**  
**II.**  
Of the  
forces of  
Harald and  
Magnus.

When the two relations, Harald and Magnus, had been about three years kings of Norway, they both passed the fourth winter in the town of Nidaros, and invited each other as guests; but their people were always ready for a fight. In spring King Magnus sailed southwards along the land with his fleet, and drew all the men he could obtain out of each district, and sounded his friends if they would strengthen him with their power to take the kingly dignity from Harald, and give him such a portion of the kingdom as might be suitable; representing to them that King Harald had already renounced the kingdom by oath.

King Magnus obtained the consent of many powerful men. The same spring Harald went to the Uplands, and by the upper road eastward to Viken; and when he heard what King Magnus was doing, he also drew together men on his side. Wheresoever the two parties went they killed the cattle, or even the people, upon the farms of the adverse party. King Magnus had by far most people, for the main strength of the country lay open to him for collecting men from it. King Harald was in Viken on the east side of the fiord, and collected men, while they were doing each other damage in property and life. King Harald had with him Kristrod, his brother by the mother's side, and many other lendersmen; but King Magnus had many more. King Harald was with his forces at a place called Fors in Ranrige, and went from thence towards the sea. The evening before Saint Laurence-day they had their supper at a place called Fyrileif, while the guard kept a watch on horseback all around the house. The watchmen observed King Magnus's army hastening towards the house, and consisting of full 6000 men, while King Harald had but 1500. Now come the watchmen who had to bring the news to King Harald of what was going on, and say that King Magnus's army was now very near the house.

SAGA XIII.

---

The king says, "What will my relation King Magnus Sigurdsson have? He wants not surely to fight me."

Thiostolf Alesson replies, "You must certainly, sire, make preparation for that, both for yourself and your men. King Magnus has been drawing together an army all the summer for the purpose of giving you battle when he meets you."

Then King Harald stood up, and ordered his men to take their arms. "We shall fight, if our relative King Magnus wants to fight us."

Then the war-horns sounded, and all Harald's men

**SAGA XIII.** went out from the house to an enclosed field, and set up their banners. King Harald had on two shirts of ring-mail, but his brother Kristrod had no armour on; and a gallant man he was. When King Magnus and his men saw King Harald's troop they drew up and made their array, and made their line so long that they could surround the whole of King Harald's troop. So says Halldor Skualdre:—

“ King Magnus on the battle-plain  
From his long troop-line had great gain;  
The plain was drenched with warm blood,  
Which lay a red and reeking flood.”

**CHAPTER  
III.  
Battle at  
Fyrileif.**

King Magnus had the holy cross\* carried before him in this battle, and the battle was great and severe. The king's brother Kristrod had penetrated with his troop into the middle of King Magnus's array, and cut down on each side of him, so that people gave way before him every where. But a powerful bonder who was in King's Harald's array raised his spear with both hands, and drove it through between Kristrod's shoulders, so that it came out at his breast; and thus fell Kristrod. Many who were near asked the bonder why he had done so foul a deed.

The bonder replies, “ He knows the consequences now of slaughtering my cattle in summer, and taking all that was in my house, and forcing me to follow him here. I determined to give him some return when the opportunity came.”

After this King Harald's army took to flight, and he fled himself, with all his men. Many fell: and Ingemar of Ask, a great chief and lenderman, got there his death-wound; and he sang while dying these verses:—

“ Some witch-wife's power,  
In evil hour,

---

\* The relic brought home from Jerusalem by Sigurd the Crusader seems here to be meant.

Made me leave home,  
And here to come.  
This shaft, I know,  
Shot from elm bow,  
Will hinder me  
My Ash \* to see."

There fell nearly sixty of King Harald's court-men, and he himself fled eastward to Viken to his ships, and went out of the country to King Eric in Denmark. So says Halldor Skualldre:—

"Thou who in battle-field hast striven  
Now to thy ocean-steed art driven,  
And o'er the blue field now must ride  
To meet King Eric in his pride.  
The smooth-tongued Jutland king, who reigns  
O'er the brave men of Holstein's plains,  
Will give thee troops again to vie—  
Again with Magnus strength to try."

So says also Einar Skulason:—

"The youth who scatters, frank and free,  
The shining gold—fire of the sea—  
Seeks Scania's sand o'er the blue meads,  
The fields in which the grey fish feeds;  
He who the witches' horses stills,  
Ravens and wolves, and their maws fills,  
To the great king of Denmark hies,—  
To get his armed aid he tries."†

King Harald sought the Danish king Eric Eymund, to obtain help and aid from him; and they met in Smöland. King Eric received him well, and principally because they had sworn to each other to be as brothers‡; and gave him Halland as a fief to rule over, and gave him seven long-ships, but without equipment. Thereafter King Harald went northwards through Halland, and many Northmen came to meet him. After this battle King Magnus subdued the

\* A pun seems intended on the name of his house—Ask, the ash.

† The whole of this strophe is merely to say that Harald sought refuge with King Eric.

‡ These brotherhoods, by which one man was bound by oath to aid or avenge another, were common in the middle ages among all ranks. "Sworn brothers" is still a common expression with us.



**SAGA XIII** whole country, giving life and safety to all who were wounded, and had them taken care of equally with his own men. He then called the whole country his own, and had a choice of the best men who were in the country. When they held a council among themselves afterwards, Sigurd Sigurdsson, Thorer Ingeredsson, and all the men of most understanding, advised that they should keep their forces together in Viken, and remain there, in case Harald should return from the south; but King Magnus would take his own way, and went north to Bergen. There he sat all winter, and allowed his men to leave him; on which the lendermen returned home to their own houses.

**CHAPTER**  
**IV.**  
**Death of**  
**Asbiorn**  
**and of**  
**Nercid.**

King Harald came to Konghelle with the men who had followed him from Denmark. The lendermen and town's burgesses collected a force against him, which they drew up in a thick array above the town. King Harald landed from his ships, and sent a message to the bonders, desiring that they would not deny him his land, as he wanted no more than what of right belonged to him. Then mediators went between them; and it came to this, that the bonders dismissed their troops, and submitted to him. Thereupon he bestowed fiefs and property on the lendermen, that they might stand by him, and paid the bonders who joined him the lawful mulcts for what they had lost. A great body of men attached themselves, therefore, to King Harald; and he proceeded westwards to Viken, where he gave peace to all men, except to King Magnus's people whom he plundered and killed wherever he found them. And when he came west to Sarpsburg, he took prisoners two of King Magnus's lendermen, Asbiorn and his brother Nercid; and gave them the choice that one should be hanged, and the other thrown into the Sarpsburg waterfall, and they might choose as they pleased. Asbiorn chose to be thrown into the cataract, for he was the elder of the two,

and this death appeared the most dreadful; and so SAGA XIII.  
it was done. Halldor Skualldre tells of this:—

“Asbiorn, who opposed the king,  
O'er the wild cataract they fling:  
Nercid, who opposed the king,  
Must on Hagbart's high tree swing.  
The king gives food in many a way  
To foul-mouthed beasts and birds of prey:  
The generous men who dare oppose  
Are treated as the worst of foes.”

Thereafter King Harald proceeded north to Tunsberg, where he was well received, and a large force gathered to him.

When King Magnus, who was in Bergen, heard these tidings, he called together all the chiefs who were in the town, and asked them their counsel, and what they should now do. Then Sigurd Sigurdsson said, “Here I can give a good advice. Let a ship be manned with good men, and put me, or any other lenderman, to command it; send it to thy relation King Harald, and offer him peace according to the conditions upright men may determine upon, and offer him the half of the kingdom. It appears to me probable that King Harald, by the words and counsel of good men, may accept this offer, and thus there may be a peace established between you.”

CHAPTER  
V.  
Of the  
counsels  
proposed.

Then King Magnus replied, “This proposal I will not accept of; for of what advantage would it be, after we have gained the whole kingdom in summer, to give away the half of it now? Give us some other counsel.”

Then Sigurd Sigurdsson answered, “It appears to me, sire, that your lendemen who in autumn asked your leave to return home will now sit at home, and will not come to you. At that time it was much against my advice that you dispersed so entirely the people we had collected; for I could well suppose that Harald would come back to Viken as soon as he heard

**SAGA XIII** that it was without a chief. Now there is still another counsel, and it is but a poor one; but it may turn out useful to us. Send out your pursuivants\*, and send other people with them, and let them go against the lendermen who will not join you in your necessity, and kill them; and bestow their property on others who will give you help, although they may have been of small importance before. Let them drive together the people, the bad as well as the good; and go with the men you can thus assemble against King Harald, and give him battle."

The king replies, "It would be unpopular to put to death people of distinction, and raise up inferior people who often break faith and law, and the country would be still worse off. I would like to hear some other counsel still."

Sigurd replies, "It is difficult for me now to give advice, as you will neither make peace nor give battle. Let us go north to Drontheim, where the main strength of the country is most inclined to our side; and on the way let us gather all the men we can. It may be that these river-borderers will be tired of such a long stride after us."

The king replies, "We must not fly from those whom we beat in summer. Give some better counsel still."

Then Sigurd stood up, and said, while he was preparing to go out, "I will now give you the counsel which I see you will take, and which must have its course. Sit here in Bergen until Harald comes with his troops, and then you will either suffer death or disgrace."

And Sigurd remained no longer at that meeting.

**CHAPTER  
VI.  
Of Harald's  
force.**

King Harald came from the East along the coast with a great army, and this winter is called on that

\* The Giester, or pursuivants, were a lower class of men-at-arms than the hirdmen, or courtmen.

account the Crowd-winter. King Harald came to Bergen on Christmas eve, and landed with his fleet at Floravaag; but would not fight on account of the sacred time. But King Magnus prepared for defence in the town. He erected a stone-slinging machine out on the holm, and had iron chains and wooden booms laid across over the passage from the King's bridge to the North-ness, and to the Monks' bridge. He had foot-traps made, and thrown into Saint John's Field, and did not suspend these works except during the three sacred days of Christmas. The last holyday of Yule, King Harald ordered his war-horns to sound the gathering of his men for going to the town; and, during the Yule holydays, his army had been increased by about 900 men.

SAGA XIII.

King Harald made a promise to King Olaf the Saint for victory, that he would build an Olaf's church in the town at his own expense. King Magnus drew up his men in the Christ-church yard; but King Harald laid his vessels first at the North-ness. Now when King Magnus and his people saw that, they turned round towards the town, and to the end of the shore; but as they passed through the streets many of the burgesses ran into their houses and homes, and those who went across the fields fell into the foot-traps. Then King Magnus and his men perceived that King Harald had rowed with all his men across to Hegravik, and landed there, and had gone from thence the upper road up the hill opposite to the town. Now Magnus returned back again through the streets, and then his men fled from him in all directions; some up to the Fielde, some up to the neighbourhood of the convent of nuns, some to churches, or hid themselves as they best could. King Magnus fled to his ship; but there was no possibility of getting away, for the iron chains outside prevented the passage of vessels. He had also but few men

CHAPTER  
VII.  
King Magnus taken  
prisoner.

SAGA XIII. with him, and therefore could do nothing. Einar Skuleson tells of this in the song of Harald:—

“ For a whole week an iron chain  
Cut off all sailing to the main:  
Bergen's blue stable was locked fast,—  
Her floating wains could not get past.”

Soon after Harald's people came out to the ships, and then King Magnus was made prisoner. He was sitting behind in the forecastle upon the chests of the high seat, and at his side Hakon Fauk, his mother's brother, who was very popular but was not considered very wise, and Ivar Ozursson. They, and many others of King Magnus's friends, were taken, and some of them killed on the spot.

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
King  
Magnus  
mutilated.

Thereafter King Harald had a meeting of his counsellors, and desired their counsel; and in this meeting the judgment was given that Magnus should be deposed from his dominions, and should no longer be called king. Then he was delivered to the king's slaves, who mutilated him, picked out both his eyes, cut off one foot, and at last castrated him. Ivar Ozursson was blinded, and Hakon Fauk killed. The whole country then was reduced to obedience under King Harald. Afterwards it was diligently examined who were King Magnus's best friends, or who knew most of his concealments of treasure or valuables. The holy cross King Magnus had kept beside him since the battle of Fyrisleif, but would not tell where it was deposited for preservation. Bishop Reinhold of Stavanger, who was an Englishman, was considered very greedy of money. He was a great friend of King Magnus, and it was thought likely that great treasure and valuables had been given into his keeping. Men were sent for him accordingly, and he came to Bergen, where it was insisted against him that he had some knowledge of such treasure; but he denied it altogether, would not

admit it, and offered to clear himself by ordeal. King Harald would not have this, but laid on the bishop a money fine of fifteen marks of gold, which he should pay to the king. The bishop declared he would not thus impoverish his bishop's see, but would rather offer his life. On this they hanged the bishop out on the holm, beside the sling machine. As he was going to the gallows he threw the sock from his foot, and said with an oath, "I know no more about King Magnus's treasure than what is in this sock;" and in it there was a gold ring. Bishop Reinhold was buried at North-ness in Michael's church, and this deed was much blamed. After this Harald Gille was sole king of Norway as long as he lived.

Five years after King Sigurd's death remarkable occurrences took place in Konghelle. Guttorm, a son of Harald Flitter, and Sæmund Huusfrefya, were at that time the king's officers there. Sæmund was married to Ingeborg, a daughter of the priest Andreas Brunsson. Their sons were Paul Flip and Gunne Fis. Sæmund's natural son was called Aasmund. Andreas Brunsson was a very remarkable man, who carried on divine service in the Cross church. His wife\* was called Solveig. John Lopton, who was then eleven years old, was in their house to be fostered and educated. The priest Lopt Sæmundson, John's father, was also in the town at that time. It happened now in Konghelle, the next Sunday night after Easter week, that there was a great noise in the streets through the whole town, as if the king was going through with all his court-men. The dogs were so affected that nobody could hold them, but they slipped loose; and when they came out they ran mad, biting all that came in their way, people and cattle. All who were bitten by them till the blood

SAGA XIII

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Extra-  
ordinary  
omens in  
Konghelle.

\* The Catholic priests appear to have had wives at that time in Norway, and celibacy to have been confined to the monks.

**SAGA XIII.** came turned raging mad; and pregnant women were taken in labour prematurely, and became mad. From Easter to Ascension-day, these portentous circumstances took place almost every night. People were dreadfully alarmed at these wonders; and many made themselves ready to remove, sold their houses, and went out to the country districts, or to other towns. The most intelligent men looked upon it as something extremely remarkable; were in dread of it; and said, as it proved to be, that it was an omen of important events which had not yet taken place. And the priest Andreas, on Whit Sunday, made a long and excellent speech, and turned the conclusion of it to the distressing situation of the townspeople; telling them to muster courage, and not lay waste their excellent town by deserting it, but rather to take the utmost care in all things, and use the greatest foresight against all dangers, as of fire or the enemy, and to pray to God to have mercy on them.

**CHAPTER  
X.**  
The rise  
of war in  
Konghelle.

Thirteen loaded merchant ships made ready to leave the town, intending to proceed to Bergen; but eleven of them were lost, men and goods, and all that was in them; the twelfth was lost also, but the people were saved, although the cargo went to the bottom. At that time the priest Lopt went north to Bergen, with all that belonged to him, and arrived safely. The merchant vessels were lost on Saint Lawrence eve. The Danish king Eric Eymund, and the Archbishop Ozur\*, both sent notice to Konghelle to keep watch on their town; and said the Vendland people had a great force on foot with which they made war far around on Christian people, and usually gained the victory. But the townspeople attended very little to

\* This Ozur, — or Asserus, Asgerus, or Atscherus, — was the first archbishop of Lund in Scania, and died anno 1138.

this warning, were indifferent, and forgot more and more the dreadful omens the longer it was since they happened. On the holy Saint Lawrence day, while the words of high mass were spoken, came the Vendland king Rettibur to Konghelle with 250 Vendland cutters, and in each cutter were forty-four men and two horses. The king's sister's son Dunimiz, and Unibur, a chief who ruled over many people, were with him. These two chiefs rowed at once, with all their troops, up the east arm of the Gotha river past Hising Isle, and thus came down to the town; but a part of the fleet lay in the western arm, and came so to the town. They made fast their ships at the piles, and landed their horses, and rode over the height of Bratsaas, and from thence up around the town. Einar, a relation of priest Andreas, brought these tidings up to the Castle church; for there the whole inhabitants of the town were gathered to hear high mass. Einar came just as the priest Andreas was holding his discourse; and he told the people that an army was sailing up against the town with a great number of ships of war, and that some people were riding over Bratsaas. Many said it must be the Danish king Eric, and from him they might expect peace. The people ran down into the town to their properties, armed themselves, and went down upon the piers, whence they immediately saw there was an enemy and an immense army. Nine East-country trading vessels belonging to the merchants were afloat in the river at the piers. The merchants took these, armed themselves, and defended themselves long, well, and manfully. There was a hard battle, and resistance, before the merchant vessels were cleared of their men; and in this conflict the Vendland people lost 150 of their ships, with all the men on board. When the battle was sharpest the townsmen stood upon the



**SAGA XIII.** piers\*, and shot at the heathens. But when the fight slackened the burgesses fled up to the town, and from thence into the castle; and the men took with them all their valuable articles, and such goods as they could carry. Solveig and her daughters, with two other women, went on shore, when the Vendlanders took possession of the merchant vessels. Now the Vendlanders landed, and mustered their men, and discovered their loss. Some of them went up into the town, some on board the merchant ships, and took all the goods they pleased; and then they set fire to the town, and burnt it and the ships. They hastened then with all their army to assault the castle.

**CHAPTER  
XI.**  
The second  
battle.

King Rettibur made an offer to those who were in the castle that they should go out, and he would give them their lives, weapons, clothes, silver, and gold; but all exclaimed against it, and went out on the fortification: some shot, some threw stones, some sharp stakes. It was a great battle, in which many fell on both sides, but by far the most of the Vendlanders. Solveig came up to a large farm called Solberg, and brought the news. A message war-token was there split, and sent out to Skurhage, where there happened to be a joint ale-drinking feast, and many men were assembled. A bonder called Olver Stormund was there, who immediately sprang up, took helmet and shield, and a great axe in his hand, and said, "Stand up, brave lads, and take your weapons. Let us go help the townspeople; for it would appear shameful to every man who heard of it, if we sit here sipping our ale, while good men in the town are losing their lives by our neglect."

Many made an objection, and said they would only

\* The piers here spoken of are merely wooden gangways or stages on piles from the shore to the ship; and every warehouse or dwelling on the side of a river or harbour has such a pier for itself in Norway.

be losing their own lives, without being of any assistance to the townspeople. SAGA XIII

Then said Olver, "Although all of you should hold back, I will go alone; and one or two heathens, at any rate, shall fall before I fall."

He ran down to the town, and a few men after him to see what he would do, and also whether they could assist him in any way. When he came near the castle, and the heathens saw him, they sent out eight men fully armed against him; and when they met, the heathen men ran and surrounded him on all sides. Olver lifted his axe, and struck behind him with the extreme point of it, hitting the neck of the man who was coming up behind him, so that his throat and jawbone were cut through, and he fell dead backwards. Then he heaved his axe forwards, and struck the next man in the head, and clove him down to the shoulders. He then fought with the others, and killed two of them; but was much wounded himself. The four who remained took to flight, but Olver ran after them. There was a ditch before them, and two of the heathens jumped into it, and Olver killed them both; but he stuck fast himself in the ditch, so that two of the eight heathens escaped. The men who had followed Olver took him up, and brought him back to Skurhage, where his wounds were bound and healed; and it was the talk of the people, that no single man had ever made such a bloody onset. Two lendermen, Sigurd Gyrderesson a brother of Philip, and Sigaard, came with 600 men to Skurhage; on which Sigurd turned back with 400 men. He was but little respected afterwards, and soon died. Sigaard, on the other hand, proceeded with 200 men towards the town; and they gave battle to the heathens, and were all slain. While the Vendlanders were storming the castle, their king and his chiefs were out of the battle. At one place there was a man among the Vendlanders

**SAGA XIII.** shooting with a bow, and killing a man for every arrow; and two men stood before him, and covered him with their shields. Then Sæmund Huusfrefya said to his son Aasmund, that they should both shoot together at this bowman. "But I will shoot at the man who holds the shield before him." He did so, and he knocked the shield down a little before the man; and in the same instant Aasmund shot between the shields, and the arrow hit the bowman in the forehead, so that it came out at his neck, and he fell down dead. When the Vendlanders saw it they howled like dogs, or like wolves. Then King Rettibur called to them that he would give them safety and life, but they refused terms. The heathens again made a hard assault. One of the heathens in particular fought so bravely, and ventured so near, that he came quite up to the castle-gate, and pierced the man who stood outside the gate with his sword; and although they used both arrow and spear against him, and he had neither shield nor helmet, nothing could touch him, for he was so skilled in witchcraft that weapon could not wound him. Then Priest Andreas took consecrated fire; blew upon it; cut tinder in pieces, and laid it on the fire; and then laid the tinder on the arrow-point, and gave it to Aasmund. He shot this arrow at the warlock; and the shaft hit so well that it did its business, and the man of witchcraft fell dead. Then the heathens crowded together as before, howling and whining dreadfully; and all gathered about their king, on which the Christians believed that they were holding a council about retreating. The interpreters, who understood the Vendland tongue, heard the chief Unibur make the following speech: "These people are brave, and it is difficult to make any thing of them; and even if we took all the goods in their town, we might willingly give as much more that we had never come here, so great has been our loss of men and

chiefs. Early in the day, when we began to assault the castle, they defended themselves first with arrows and spears; then they fought against us with stones; and now with sticks and staves, as against dogs. I see from this that they are in want of weapons and means of defence; so we shall make one more hard assault, and try their strength." It was as he said, that they now fought with stakes; because, in the first assault, they had imprudently used up all their missile weapons and stones; and now when the Christians saw the number of their stakes diminishing, they clave each stake in two. The heathens now made a very hot attack, and rested themselves between whiles, and on both sides they were exhausted. During a rest the Vendland king Rettibur again offered terms, and that they should retain the weapons, clothes, and silver they could carry out of the castle. Sæmund Huusfrefya had fallen, and the men who remained gave the counsel to deliver up the castle and themselves into the power of the heathens: but it was a foolish counsel; for the heathens did not keep their promises, but took all people, men, women, and children, and killed all of them who were wounded or young, or could not easily be carried with them. They took all the goods that were in the castle; went into the Cross church, and plundered it of all its ornaments. The priest Andreas gave King Rettibur a silver-mounted gilt sceptre, and to his sister's son Dunimiz he gave a gold ring. They supposed from this that he was a man of great importance in the town, and held him in higher respect than the others. They took away with them the holy cross, and also the tables which stood before the altar, which Sigurd had got made in the Greek country, and had brought home himself. These they took, and laid flat down on the steps before the altar. Then the heathens went out of the church. Rettibur said, "This house has been adorned

**SAGA XIII.** with great zeal for the God to whom it is dedicated; but, methinks, he has shown little regard for the town or house: so I see their God has been angry at those who defended them." King Rettibur gave the priest Andreas the church, the shrine, the holy cross, the Bible, the altar-book, and four clerks (prisoners); but the heathens burnt the Castle-church, and all the houses that were in the castle. As the fire they had set to the church went out twice, they hewed the church down, and then it burnt like other houses. Then the heathens went to their ships with the booty; but when they mustered their people and saw their loss, they made prisoners of all the people, and divided them among the vessels. Now Priest Andreas went on board the king's ship with the holy cross, and there came a great terror over the heathens on account of the portentous circumstance which took place in the king's ship; namely, it became so hot that all thought they were going to be burnt up. The king ordered the interpreter to ask the priest why this happened. He replied, that the Almighty God on whom the Christians believed, sent them a proof of his anger, that they who would not believe in their Creator presumed to lay hands on the emblem of his suffering; and that there lay so much power in the cross, that such, and even clearer miracles, happened to heathen men who had taken the cross in their hands. The king had the priest put into the ship's boat, and the priest Andreas carried the holy cross in his grasp. They led the boat along past the ship's bow, and then along the side of the next ship, and then shoved it with a boat-hook in beside the pier. Then Andreas went with the cross by night to Solberg, in rain and dreadful weather; but brought it in good preservation. King Rettibur, and the men he had remaining, went home to Vendland, and many of the people who were taken at Konghelle were long after-

wards in slavery in Vendland; and those who were ransomed, and came back to Norway to their udal lands and properties, throve worse than before their capture. The merchant town of Konghelle has never since risen to the importance it was of before this event.

King Magnus, after he was deprived of sight, went north to Nidaros, where he went into the cloister on the holm, and assumed the monk's dress. The cloister received the farm of Great Herness in Frosta for his support. King Harald alone ruled the country the following winter, gave all men peace and pardon who desired it, and took many of the men into his court-service who had been with King Magnus. The priest Einar Skuleson says that King Harald had two battles in Denmark; the one at Huæn Isle, and the other at Lessö Isle:—

SAGA XIII.  
—CHAPTER  
XII.  
Of Magnus  
the Blind.

“Unwearied champion! who wast bred  
To stain thy blue-edged weapons red!  
Beneath high Huæn's rocky shore,  
The faithless felt thy steel once more.”

And again, thus:—

“On Lessö's plain the foe must quail  
'Fore him who dyes their shirts of mail.  
His storm-stretched banner o'er his head  
Flies straight, and fills the foe with dread.”

King Harald was a very generous man. It is told that in his time Magnus Einarsson came from Iceland to be consecrated a bishop, and the king received him well, and showed him much respect. When the bishop was ready to sail for Iceland again, and the ship was rigged out for sea, he went to the hall where the king was drinking, saluted him politely and warmly, and the king received him joyfully. The queen was sitting beside the king.

Then said the king, “Are you ready, bishop, for your voyage?”

He replied that he was.

## SAGA XIII.

The king said, "You come to us just now at a bad time; for the tables are just removed, and there is nothing at hand suitable to present to you. What is there to give the bishop?"

The treasurer replies, "Sire, as far I know, all articles of any value are given away."

The king: "Here is a drinking goblet remaining; take this, bishop, it is not without value."

The bishop expressed his thanks for the honour shown him.

Then said the queen, "Farewell, bishop! and a happy voyage."

The king said to her, "When did you ever hear a noble lady say so to a bishop without giving him something?"

She replies, "Sire, what have I to give him?"

The king: "Thou hast the cushion under thee."

Thereupon this, which was covered with costly cloth, and was a valuable article, was given to the bishop. When the bishop was going away the king took the cushion from under himself and gave it him, saying, "They have long been together." When the bishop arrived in Iceland to his bishop's see, it was talked over what should be done with the goblet that would be serviceable for the king; and when the bishop asked the opinion of other people, many thought it should be sold, and the value bestowed on the poor. Then said the bishop, "I will take another plan. I will have a chalice made of it for this church, and consecrate it, so that all the saints of whom there are relics in this church shall let the king have some good for his gift every time a mass is sung over it." This chalice has since belonged to the bishopric of Skalholt; and of the costly cloth with which the cushions given him by the king were covered, were made the choristers' cloaks which are now in Skalholt. From this the generous spirit of King Harald may be seen, as

well as from many other things, of which but a few SAGA XIII. are set down here.

King Harald took Thora, a daughter of Guttorm Graabard, to be his concubine; and they had a son, who was called Sigurd. He had also a son by Queen Ingigerd, who was called Inge. The one of Harald's daughters was called Brigetta, the other Maria. His daughter Brigetta was first married to the Swedish king Inge Halsteinsson, then to Magnus Heinricksson, and lastly to Birger Brose.

There was a man, by name Sigurd, who was brought up in Norway, and was called Priest Adalbrekt's son. Sigurd's mother was Thora, a daughter of Saxe of Vik, a sister of Sigrid, who was mother of King Olaf Magnusson, and of Kaare the king's brother who married Borghild, a daughter of Dag Eilifsson. Their sons were Sigurd of Ostvaat and Dag. Sigurd of Ostvaat's sons were John of Ostvaat, Thorstein, and Andreas the Deaf. John was married to Sigrid, a sister of King Inge and of Duke Skule. This Sigurd, in his childhood, was kept at his book, became a clerk, and was consecrated a deacon; but as he ripened in years and strength he became a very clever man, stout, strong, distinguished for all perfections and exercises beyond any of his years,—indeed, beyond any man in Norway. Sigurd showed early traces of a haughty ungovernable spirit, and was therefore called Slem-bidiakn.\* He was as handsome a man as could be seen, with rather thin but beautiful hair. When it came to Sigurd's ears that his mother said King Magnus was his father, he laid aside all clerkship; and as soon as he was old enough to be his own master, he left the country. He was a long time on his travels, went to Palestine; was at the Jordan river; and visited

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
The be-  
ginning of  
Sigurd  
Slem-  
bidiakn.

\* Slembidiakn, or Slembidegn — the bad deacon.



**SAGA XIII.** many holy places, as pilgrims usually do. When he came back, he applied himself to trading expeditions. One winter he was in Orkney with Earl Harald, and was with him when Thorkel Fostre Summarlidsson was killed. Sigurd was also in Scotland with the Scottish king David, and was held in great esteem by him. Thereafter Sigurd went to Denmark; and according to the account of himself and his men, he there submitted to the iron ordeal to confirm his paternal descent, and proved by it, in the presence of five bishops, that he was a son of King Magnus Barefoot. So says Ivar Ingemundsson \*, in Sigurd's song: —

“ The holiest five  
Of men alive, —  
Bishops were they, —  
Solemnly say,  
The iron glowing  
Red hot, yet showing  
No scaith on skin,  
Proves cause and kin.”

King Harald Gille's friends, however, said this was only a lie, and deceit of the Danes against the people of Norway. It is told before of Sigurd that he passed some years in merchant voyages, and he came thus to Iceland one winter, and took up his lodging with Thorgil Oddsson of Stadarholl in Saurbö; but very few knew where he was. In autumn, when the sheep were being driven into a fold to be slaughtered, a sheep that was to be caught ran to Sigurd; and as Sigurd thought the sheep ran to him for protection, he stretched out his hands to it, and lifted it over the fold dyke, and let it run to the hills, saying,

\* Every pretender to the throne appears to have had some scald, who took his chance with his patron. This Ivar does not appear unless as Sigurd's scald, and as attached to his fortunes. In these scraps of the poetry of the scalds it is necessary to recollect by whom each is composed, and to which personage he is attached.

“There are not many who seek help from me, so I may well help this one.” It happened the same winter that a woman had committed a theft, and Thorgil, who was angry at her for it, was going to punish her; but she ran to Sigurd to ask his help, and he set her upon the bench by his side. Thorgil told him to give her up, and told him what she had committed; but Sigurd begged forgiveness for her, since she had come to him for protection, and that Thorgil would dismiss the complaint against her, but Thorgil insisted that she should receive her punishment. When Sigurd saw that Thorgil would not listen to his entreaty, he started up, drew his sword, and bade him take her if he dared; and Thorgil seeing that Sigurd would defend the woman by force of arms, and observing his commanding mien, guessed who he must be, desisted from pursuing the woman, and pardoned her. There were many foreign men there, and Sigurd made the least appearance among them. One day Sigurd came into the sitting-room, and a Northman who was splendidly clothed was playing chess with one of Thorgil’s house-servants. The Northman called Sigurd, and asked him his advice how to play; but when Sigurd looked at the board, he saw the game was lost. The man who was playing against the Northman had a sore foot, so that one toe was bruised, and matter was coming out of it. Sigurd, who was sitting on the bench, takes a straw, and draws it along the floor, so that some young kittens ran after it. He drew the straw always before them, until they came near to the house-servant’s foot, who, jumping up with a scream, threw the chessmen in disorder on the board; and thus it was a dispute how the game had stood. This is given as a proof of Sigurd’s cunning. People did not know that he was a learned clerk until the Saturday before Easter, when

**SAGA XIII.** he consecrated the holy water with chant; and the longer he staid there the more he was esteemed. The summer after, Sigurd told Thorgil, before they parted, that he might with all confidence address his friends to Sigurd Slembidiakn. Thorgil asked how nearly he was related to him; on which he replies, "I am Sigurd Slembidiakn, a son of King Magnus Barefoot." He then left Iceland.

**CHAPTER  
XIV.  
Of Sigurd  
Slembidiakn.**

At this time Harald was sole king of Norway, and people generally said that he was not a man of understanding; but not so cruel as his relation King Magnus Sigurdsson. When Harald Gille had been six years King of Norway, Sigurd came to the country; and many gave him the counsel to go at once to King Harald, declare his relationship to him, and try how matters would go. Sigurd accordingly went to his brother King Harald, and found him in Bergen. He placed himself entirely in the king's hands, disclosed who his father was, and asked him to acknowledge their relationship. The king gave him no hasty or distinct reply; but laid the matter before his friends in a conference at a specially appointed meeting. When the king's counsellors were made acquainted with it, they said that if Sigurd was placed over the kingdom he would become too great, as King Magnus had been: and now they lived in all quietness, and the lendermen alone, in fact, governed the kingdom; and therefore they advised the king to lay a capital accusation against Sigurd, and have him put to death. After this conference it became known that the king laid an accusation against Sigurd, because he had been at the killing of Thorkel Fostre in the West. Thorkel had accompanied Harald to Norway when he first came to the country, and had been one of Harald's best friends. This case was followed up so severely, that a capital accusation against Sigurd was

made, and, by the advice of the lenders, was carried so far, that some of the king's pursuivants went one evening late to Sigurd, and called him to them. They then took a boat, and rowed away with Sigurd from the town north to Holdhella.\* Sigurd sat on a chest in the stern of the boat, and had his suspicions that foul play was intended. He was clothed in blue trousers, and over his shirt he had a hood tied with ribands, which served him for a cloak. He sat looking down, and holding his hood-strings; and sometimes moved them over his head, sometimes let them fall again before him. Now when they had passed the ness, and had come nearly to Miolk-a, they were, part of them, drunk and merry, and part were rowing so eagerly that they were not taking notice of any thing. Sigurd stood up, and went on the boat's deck; but the two men who were placed to guard him stood up also, and followed him to the side of the vessel, holding by his cloak, as is the custom in guarding people of distinction. As he was afraid that they would catch hold of more of his clothes, he seized them both, and leaped overboard with them. The boat, in the mean time, had gone on a long way, and it was a long time before those on board could turn the vessel, and long before they could get their own men taken on board again; and Sigurd dived under water, and swam so far away that he reached the land before they could get the boat turned to pursue him. Sigurd, who was very swift of foot, hied up to the Fielde, and the king's men travelled about the whole night seeking him without finding him. He lay down in a cleft of the rocks; and as he was very cold he took off his trousers, cut a hole in the seat of them, and stuck his head through it, and put his arms in the legs of them.

\* Holdhella, — now Halle, — a point of land near Bergen.

**SAGA XIII.** He escaped with life this time; and the king's men returned, and could not conceal their unsuccessful adventure.

**CHAPTER  
XV.**  
Treachery  
towards  
King  
Harald.

Sigurd thought now that it would be of no use to seek any help from King Harald again; and he kept himself concealed all the autumn and the beginning of winter. He lay hid in Bergen, in the house of a priest. King Harald was also in the town, and many great people with him. Now Sigurd considered how, with his friends' help, he might take the king by surprise, and make an end of him. Many men took part in this design; and among them some who were King Harald's court-men and chamberlains, but who had formerly been King Magnus's court-men. They stood in great favour with the king, and some of them sat constantly at the king's table. On St. Lucia's day, in the evening, when they proposed to execute this treason, two men sat at the king's table talking together; and one of them said to the king, "Sire, we two table-companions submit our dispute to your judgment, having made a wager of a basket of honey to him who guesses right. I say that you will sleep this night with your Queen Ingigerd; and he says that you will sleep with Thora, Guttorm's daughter."

The king answered laughing, and without suspecting in the least that there lay treachery under the question, — that he who asked had lost his bet.

They knew thus where he was to be found that night; but the main guard was without the house in which most people thought the king would sleep, viz that which the queen was in.

**CHAPTER  
XVI.**  
Murder  
of King  
Harald.

Sigurd Slembe, and some men who were in his design, came in the night to the lodging in which King Harald was sleeping; killed the watchman first; then broke open the door, and went in with drawn

swords. Ivar Kolbeinsson made the first attack on King Harald; and as the king had been drunk when he went to bed he slept sound, and awoke only when the men were striking at him. Then he said in his sleep, "Thou art treating me hardly, Thora." She sprang up, saying, "They are treating thee hardly who love thee less than I do." Harald was deprived of life. The men who went in with Sigurd to the king were Ogmund, a son of Thrand Skage, Kolbein Thorliotsson of Batalder, and Erlind, an Icelander. Then Sigurd went out with his helpers, and ordered the men to be called to him who had promised him their support if he should get King Harald taken out of the way. Sigurd and his men then went on, and took a boat, set themselves to the oars, and rowed out in front of the king's house; and then it was just beginning to be daylight. Then Sigurd stood up, spoke to those who were standing on the king's pier, made known to them the murder of King Harald by his hand, and desired that they would take him, and choose him as chief according to his birth. Now came many swarming down to the pier from the king's house; and all with one voice replied, that they would never give obedience or service to a man who had murdered his own brother. "And if thou art not his brother, thou hast no claim from descent to be king." They clashed their weapons together, and adjudged all murderers to be banished and outlawed men. Now the king's horn sounded, and all lendersmen and courtmen were called together. Sigurd and his comrades saw it was best for them to get away; and he went northward to North Hordaland, where he held a Thing with the bonders, who submitted to him, and gave him the title of king. From thence he went to Sogn, and held a Thing there with the bonders, and was proclaimed king. Then he went north across

SAGA XIII. the Fielde, and most people supported his cause. So  
— says Ivar Ingemundsson : —

“ On Harald’s fall  
The bonders all,  
In Hörd and Sogn,  
‘Took Magnus’ son.  
The Things swore too  
They would be true  
To this new head,  
In Harald’s stead.”

King Harald was buried in the old Christ church.

## XIV.

SAGA OF SIGURD, INGE, AND EYSTEIN,  
THE SONS OF HARALD.\*SAGA XIV.  
—

QUEEN INGERID, and with her the lendersmen and the court which had been with King Harald, resolved to send a fast-sailing-vessel to Drontheim to make known King Harald's death, and also to desire the Drontheim people to take King Harald's son Sigurd for king. He was then in the north, and was fostered by Gyrder Bardson. Queen Ingerid herself proceeded eastward immediately to Viken. Inge was the name of her son by King Harald, and he was then fostered by Amund Gyrdersson, a grandson of Logberse. When they came to Viken a Borgar-thing† was immediately called together, at which Inge, who was in the second year of his age, was chosen king. This resolution was supported by Amund and Thio-stolf Aleson, together with many other great chiefs. Now when the tidings came north to Drontheim that King Harald was murdered, the Drontheim people took Sigurd, King Harald's son, who was then in his fourth year, to be the king; and at the Ore-thing this resolution was supported by Ottar Birting, Peter Sauda-Ulfsson, the brothers Guttorm of Reine and Ottar Balle Asolfssons, and many other great chiefs, and many other people. Afterwards the whole nation almost submitted to the brothers, and principally because their father was considered holy; and the

CHAPTER  
I.  
Beginning  
of the his-  
tory of the  
kings Si-  
gurd and  
Inge.

\* The period is from about 1136 to 1161.

† The Borgar-thing—a Thing at the Borg of Sarp or Sarpsborg; one of the regular great Things of the country.



SAGA XIV. country took the oath to them, that the kingly power should not go to any other man as long as any of King Harald's sons was alive.

CHAPTER  
II.  
Of Sigurd  
Slembi-  
diakn.

Sigurd Slembe sailed north around Stad; and when he came to North Möre, he found that letters and full powers had arrived before him from the leaders who had given in their allegiance to Harald's sons; so that there he got no welcome or help. As Sigurd himself had but few people with him, he resolved to go with them to Drontheim, and seek out Magnus the Blind; for he had already sent a message before him to Magnus's friends. At that time King Sigurd Haraldson was in the town, and many great men with him; so it was not easy for Sigurd Slembe to come there. He had with him at this time many of Magnus the Blind's friends. Now when they came to the town, they rowed up the river Nid to meet King Magnus, and fastened their land-ropes on the shore at the king's house; but were obliged to set off immediately, for all the people rose against them. They then landed in Munkholm, and took Magnus the Blind out of the cloister against the will of the monks; for he had been consecrated a monk. It is said by some that Magnus willingly went with them; although it was differently reported, in order to make his cause appear better. Sigurd, immediately after Yule, went forth with his suite, expecting aid from his relations and Magnus's friends, and which they also got. Sigurd sailed with his men out of the fiord, and was joined afterwards by Biorn Egilsson, Gunnar of Gimse, Haldor Sigurdsson, Aslak Hakonsson, the brothers Benedict and Eric, and also the court which had before been with King Magnus, and many others. With this troop they went south to Möre, and down to the mouth of Raumsdal fiord. Here Sigurd and Magnus divided their forces, and Sigurd went immediately westwards across the sea. King Magnus again

proceeded to the Uplands, where he expected much help and strength, and which he obtained. He remained there the winter and all the summer, and had many people with him; but King Inge proceeded against him with all his forces, and they met at a place called Minne. There was a great battle, at which King Magnus had the most people. It is related that Thiostolf Aleson carried King Inge in his belt as long as the battle lasted, and stood under the banner; but Thiodolf was hard pressed by fatigue and fighting: and it is commonly said that King Inge got his ill health there, and which he retained as long as he lived, so that his back was knotted into a hump, and the one foot was shorter than the other; and he was besides so infirm that he could scarcely walk as long as he lived. The defeat began to turn upon Magnus and his men; and in the front rank of his array fell Thorkel, Haldor Sigurdsson, Biorn Egilsson, Gunnar of Gimse, and a great number of his men, before he himself would take to his horse and fly. So says Kolli the Wise:—

“Thy arrow-storm on Mynna’s banks  
 Fast thinn’d the foemen’s strongest ranks;  
 Thy good sword hewed the raven’s feast  
 On Mynna’s banks up in the East.  
 Shield clashed on shield, and bucklers broke  
 Under thy battle-axe’s stroke;  
 While thou, uncovered, urged the fray,  
 Thy shield and mail-coat thrown away.”

And also this:—

“The king to heaven belonging\* fled,  
 When thou†, in war’s quick death-game bred,  
 Unpanzered, shieldless, on the plain  
 His heavy steel-clad guards hadst slain.

---

\* Magnus, having assumed the monk’s garb, was considered as belonging to heaven.

† This appears to be addressed to Thiostolf Aleson, who commanded in the battle; not to King Inge, an infant.

## SAGA XIV.

The painted shield, and steel-plate mail,  
Before thy fierce attack soon fail.  
To Magnus, who belongs to heaven,  
Was no such fame in battle given."

Magnus fled eastward to Gotland to Earl Karl, who was a great and ambitious man. Magnus the Blind and his men said, wherever they happened to meet with chiefs, that Norway lay quite open to any great chieftain who would attack it; for it might well be said there was no king in the country, and the kingdom was only ruled by lendersmen, and, among those who had most sway, there was, from mutual jealousy, most discord. Now Karl, being ambitious of power, listens willingly to such speeches; collects men, and rides west to Viken, where many people, out of fear, submit to him. When Thiodolf Aleson and Amund heard of this, they went with the men they could get together, and took King Inge with them. They met Earl Karl and the Gotland army eastward in Kroghskoven, where there was a great battle and a great defeat, King Inge gaining the victory. Munan Ogmundsson, Earl Karl's mother's brother, fell there. Ogmund the father of Munan was a son of Earl Orm Eilifsson, and Sigrid a daughter of Earl Finn Arneson. Astrid, Ogmund's daughter, was the mother of Earl Karl. Many others of the Gotland people fell at Kroghskoven; and the earl fled eastward through the forest. King Inge pursued them all the way out of the kingdom; and this expedition turned out a great disgrace to them. So says Kolli:—

"I must proclaim how our great lord  
Coloured deep red his ice-cold sword;  
And ravens played with Gotland bones,  
And wolves heard Gotlanders' last groans.  
Their silly jests were well repaid,—  
In Kroka-skov their laugh was laid:  
Thy battle power was then well tried,  
And they who won may now deride."

Magnus the Blind then went to Denmark to King Eric Eymund, where he was well received. He offered the king to follow him if he would invade Norway with a Danish army, and subdue the country; saying, that if he came to Norway with his army, no man in Norway would venture to throw a spear against him. The king allowed himself to be moved by Magnus's persuasions, ordered a levy, and went north to Norway with 200 ships; and Magnus and his men were with him on this expedition. When they came to Viken, they proceeded peacefully and gently on the east side of the fiord; but when the fleet came westward to Tunsberg, a great number of King Inge's lendemen came against them. Their leader was Vatn-Orm Dagsson, a brother of Gregorius. The Danes could not land to get water without many of them being killed; and therefore they went in through the fiord to Opslo, where Thiostolf Aleson opposed them. It is told that some people wanted to carry the holy Halvard's coffin out of the town in the evening when the fleet was first observed, and as many as could took hold of it; but the coffin became so heavy that they could not carry it over the church floor. The morning after, however, when they saw the fleet sailing in past the Hoved Isle, four men carried the coffin out of the town, and Thiostolf and all the townspeople followed it. It was carried to Fors in Raumarige, and was kept there three months.

SAGA XIV.  
CHAPTER  
III.  
King Eric's  
expedition  
to Norway.

King Eric and his army advanced against the town; and when Thiostolf made a halt outside, Eric's men hastened after Thiostolf and his troop; and one of the king's forecastle men, who was called Askel, was the first in the pursuit. Thiostolf threw a spear at him, which hit him under the throat, so that the spear point went through his neck; and Thiostolf thought he had never made a better spear-cast, for, except the place he hit, there was nothing bare to be seen.

CHAPTER  
IV.  
The town  
of Opslo  
burnt.

**SAGA XIV.** Thiostolf went up to Raumarige, and collected men during the night, with whom he returned towards the town in the morning. In the mean time King Eric set fire to Halvard's church, and to the town, which was entirely burnt. Thiostolf came soon after to the town with the men he had assembled, and Eric sailed off with his fleet; but could not land any where on that side of the fiord, on account of the troops of the lendermen who came down against them; and wherever they attempted a landing, they left five or six men or more upon the strand. King Inge, and his foster-father Amund Gyrdersson, came with a great number of people into Hornborosund, where they fought with King Eric, and killed many of his men; but he fled, and turned about southwards to Denmark again. King Inge pursued him, and took from him all the ships he could get hold of; and it was a common observation among people, that never was so poor an expedition made with so great an armament in another king's dominions. King Eric was ill pleased at it, and thought King Magnus and his men had been making a fool of him by encouraging him to undertake this expedition, and he declared he would never again be such friends with them as before.

Now we shall continue the account of Harald's sons and Sigurd Slembe, according to what has been told us by a wise and well-informed man, Eric Oddsson; and this relation was written down from lenderman Hakon Mage, who was present himself, and related these events when they were first taken down. Both he and his sons were in all these expeditions and all these battles, and knew perfectly all about the other expeditions.

**CHAPTER  
V.  
Of Sigurd  
Slembi-  
diakn.**

Sigurd Slembidiakn came that summer from the West sea to Norway, where he heard of his relation King Magnus's unlucky expedition; so he expected no welcome in Norway, but sailed south, outside the rocks,

past the land, and set over to Denmark, and went into the Sound. He fell in with some Vendland cutters south of the islands, gave them battle, and gained the victory. He cleared eight ships, killing many of the men, and he hanged the others. Sigurd fluttered about for some time in the South countries, as he knew there was no help for him in Norway, on account of the people of Drontheim and of Møre. So says Ivar:—

“ The king from the West  
Was by slander oppress’d:  
In Drontheim and Mære  
His party was bare;  
And the bonders combined,  
From prejudiced mind,  
Against Magnus’s son,  
Who all good people won.”

He tells also that when Sigurd withdrew from Norway he came to the Swedish king’s dominions:—

“ On the thundering wave  
The king’s men brave  
Stay-ropes make fast,  
’Gainst the wild sea-blast;  
Close-reef the sail,  
The water bale;  
And brisk the yards swing,  
While sea and sky ring.  
“ By the cold white crest  
Of the waves oppressed,  
The ship scuds fast  
In the wild sea-blast.  
The king’s men save  
Their ship from the wave,  
And on Calmar strand  
Their brave king land.”

Then he came to the kingdom of the Danish king, where he made many of the principal people at the court his friends, and the king himself among the first; as is here related:—

“ He who stains red  
The claw and head  
Of the eagle race,  
Won Eric’s grace.”

## SAGA XIV.

He also had a battle off the island Moen with the Vendland men, and gained a victory. He then sailed from the south, and came to the eastern arm of the Gotha river, and took three ships of the fleet of Thorer Huinantorda, and Olaf the son of Harald Kesio, who was Sigurd's own sister's son; for Ragnhild, the mother of Olaf, was a daughter of King Magnus Barefoot. He drove Olaf up the country. So says Ivar : —

“ King Sigurd sought,  
In fray hard fought  
At Gotha strand,  
His father's land.  
The arrows flew, —  
His spearmen slew;  
And many gave way  
On each side that day.”

Thiostolf was at this time in Konghelle, and had collected people to defend the country, and Sigurd steered thither with his fleet. They shot at each other, but he could not effect a landing; and, on both sides, many were killed and many wounded. Ulfhadin Soxolfsson, Sigurd's forecastle man, fell there. He was an Icelander, from the north quarter. Sigurd continued his course northwards to Viken, and plundered far and wide around. Now when Sigurd lay in a harbour called Portyria on Lungard's coast\*, and watched the ships going to or coming from Viken to plunder them, the Tunsberg men collected an armed force against him, and came unexpectedly upon them while Sigurd and his men were on shore dividing their booty. Some of the men came down from the land, but some of the other party laid themselves with their ships right across the harbour outside of them. Many of Sigurd's men fell there, among whom were Finn Geit and Askel Smidsson; but Sigurd ran up into his ship, and

\* Now Portör, near Kragerö.

rowed out against them. Vatn-Orm's ship was the nearest, and he let his ship fall behind the line, and Sigurd rowed clear past, and thus escaped with one ship and the loss of many men. This verse was made upon Vatn-Orm\*:—

“The water-serpent, people say,  
From Portyria slipped away.”

Sigurd Slembidiakn sailed from thence to Denmark; and at that time a man was lost in his ship, whose name was Kolbein Thorliotsson of Batalder† in Hadaland. He was sitting in a boat which was made fast to the vessel, and upset because she was sailing quickly. When they came south to Denmark, Sigurd's ship itself was cast away; but he got to Aalburg, and was there in winter. The summer after Magnus and Sigurd sailed together from the south with seven ships, and came unexpectedly in the night to Lister, where they laid their ships on the land. Beintein Kolbeinsson, a court-man of King Inge, and a very brave man, was there. Sigurd and his men jumped on shore at daylight, came unexpectedly on the people, surrounded the house, and were setting fire to the buildings; but Beintein came out of a storehouse with his weapons, well armed, and stood within the door with drawn sword, his shield before him, helmet on, and ready to defend himself. The door was somewhat low. Sigurd asked which of his lads had most desire to go in against Beintein, which he called brave man's work; but none was very hurried to make ready for it. Beintein, who heard what was spoken, said, “Whoever of you comes shall find weapons in his way.” It was dark in the store-room,

CHAPTER  
VI.  
The murder of  
Beintein.

\* Vatn-Orm, the name of this man, means the water-serpent, and appears to have been a favourite name for war-ships also: hence the pun in the lines upon Vatn-Orm.

† One of those who murdered King Harald Gille.



**SAGA XIV.** and he stood in the door with drawn sword. Sigurd stood a little way from the door; and observing that nobody was very ready to attack, he took his wolf-skin coat and wound it around his arm, drew his sword, and went up to the house. He was in his shirt, and had nothing upon his head. He rushed into the house, quick as an arrow, past Beintein. Beintein struck at him, but missed him. Sigurd turned instantly on Beintein; and after exchanging blows Sigurd gave him his death-stroke, and came out presently bearing his head in his hands. From this it may be seen what a sharp, quick, and brave man he was. Ivar tells of it thus:—

“ Past Agder steering,  
The East Ness clearing,  
At Lister meet  
Brave Sigurd’s fleet.  
His men on shore  
The land drive o’er:  
Where houses stood  
Stands smoking wood.

“ On the dotted plain  
Lie the owners slain.  
Red is the sky;  
All people fly.  
To the forest side  
Men run to hide;  
But Beintein stood,  
And they spilt his blood.”

They took all the goods that were in the farmhouse, carried the booty to their ships, and sailed away. When King Inge and his friends, and also Kolbein’s sons Sigurd and Gyrd the brothers of Beintein, heard of Beintein’s murder, the king sent a great force against Sigurd Slembe and his followers; and also travelled himself, and took a ship from Hakon Paulsson Pungelt, who was a daughter’s son of Aslak a son of Erling Skialgsson of Sole, and cousin of Hakon Mage. King Inge drove Hakon and his followers up the country, and took all their gear.

Sigurd Stok, a son of Endrid of Gautdal, and his SAGA XIV. brother Eric Hæl, and Andreas Keldusked, son of Grim of Ord, all fled away into the fiords. But Sigurd Slembe, Magnus the Blind, and Thorleif Skieppe, sailed outside the isles with three ships north to Halogaland; and Magnus was in winter north in Biarkö Isle with Vidkun Johnsson. But Sigurd had the stem and stern-post of his ship cut out, made a hole in her, and sank her in the inner part of Egisfiord, and thereafter he passed the winter at Tialdasund by Glufrafiord in Kinnfielde. Far up the fiord there is a cave in the rock: in that place Sigurd sat with his followers, who were above twenty men, secretly, and hung a grey cloth before the mouth of the hole, so that no person could see them from the strand. Thorleif Skieppe, and Einar son of Ogmund of Sund, and of Gudrun daughter of Einar Aresson of Reikiahalm, procured food for Sigurd during the winter. It is said that Sigurd made the Laplanders construct two boats for him during the winter up in the fiord; and they were fastened together with deer sinews, without nails, and with twigs of willow instead of knees, and each boat could carry twelve men. Sigurd was with the Laplanders while they were making the boats; and the Laplanders had good ale, with which they entertained Sigurd. Sigurd made these lines on it:—

“ In the Lapland tent  
 Brave days we spent,  
 Under the grey birch tree;  
 In bed or on bank  
 We knew no rank,  
 And a merry crew were we.

“ Good ale went round  
 As we sat on the ground,  
 Under the grey birch tree;  
 And up with the smoke  
 Flew laugh and joke,  
 And a merry crew were we.”

SAGA XIV.      These boats were so light that no ship could overtake them in the water, according to what was sung at the time :—

“ Our skin-sewed Fin-boats lightly swim,  
Over the sea like wind they skim.  
Our ships are built without a nail;  
Few ships like ours can row or sail.”

In spring Sigurd and Magnus went south along the coast with the boats which the Laplanders had made ; and when they came to Vaage they killed Swein the priest and his two sons.

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Of Sigurd  
Slembe's  
campaign.

Thereafter Sigurd came to Vikar, and seized King Sigurd's lendemen, William Skinnar and Thorold Kieft, and killed them both. Then Sigurd turned southwards along the coast, and met Styrrkar Glæse-rofa south of Byrda, as he was coming from the south from the town of Nidaros, and killed him. Now when Sigurd came south to Valsnes, he met Swinegrim outside of the ness, and cut off his right hand. From thence he went south to Möre, past the mouth of the Drontheim fiord, where they took Hedin Hirdmaga and Kalf Kringle-Ouge. They let Hedin escape, but killed Kalf. When King Sigurd, and his foster-father Sada-Gyrder, heard of Sigurd Slembidiakn's proceedings, and what he was doing, they sent people to search for him ; and their leader was John Kanda, a son of Kalf Vrange, Bishop Ivar's brother, and besides the priest John Smyrel. They went on board the ship the Reindeer, which had twenty-two rowing benches, and was one of the swiftest sailing vessels, to seek Sigurd ; but as they could not find him, they returned northwards with little glory : for people said that they had got sight of Sigurd and his people, and durst not attack them. Afterwards Sigurd proceeded southwards along the coast, doing much mischief every where. He went south to Hordaland, and came to Herdla, where Einar a son of Laxe-Paal had a farm ; and went into

Hamar's fiord, to the Gangdaga-thing.\* They took all the goods that were at the farm, and a long-ship of twenty-two benches which belonged to Einar; and also his son, four years old, who was living with one of his labouring people. Some wanted to kill the boy, but others took him and carried him with them. The labouring man said, "It will not be lucky for you to kill the child; and it will be of no use to you to carry him away, for it is my son, and not Einar's." And on his word they let the boy remain, and went away. When Einar came home he gave the labourer money to the value of two ore of gold, thanked him for his clever invention, and promised him his constant friendship. So says Eric Oddsson, who first wrote down this relation; and he heard himself Einar Paalsson telling these circumstances in Bergen. Sigurd then went southward along the coast all the way east to Viken, and met Finn Sauda-Ulfsson east at Kevelda, as he was engaged in drawing in King Inge's rents and duties, and hanged him. Then they sailed south to Denmark.

The people of Viken and of Bergen complained that it was wrong for King Sigurd and his friends to be sitting quietly north in the town of Nidaros, while his father's murderer was cruising about in the ordinary passage at the mouth of the Drontheim fiord; and King Inge and his people, on the other hand, were in Viken in the midst of the danger, defending the country and holding many battles. Then King Inge sent a letter north to the merchant-town Nidaros, in which were these words: "King Inge Haraldsson sends his brother King Sigurd, as also Sada-Gyrder, Ogmund Swipte, Ottar Birking, and all lendermen, court-men, house-people, and all the

SAGA XIV.

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Of King  
Inge's  
letter to  
King Si-  
gurd.

\* Gangdaga-thing — a Thing held in the procession days of the Ascension Week, two weeks before Whitsuntide.

SAGA XIV. public, rich and poor, young and old, his own and God's salutation. The misfortune is known to all men that on account of our childhood—thou being but five, and I but three years of age—we can undertake nothing without the counsel of our friends and other good men. Now I and my men think that we stand nearer to the danger and necessity common to us both, than thou and thy friends; therefore make it so that thou, as soon as possible, come to me, and as strong in troops as possible, that we may be assembled to meet whatever may come. He will be our best friend who does all he can that we may be united, and may take an equal part in all things. But if thou refuse, and wilt not come after this message which I send thee in need, as thou hast done before, then thou must expect that I will come against thee with an armament: and let God decide between us; for we are not in a condition to sit here at so great an expense, and with so numerous a body of troops as are necessary here on account of the enemy, and besides many other pressing charges, whilst thou hast all the land-tax and other revenues of Norway. Live in the peace of God!"

CHAPTER  
IX.  
Ottar  
Birthing's  
speech.

Then Ottar Birthing stood up in the Thing, and first of all answered thus: "This is King Sigurd's reply to his brother King Inge—that God will reward him for his good salutation, and likewise for the trouble and burden which he and his friends have in this kingdom, and in matters of necessity which affect them both. Although now some think there is something sharp in King Inge's message to his brother Sigurd, yet he has in many respects sufficient cause for it. Now I will make known to you my opinion, and we will hear if King Sigurd and the other people of power will agree to it; and it is, that thou, King Sigurd, make thyself ready, with all the people who will follow thee, to defend thy country; and go as

strong in men as possible to thy brother King Inge as soon as thou art prepared, in order to assist each other in all things that are for the common good: and may God Almighty strengthen and assist you both! Now, king, we will have thy words." SAGA XIV.

Peter, a son of Sauda-Ulf, who was afterwards called Peter Byrdar-Swend, bore King Sigurd to the Thing. Then the king said, "Ye must know that, if I am to advise, I will go as soon as possible to my brother King Inge." Then others spoke, one after the other; but although each began his speech in his own way, he ended with agreeing to what Ottar Birting had proposed; and it was determined to call together the war-forces, and go to the east part of the country. King Sigurd accordingly went with a great armament east to Viken, and there he met his brother King Inge.

The same autumn Sigurd Slembe and Magnus the Blind came from Denmark with thirty ships, manned both with Danes and Northmen. It was near to winter. When the kings heard of this, they set out with their people eastwards to meet them. They met at Whale Isle, near the Grey Holm\*, the day after Martinmas, which was a Sunday. King Inge and King Sigurd had twenty ships, which were all large. There was a great battle; but, after the first assault, the Danes fled home to Denmark with eighteen ships. On this Sigurd's and Magnus's ships were cleared; and as the last was almost entirely bare of men, and Magnus was lying in his bed, Hreidar Griotgaardsson, who had long followed him, and been his court-man, took King Magnus in his arms, and tried to run with him on board some other ship. But Hreidar was struck by a spear, which went between his shoulders; and people say King Magnus was killed

CHAPTER  
X.  
Battle at  
Holmen-  
graa.

\* Supposed to be two small isles near Arendal.

**SAGA XIV.** by the same spear. Hreidar fell backwards upon the deck, and Magnus upon him; and every man spoke of how honourably he had followed his master and rightful sovereign. Happy are they who have such praise! There fell, on King Magnus's ship, Loder Sarpud of Linasted, Bruse Thormodsson; and the fore-castle-men to Sigurd Slembidiakn, Ivar Kolbeinsson and Halvert Fæger, who had been in Sigurd Slembe's fore-hold. This Ivar had been the first who had gone in, in the night, to King Harald, and had laid hands on him. There fell a great number of the men of King Magnus and Sigurd Slembe, for Inge's men let not a single one escape if they got hold of him; but only a few are named here. They killed upon a holm more than forty men, among whom were two Icelanders, — the priest Sigurd Birgthorsson, a grandson of Mard; the other Clemet, a son of Are Einarsson. But three Icelanders obtained their lives; namely, Ivar Skrauthank, a son of Kalf Vrange, and who afterwards was bishop of Drontheim, and was father of the archbishop Eric. Ivar had always followed King Magnus, and he escaped into his brother John Kande's ship. John was married to Cecilia, a daughter of Gyrder Baardsson, and was then in King Inge's and Sigurd's armament. There were three in all who escaped on board of John's ship. The second was Arnbiorn Ambe, who afterwards married Thorstein's daughter in Andsholt: the third was Ivar Dynte, a son of Storre, but on the mother's side of a Drontheim family, — a very agreeable man. When the troops came to know that these three were on board his ship, they took their weapons and assaulted the vessel, and some blows were exchanged, and the whole fleet had nearly come to a fight among themselves; but it came to an agreement, so that John ransomed his brothers Ivar and Arnbiorn for a fixed sum in ransom, which, however, was afterwards remitted. But Ivar Dynte was

taken to the shore, and beheaded; for Sigurd and Gyrder, the sons of Kolbein, would not take any mulct for him, as they knew he had been at their brother Beintein's murder. Ivar the bishop said, that never was there any thing that touched him so nearly, as Ivar's going to the shore under the axe, and turning to the others with the wish that they might meet in joy hereafter. Gudrid Berg's daughter, a sister of Archbishop John, told Eric Oddsson that she heard Bishop Ivar say this.

SAGA XIV.

A man called Thrand Gialdker was the steersman of King Inge's ship. It was come so far, that Inge's men were rowing in small boats between the ships after those who were swimming in the water, and killed those they could get hold of. Sigurd Slembe threw himself overboard after his ship had lost her crew, stripped off his armour under the water, and then swam with his shield over him. Some men from Thrand's vessel took prisoner a man who was swimming, and were about to kill him; but he begged his life, and offered to tell them where Sigurd Slembe was, and they agreed to it. Shields and spears, dead men, weapons, and clothes, were floating all round on the sea about the ships. "Ye can see," said he, "a red shield floating on the water: he is under it." They rowed to it immediately, took him, and brought him on board of Thrand's ship. Thrand then sent a message to Thiostolf, Ottar, Aasmund, and Gyrder. Sigurd Slembe had a tinder-box on him, and the tinder was in a walnut-shell, around which there was wax. This is related, because it seems an ingenious way of preserving it from ever getting wet. He swam with a shield over him, because nobody could know one shield from another where so many were floating about; and they would never have hit upon him, if they had not been told where he was. When Thrand came to the land with Sigurd, and it was told to the

CHAPTER  
XI.  
Sigurd  
Slembe  
taken pri-  
soner.



**SAGA XIV** troops that he was taken, the army set up a shout of joy. When Sigurd heard it he said, "Many a bad man will rejoice over my head this day." Then Thiostolf Aleson went to where Sigurd was sitting, struck from his head a silk hat edged with silver fringes, and said, "Why wert thou so impudent, thou son of a slave! to dare to call thyself King Magnus Barefoot's son?"

Sigurd replied, "Presume not to compare my father to a slave; for thy father was of little worth compared to mine."

Hall, a son of the doctor Thorgeir Steinsson, King Inge's court-man, was present at this circumstance, and told it to Eric Oddsson, who afterwards wrote these relations in a book, which he called "Back Pieces." In this book is told all concerning Harald Gille and his sons, and Magnus the Blind, and Sigurd Slembi-diakn, until their deaths. Eric was a sensible man, who was long in Norway about that time. Some of his narratives he wrote down from Hakon Mage's account; some were from the lendersmen of Harald's sons, who along with his sons were in all this feud, and in all the councils. Eric names, moreover, several men of understanding and veracity, who told him these accounts, and were so near that they saw or heard all that happened. Something he wrote from what he himself had heard or seen.

**CHAPTER  
XII.**  
Tortures  
of Sigurd  
Slembe.

Hall says that the chiefs wished to have Sigurd killed instantly; but the men who were the most cruel, and thought they had injuries to avenge, advised torturing him; and for this they named Beintein's brothers, Sigurd and Gyrder the sons of Kolbein. Peter Byrdar-Swend would also avenge his brother Finn. But the chiefs and the greater part of the people went away. They broke his shin-bones and arms with an axe-hammer. Then they stripped him, and would flay him alive; but when they tried to

take off the skin, they could not do it for the gush <sup>SAGA XIV.</sup> of blood. They took leather whips and flogged him so long, that the skin was as much taken off as if he had been flayed. Then they stuck a piece of wood in his back until it broke, dragged him to a tree and hanged him; and then cut off his head, and brought the body and head to a heap of stones and buried them there. All acknowledge, both enemies and friends, that no man in Norway, within memory of the living, was more gifted with all perfections, or more experienced, than Sigurd; but in some respects he was an unlucky man. Hall says that he spoke little, and answered only a few, and in single words, under his tortures, although they spoke to him. Hall says further, that he never moved when they tortured him, more than if they were striking a stock or a stone. This Hall alleged as a proof that he was a brave hero, who had courage to endure tortures; for he still held his tongue, and never moved from the spot. And farther, he says that he never altered his voice in the least, but spoke with as much ease as if he was sitting at the ale-table; neither speaking higher nor lower, nor in a more tremulous voice than he was used to do. He spoke until he gave up the ghost, and sang between whiles parts of the Psalm-book, and which Hall considered beyond the powers and strength of ordinary men. And the priest who had the church in the neighbourhood let Sigurd's body be transported thither to the church. This priest was a friend of Harald's sons; but when they heard it they were angry at him, had the body carried back to where it had been, and made the priest pay a fine. Sigurd's friends afterwards came from Denmark with a ship for his body, carried it to Aalburg, and interred it in Mary church in that town. So said Dean Ketil, who officiated as priest at Mary church, to Eric; and that Sigurd was buried

SAGA XIV. there. Thiostolf Aleson transported Magnus the Blind's body to Opslo, and buried it in Halvard's church, beside King Sigurd his father. Lodin Sarprud, Thorleif Bryniolfsson, and Kolbein were transported to Tunsberg; but the others of the slain were buried on the spot.

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
Eystein  
Haraldsson  
comes to  
Norway;  
and the be-  
ginning of  
Magnus  
Haraldsson.

When the kings Sigurd and Inge had ruled over Norway about six years, Eystein, who was a son of Harald Gille, came in spring from Scotland. Arne Sturleson, Thorleif Bryniolfsson, and Kolbein Ruge had sailed westward over the sea after Eystein, accompanied him to Norway, and sailed immediately with him to Drontheim. The Drontheim people received him well; and at the Ore-thing of Ascension-day he was chosen king, so that he should have the third part of Norway with his brothers Sigurd and Inge. They were at this time in the east part of the country; and men went between the kings who brought about a peace, and that Eystein should have a third part of the kingdom. People believed what he said of his paternal descent, because King Harald himself had testified to it. King Eystein's mother was called Biadauk, and she followed him to Norway. Magnus was the name of King Harald Gille's fourth son, who was fostered by Orm Kyrping. He also was chosen king, and got a fourth part of the country; but Magnus was deformed in his feet, lived but a short time, and died in his bed. Einar Skuleson speaks of them: —

“ The generous Eystein money gave;  
Sigurd in fight was quick and brave;  
Inge loved well the war-alarm;  
Magnus to save his land from harm.  
No country boasts a nobler race  
The battle-field, or Thing, to grace.  
Four brothers of such high pretence  
The sun ne'er shone upon at once.”

After King Harald Gille's death, Queen Ingerid married Ottar Birting, who was a lenderman and a great chief, and of a Drontheim family, who strengthened King Inge's government much while he was in his childhood. King Sigurd was not very friendly to Ottar; because, as he thought, Ottar always took King Inge's side. Ottar Birting was killed north in the merchant town (Nidaros), in an assault upon him in the twilight as he was going to the evening song. When he heard the whistling of the blow he held up his cloak with his hands against it; thinking, no doubt, it was a snowball thrown at him, as young boys do in the streets. Ottar fell by the stroke; but his son, Alf Rode, who just at the same moment was coming into the church-yard, saw his father's fall, and saw that the man who had killed him ran east about the church. Alf ran after him, and killed him at the corner of the choir; and people said that he had good luck in avenging his father, and afterwards was much more respected than he had been before.

King Eystein Haraldsson was in the interior of the Drontheim district when he heard of Ottar's murder, and summoned to him the bonder-army, with which he proceeded to the town; and he had many men. Ottar's relations and other friends accused King Sigurd, who was in the town, of having instigated this deed; and the bonders were much enraged against him. But the king offered to clear himself by the ordeal of iron, and thereby to establish the truth of his denial; and accordingly a peace was made. King Sigurd went to the south end of the country, and the ordeal was never afterwards heard of.

Queen Ingerid had a son to Ivar Snees, and he was called Orm, and got the surname of King-brother. He was a handsome man in appearance, and became a great chief, as shall be told hereafter. Ingerid afterwards married Arne of Stodreim, who was from this

SAGA XIV.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
Murder  
of Ottar  
Birting.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
Beginning  
of King  
Eystein  
Haralds-  
son.

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
Beginning  
of Orm the  
King-bro-  
ther.

**SAGA XIV.** called King's-mate; and their children were Inge, Nicolas, Philip of Hendsla, and Margaret, who was first married to Biorn Buk, and afterwards to Simun Kaaresson.

**CHAPTER  
XVII.**  
Journey of  
Erling  
Skakke and  
Earl Rogn-  
vald to  
foreign  
parts.

Orm Kyrping, and Ragnhild a daughter of Sweinke Steinarsson, had a son called Erling. Orm Kyrping was a son of Swend Swendsson, who was a son of Erling of Gerde. Orm's mother was Ragnhild, a daughter of Earl Hakon the Great. Erling was a man of understanding, and a great friend of King Inge, by whose assistance and counsel Erling obtained in marriage Christina, a daughter of King Sigurd the Crusader and Queen Malmfrid. Erling possessed a farm at Staudla in South Hordaland. Erling left the country; and with him went Endrid Unge and several lendermen, who had chosen men with them. They intended to make a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and went across the West sea to Orkney. There Earl Rognvald and Bishop William joined them; and they had in all fifteen ships from Orkney, with which they first sailed to the South Hebudæ, from thence west to Valland, and then the same way King Sigurd the Crusader had sailed to Norvasund\*; and they plundered all round in the heathen part of Spain. Soon after they had sailed through the Norvasund, Endric Unge and his followers, with six ships, separated from them; and then each was for himself. Earl Rognvald and Erling Skakke fell in with a large ship of burden at sea called a dromund†, and gave battle to it with nine ships. At last they laid their cutters close under the dromund; but the heathens threw both weapons

\* The Straits of Gibraltar.

† Dromund was the name of a large class of merchant vessels in the Mediterranean in the middle ages. The dromund appears to have been a ship with three masts. The name is derived from the Greek, and is of the same root as Hippodromos, and refers to its swiftness, or its long course — dromos. Vide Spelman, Glos.

and stones, and pots full of pitch and boiling oil. SAGA XIV.  
 Erling laid his ship so close under the dromund, that  
 the missiles of the heathens fell without his ship.  
 Then Erling and his men cut a hole in the dromund,  
 some working below and some above the water-mark;  
 and so they boarded the vessel through it. So says  
 Thorbiorn Skakkescald, in his poem on Erling :—

“ The axes of the Northmen bold  
 A door into the huge ship’s hold  
 Hewed through her high and curved side,  
 As snug beneath her bulge they ride.  
 Their spears bring down the astonished foe,  
 Who cannot see from whence the blow.  
 The eagle’s prey, they, man by man,  
 Fall by the Northmen’s daring plan.”

Audin, Rode Erling’s fore-castle-man, was the first man who got into the dromund. Then they carried her, killing an immense number of people; making an extraordinarily valuable booty, and gaining a famous victory. Earl Rognvald and Erling Skakke came to Palestine in the course of their expedition, and all the way to the river Jordan. From thence they went first to Constantinople, where they left their ships, travelled northwards by land, and arrived in safety in Norway, where their journey was highly praised. Erling appeared now a much greater man than before, both on account of his journey and of his marriage; besides he was a prudent sensible man, rich, of great family, eloquent, and devoted to King Inge by the strictest friendship more than to the other royal brothers.

King Sigurd went to a feast east in Viken along with his court, and rode past a house belonging to a great bonder called Simun. While the king was riding past the house, he heard within such beautiful singing that he was quite enchanted with it, and rode up to the house, and saw a lovely girl standing at the handmill and grinding. The king got off his

CHAPTER  
 XVIII.  
 Birth of  
 Hakon  
 Herdabred.

**SAGA XIV.** horse, and went to the girl and courted her. When the king went away, the bonder Simun came to know what the object of the king's visit had been. The girl was called Thora, and she was Simun the bonder's servant-girl. Simun took good care of her afterwards, and the girl brought forth a male child, who was called Hakon, and was considered King Sigurd's son. Hakon was brought up by Simun Thorbergsson and his wife Gunhild. Their own sons also, Simun, Onund, and Andreas, were brought up with Hakon, and were so dear to him that death only could have parted them.

**CHAPTER  
XIX.**  
Of Eystein  
and the  
peasants of  
Hising Isle.

While King Eystein Haraldsson was in Viken, he fell into disputes with the bonders of Reine and the inhabitants of Hising Isle, who assembled to oppose him; but he gave them battle at a place called Leikberg, and afterwards burnt and destroyed all around in Hising; so that the bonders submitted to his will, paid great fines to the king, and he took hostages from them. So says Einar Skuleson:—

“ The Viken men  
Wont strive again,  
With words or blows,  
The king to oppose.  
None safety found  
On Viken's ground,  
Till all, afraid,  
Pledge and scatt paid.”

And further:—

“ The king came near;  
He who is dear  
To all good men  
Came down the glen,  
By Leikberg hill.  
They who do ill,  
The Reine folk, fly,  
Or quarter cry.”

**CHAPTER  
XX.**  
The war  
expedition  
of King

Soon after King Eystein began his journey out of the country over sea to the West, and sailed first to Caithness. Here he heard that Earl Harald Mad-

dad's son was in Thurso, to which he sailed directly in three small boats. The earl had a ship of thirty banks of oars, and nearly eighty men in her. But they were not prepared to make resistance, so that King Eystein was able to board the ship with his men; and he took the earl prisoner, and carried him to his own ship, but the earl ransomed himself with three marks of gold: and thus they parted. Einar Skuleson tells of it thus:—

SAGA XIV  
Eystein  
Haralds-  
son.

“ Earl Harald in his stout ship lay  
On the bright sand in Thurso bay;  
With fourscore men he had no fear,  
Nor thought the Norse king was so near.  
He who provides the eagle's meals  
In three small boats along-shore steals;  
And Maddad's son must ransom pay  
For his bad outlook that fair day.”

From thence King Eystein sailed south along the east side of Scotland, and brought up at a merchant-town in Scotland called Aberdeen\*, where he killed many people, and plundered the town. So says Einar Skuleson:—

“ At Aberdeen, too, I am told,  
Fell many by our Norsemen bold;  
Peace was disturbed, and blue swords broke  
With many a hard and bloody stroke.”

The next battle was at Hartlepool† in the south, with a party of horsemen. The king put them to flight, and seized some ships there. So says Einar:—

“ At Hartlepool, in rank and row,  
The king's court-men attack the foe.  
The king's sharp sword in blood was red,  
Blood dropped from every Norse spear-head.  
Ravens rejoice o'er the warm food  
Of English slain, each where he stood;  
And in the ships their thirst was quenched:  
The decks were in the foe's blood drenched.”

Then he went southwards to England, and had

\* Apardion is Aberdeen.

† Hiartapoll—Hartlepool.



SAGA XIV. his third battle at Whitby\*, and gained the victory, and burned the town. So says Einar:—

“ The ring of swords, the clash of shields,  
Were loud in Whitby’s peaceful fields;  
For here the king stirred up the strife,—  
Man against man, for death or life.  
O’er roof and tower, rose on high  
The red wrath-fire in the sky:  
House after house the red fiend burns;  
By blackened walls the poor man mourns.”

Thereafter he plundered wide around in England, where Stephen† was then the king. After this King Eystein fought with some cavalry at Skarpa-sker.‡ So says Einar:—

“ At Skarpa-sker the English horse  
Retire before the Norse king’s force:  
The arrow-shower like snow-drift flew,  
And the shield-covered foemen slew.”

He fought next at Pilavik§, and gained the victory. So says Einar:—

“ At Pilavik the wild wolf feeds,  
Well furnished by the king’s brave deeds:  
He poured upon the grass-green plain  
A red shower from the Perthmen|| slain.  
On westward to the sea he urges,  
With fire and sword the country purges:  
Langtown¶ he burns; the country rang,  
For sword on shield incessant clang.”

\* Hvitaby—Whitby. The king is stated to have gone south to England from Hartlepool. The Saxonland appears to be distinguished from the kingdom of Northumberland, occupied by people of Danish descent under Danish law, and to be England proper in the saga.

† Stephen reigned from 1136 to October 1154. Torfæus, in *Hist. Norv.* pt. iii. lib. 9. c. 10., places this, the last of the predatory expeditions of the kings of the Northmen on the English coast, in 1153.

‡ Skarpa-sker—the steep rock—is apparently Scarborough castle, which answers to the name by its site.

§ Pilavik is not known, unless it be Welwick or Balivick, two places of which names are situated near the Spurn Head; or it may be Filey Bay, south of Scarborough.

|| How men from Perth came to fight at Pilavik is not at all clear.

¶ Langatun seems, from the scald’s allusion to the Western sea, to be Langtown, near Carlisle; not a place in Lincolnshire near Boston, as Schöning supposes.

Here they burnt Langatun, a large village ; and people say that the town has never since risen to its former condition. After this King Eystein left England in autumn, and returned to Norway. People spoke in various ways about this expedition.

SAGA XIV.

There was good peace maintained in Norway in the first years of the government of Harald's sons ; and as long as their old counsellors were alive, there was some kind of unanimity among them. While Inge and Sigurd were in their childhood, they had a court together ; but Eystein, who was come to age of discretion, had a court for himself. But when Inge's and Sigurd's counsellors were dead, — namely, Sada Gyrder Baardsson, Ottar Byrting, Amund Gyrdersson, Thio-stolf Aleson, Ogmund Swipter, and Ogmund Dreng a brother of Erling Skakke (Erling was not much looked up to while Ogmund lived), — the two kings Inge and Sigurd divided their courts. King Inge then got great assistance from Gregorius Dagsson, a son of Dag Eilifsson by Ragnhild a daughter of Skopte Ogmundsson. Gregorius had much property, and was himself a thriving, sagacious man. He presided in the governing the country under King Inge, and the king allowed him to manage his property for him according to his own judgment.

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Of Ha-  
rald's sons.

When King Sigurd grew up he was a very ungovernable, restless man in every way ; and so was King Eystein, but Eystein was the more reasonable of the two. King Sigurd was a stout and strong man, of a brisk appearance ; he had light brown hair, an ugly mouth ; but otherwise a well-shaped countenance. He was polite in his conversation beyond any man, and was expert in all exercises. Einar Skuleson speaks of this :—

CHAPTER  
XXII.  
Of the  
habits and  
manners of  
Harald's  
sons.

“ Sigurd, expert in every way  
To wield the sword in bloody fray,  
Showed well that to the bold and brave  
God always luck and vict'ry gave.

SAGA XIV.  

---

In speech, as well as bloody deeds,  
The king all other men exceeds;  
And when he speaks we think that none  
Has said a word but he alone."

King Eystein was dark and dingy in complexion, of middle height, and a prudent able man; but what deprived him of consideration and popularity with those under him were his avarice and narrowness. He was married to Ragna, a daughter of Nicolas Masa. King Inge was the handsomest among them in countenance. He had yellow but rather thin hair, which was much curled. His stature was small; and he had difficulty in walking alone, because he had one foot withered, and he had a hump both on his back and his breast. He was of cheerful conversation, and friendly towards his friends; was generous, and allowed other chiefs to give him counsel in governing the country. He was popular, therefore, with the public; and all this brought the kingdom and the mass of the people on his side. King Harald Gille's daughter Brigitta was first married to the Swedish king Inge Halsteinsson, and afterwards to Earl Karl of Gotland, and then to the Swedish king Magnus. She and King Inge Haraldsson were cousins by the mother's side. At last Brigitta married Earl Birger Brose, and they had four sons; namely, Earl Philip, Earl Canute, Folke, and Magnus. Their daughters were Ingigerd, who was married to the Swedish king Særkver, and their son was King John; a second daughter was called Christina, and a third Margaret. Harald Gille's second daughter was called Maria, who was married to Simun Skalp, a son of Halkel Huk; and their son was called Nicolas. King Harald Gille's third daughter was called Margaret, who was married to John Halkesson, a brother of Simun. Now many things occurred between the brothers which occasioned differences and disputes;

but I will only relate what appears to me to have produced the more important events. SAGA XIV.

In the days of Harald's sons Cardinal Nicolas came from Rome to Norway, being sent there by the pope. The cardinal had taken offence at the brothers Sigurd and Eystein, and they were obliged to come to a reconciliation with him; but, on the other hand, he stood on the most affectionate terms with King Inge, whom he called his son. Now when they were all reconciled with him, he moved them to let John Birgisson be consecrated archbishop of Drontheim, and gave him a vestment which is called a pallium; and settled moreover that the archbishop's seat should be in Nidaros, in Christ church, where King Olaf the Saint reposes. Before that time there had only been common bishops in Norway. The cardinal introduced also the law, that no man should go unpunished who appeared with arms in the merchant-town, excepting the twelve men who were in attendance on the king. He improved many of the customs of the Northmen while he was in the country. There never came a foreigner to Norway whom all men respected so highly, or who could govern the people so well as he did. After some time he returned to the South with many friendly presents, and declared ever afterwards that he was the greatest friend of the people of Norway. When he came south to Rome the former pope died suddenly, and all the people of Rome would have Cardinal Nicolas for pope, and he was consecrated under the name of Adrian; and according to the report of men who went to Rome in his days, he had never any business, however important, to settle with other people, but he would break it off to speak with the Northmen who desired to see him. He was not long pope, and is now considered a saint.\*

CHAPTER  
XXIII.  
Cardinal  
Nicolas  
comes to  
the country.

\* This cardinal was Nicholas Breakspear, an Englishman, from St. Alban's monastery; afterwards Pope Adrian IV.

## SAGA XIV.

CHAPTER  
XXIV.  
Miracle of  
King Olaf.

In the time of Harald Gille's sons, it happened that a man called Haldor fell into the hands of the Vendland people, who took him and mutilated him, cut open his neck, took out the tongue through the opening, and cut out his tongue-root. He afterwards sought out the holy King Olaf, fixed his mind entirely on the holy man, and weeping besought King Olaf to restore his speech and health. Thereupon he immediately recovered his speech by the good king's compassion, went immediately into his service for all his life, and became an excellent trustworthy man. This miracle took place a fortnight before the last Olafsmas, upon the day that Cardinal Nicolas set foot on the land of Norway.

CHAPTER  
XXV.  
Miracle of  
King Olaf  
on Richard.

In the Uplands were two brothers, men of great family, and men of fortune, Einar and Andreas, sons of Guttorm Graabard, and brothers of King Sigurd Haraldsson's mother; and they had great properties and udal estates in that quarter. They had a sister who was very handsome, but did not pay sufficient regard to the scandal of evil persons, as it afterwards appeared. She was on a friendly footing with an English priest called Richard, who had a welcome to the house of her brothers, and on account of their friendship for him she did many things to please him, and often to his advantage; but the end of all this was, that an ugly report flew about concerning this girl. When this came into the mouth of the public, all men threw the blame on the priest. Her brothers did the same, and expressed publicly, as soon as they observed it, that they laid the blame most on him. The great friendship that was between the girl and the priest proved a great misfortune to both, which might have been expected, as the brothers were silent about their secret determination, and let nothing be observed. But one day they called the priest to them, who went, expecting nothing but good from them;

enticed him from home with them, saying that they intended to go to another district, where they had some needful business, and inviting him to go with them. They had with them a farm-servant who knew their purpose. They went in a boat along the shore of a lake which is called Rands lake, and landed at a ness called Skiftesand, where they went on shore, and amused themselves a while. Then they went to a retired place, and commanded their servant-man to strike the priest with an axe-hammer. He struck the priest so hard that he swooned; but when he recovered he said, "Why are ye playing so roughly with me?" They replied, "Although nobody has told thee of it before, thou shalt now find the consequence of what thou hast done." They then upbraided him; but he denied their accusations, and besought God and the holy King Olaf to judge between them. Then they broke his leg-bones, and dragged him bound to the forest with them; and then they put a string around his head, and put a board under his head and shoulders, and made a knot on the string, and bound his head fast to the board. Then the elder brother, Einar, took a wedge, and put it on the priest's eye, and the servant who stood beside him struck upon it with an axe, so that the eye flew out, and fell upon the board. Then he set the pin upon the other eye, and said to the servant, "Strike now more softly." He did so, and the wedge sprang from the eye-stone, and tore the eyelid loose. Then Einar took up the eyelid in his hand, and saw that the eye-stone was still in its place; and he set the wedge on the cheek, and when the servant struck it the eye-stone sprang out upon the cheek-bone. Thereafter they opened his mouth, took his tongue and cut it off, and then untied his hands and his head. As soon as he came to himself, he thought of laying the eye-stones in their place under the eyelids, and pressing them with both hands

SAGA XIV. as much as he could. Then they carried him on board, and went to a farm called Sæhiemrod, where they landed. They sent up to the farm to say that a priest was lying in the boat at the shore. While the message was going to the farm, they asked the priest if he could talk; and he made a noise, and attempted to speak. Then said Einar to his brother, "If he recover and the stump of his tongue grow, I am afraid he will get his speech again." Thereupon they seized the stump with a pair of tongs, drew it out, cut it twice, and the third time to the very roots, and left him lying half dead. The housewife in the farm was poor; but she hastened to the place with her daughter, and they carried the priest home to their farm in their cloaks. They then brought a priest, and when he arrived he bound all his wounds; and they attended to his comfort as much as they were able. And thus lay the wounded priest grievously handled, but trusting alway to God's grace, and never doubting; and although he was speechless, he prayed to God in thought with a sorrowful mind, but with the more confidence the worse he was. He turned his thoughts also to the mild King Olaf the Saint, God's dear favourite, of whose excellent deeds he had heard so much told, and trusted so much more zealously on him with all his heart for help in his necessity. As he lay there lame, and deprived of all strength, he wept bitterly, moaned, and prayed with a sore heart that the dear King Olaf would help him. Now when this wounded priest was sleeping after midnight, he thought he saw a gallant man coming to him, who spoke these words, "Thou art ill off, friend Richard, and thy strength is little." He thought he replied to this assentingly. Then the man accosted him again, "Thou requirest compassion?" The priest replies, "I need the compassion of Almighty God and the holy King Olaf." He answered, "Thou shalt get it." Thereupon he pulled the tongue-stump so hard that

it gave the priest pain; then he stroked with his hands his eyes, and legs, and other wounded members. Then the priest asked who he was. He looked at him, and said, "Olaf, come here from Drontheim;" and then disappeared. But the priest awoke altogether sound, and thus he spoke: "Happy am I, and thanks be to the Almighty God and the holy King Olaf, who have restored me!" Dreadfully mishandled as he had been, yet so quickly was he restored from his misfortune that he scarcely thought he had been wounded or sick. His tongue was entire; both his eyes were in their places, and were clear-sighted; his broken legs and every other wound were healed, or were free from pain; and, in short, he had got perfect health. But as a proof that his eyes had been punched out, there remained a white scar on each eyelid, in order that this dear king's excellence might be manifest on the man who had been so dreadfully misused.\*

King Eystein and King Sigurd had quarrelled, because King Sigurd had killed King Eystein's courtman Harald, the Viken man, who owned a house in Bergen, and also the priest John Tabardsson and Biorne Sigurdsson. On account of this affair, a conference to settle it was appointed in winter in the Uplands. The two sat together in the conference for a long time, and so much was known of their conference that all the three brothers were to meet the following summer in Bergen. It was added, that their conference was to the effect that King Inge should have two or three farms, and as much income as would keep thirty men beside him, as he had not health to be a king. When King Inge and Gregorius heard this report, they came to Bergen with many followers. King Sigurd arrived there a

CHAPTER  
XXVI.  
The Kings  
Inge and  
Sigurd  
hold a  
Thing in  
the Holm.

\* These two chapters, XXIV. and XXV., are considered by Schöning an interpolation, not being in any manuscript, although found in Peringskiöld's edition of Snorro's work.



**SAGA XIV.** little later, and was not nearly so strong in men. Sigurd and Inge had then been nineteen years kings of Norway. King Eystein came later still from the south than the other two from the north. Then King Inge ordered the Thing to be called together on the holm by sound of trumpet; and Sigurd and Inge came to it with a great many people. Gregorius had two long-ships, and at the least ninety men, whom he kept in provisions. He kept his house-men better than other lendemen; for he never took part in any entertainment where each guest brings his liquor, without having all his house-men to drink with him. He went now to the Thing in a gold-mounted helmet, and all his men had helmets on. Then King Inge stood up, and told the assembly what he had heard; how his brothers were going to use him, and depose him from his kingdom; and asked for their assistance. The assembled people made a good return to his speech, and declared they would follow him.

**CHAPTER  
XXVII.  
Of Gre-  
gorius  
Dagsson.**

Then King Sigurd stood up and said, it was a false accusation that King Inge had made against him and his brother, and insisted that Gregorius had invented it; and insinuated that it would not be long, if he had his will, before they should meet so that the golden helmet should be doffed; and ended his speech by hinting that they could not both live. Gregorius replied, that Sigurd need not long so much for this, as he was ready now, if it must be so. A few days after, one of Gregorius's house-men was killed out upon the street, and it was Sigurd's house-men who killed him. Gregorius would then have fallen upon King Sigurd and his people; but King Inge, and many others, kept him back. But one evening, just as Queen Ingigerd, King Inge's mother, was coming from vespers, she came past where Sigurd Skrudhyrne, a court-man of King Inge, lay murdered. He was then an old man, and had served many kings. King Sigurd's court-

men, Halvard Gunnarsson, and Sigurd a son of Eystein Tropola, had killed him; and people suspected it was done by order of King Sigurd. She went immediately to King Inge, and told him he would be a little king if he took no concern, but allowed his court-men to be killed, the one after the other, like swine. The king was angry at her speech; and while they were scolding about it, came Gregorius in helmet and armour, and told the king not to be angry, for she was only saying the truth. "And I am now," says he, "come to thy assistance, if thou wilt attack King Sigurd; and here we are, above 100 men in helmets and armour, and with them we will attack where others think the attack may be worst." But the most dissuaded from this course, thinking that Sigurd would pay the mulct for the slaughter done. Now when Gregorius saw that there would be no assault, he accosted King Inge thus: "Thou wilt frighten thy men from thee in this way; for first they lately killed my house-man, and now thy court-man, and afterwards they will chase me, or some other of thy lendermen whom thou wouldst feel the loss of, when they see that thou art indifferent about such things; and at last, after thy friends are killed, they will take the royal dignity from thee. Whatever thy other lendermen may do, I will not stay here longer to be slaughtered like an ox; but Sigurd the king and I have a business to settle with each other to-night, in whatever way it may turn out. It is true that there is but little help in thee on account of thy ill health, but I should think thy will should not be less to hold thy hand over thy friends, and I am now quite ready to go from hence to meet Sigurd, and my banner is flying in the yard."

Then King Inge stood up, and called for his arms, and ordered every man who wished to follow him to get ready, declaring it was of no use to try to dissuade

SAGA XIV. him; for he had long enough avoided this, but now steel must determine between them.

CHAPTER  
XXVIII.  
Of King  
Sigurd's  
fall.

King Sigurd sat and drank in Sigrid Sæle's house ready for battle, although people thought it would not come to an assault at all. Then came King Inge with his men down the road from the smithy shops against the house. Arne, the king's brother-in-law, came out from the Sand-bridge, Aslak Erlendsson from his own house, and Gregorius from the street where all thought the assault would be worst. King Sigurd and his men made many shots from the holes in the loft, broke down the fireplaces, and threw stones on them. Gregorius and his men cut down the gates of the yard; and there in the port fell Einar, a son of Laxe Paal, who was of Sigurd's people, together with Halvard Gunnarsson, who was shot in a loft, and nobody lamented his death. They hewed down the houses, and many of King Sigurd's men left him, and surrendered for quarter. Then King Sigurd went up into a loft, and desired to be heard. He had a gilt shield, by which they knew him; but they would not listen to him, and shot arrows at him as thick as snow in a snow-shower, so that he could not stay there. As his men had now left him, and the houses were being hewn down, he went out from thence, and with him his court-man Thord Husfrefya from Viken. They wanted to come where King Inge was to be found; and Sigurd called to his brother King Inge, and begged him to grant him life and safety; but both Thord and Sigurd were instantly killed, and Thord fell with great glory. King Sigurd was interred in the old Christ church out on the holm. King Inge gave Gregorius the ship King Sigurd had owned. There fell many of King Sigurd's and King Inge's men, although I only name a few; but of Gregorius's men there fell four; and also some who belonged to no party, but were shot on the piers,

or out in the ships. It was fought on a Friday, and fourteen days before Saint John the Baptist's day. Two or three days after, King Eystein came from the eastward with thirty ships, and had along with him his brother's son Hakon, a son of King Sigurd. Eystein did not come up to the town, but lay in Florevaag, and good men went between to get a reconciliation made. But Gregorius wanted that they should go out against him, thinking there never would be a better opportunity; and offered to be himself the leader. "For thou, king, shalt not go, for we have no want of men." But many dissuaded from this course, and it came to nothing. King Eystein returned back to Viken, and King Inge to Drontheim, and they were in a sort reconciled; but they did not meet each other.

SAGA XIV.

Somewhat later than King Eystein, Gregorius Dagsson also set out to the eastward, and came to his farm Bratsberg in Hafund; but King Eystein was up in the fiord at Opslo, and had his ships drawn above two miles over the frozen sea, for there was much ice at that time in Viken. King Eystein went up to Hafund to take Gregorius; but he got news of what was on foot, and escaped to Telemark with ninety men, from thence over the Fielde, and came down in Hardanger; and at last to Stodla in Etne, to Erling Skakke's farm. Erling himself had gone north to Bergen; but his wife Christina, a daughter of King Sigurd, was at home, and offered Gregorius all the assistance he wanted; and he was hospitably received. He got a long-ship there which belonged to Erling, and every thing else he required. Gregorius thanked her kindly, and allowed that she had behaved nobly, and as might have been expected of her. Gregorius then proceeded to Bergen, where he met Erling, who thought also that his wife had done well.

CHAPTER  
XXIX.  
Of Gre-  
gorius  
Dagsson.

## SAGA XIV.

CHAPTER  
XXX.  
Reconcilia-  
tion of the  
Kings  
Eystein  
and Inge.

Then Gregorius went north to Drontheim, and came there before Yule. King Inge was rejoiced at his safety, and told him to use his property as freely as his own, King Eystein having burnt Gregorius's house, and slaughtered his stock of cattle. The ship-docks which King Eystein the Elder had constructed in the merchant town of Nidaros, and which had been exceedingly expensive, were also burnt this winter, together with some good vessels belonging to King Inge. This deed was ascribed to King Eystein and Philippus Gyrdersson, King Sigurd's foster-brother, and occasioned much displeasure and hatred. The following summer King Inge went south with a very numerous body of men; and King Eystein came northwards, gathering men also. They met in the east at the Sæl Isles, near to the Naze; but King Inge was by far the strongest in men. It was nearly coming to a battle; but at last they were reconciled on these conditions,—that King Eystein should be bound to pay forty-five marks of gold, of which King Inge should have thirty marks, because King Eystein had occasioned the burning of the docks and ships; and, besides, that Philippus, and all who had been accomplices in the deed, should be outlawed. Also that the men should be banished the country, against whom it could be proved that they gave blow or wound to King Sigurd; for King Eystein accused King Inge of protecting these men: and that Gregorius should have fifteen marks of gold for the value of his property burnt by King Eystein. King Eystein was ill pleased with these terms, and looked upon the treaty as one forced upon him. From that meeting King Inge went eastward to Viken, and King Eystein north to Drontheim; and they had no intercourse with each other, nor were the messages which passed between them very friendly, and on both sides they killed each other's friends. King Eystein, be-

sides, did not pay the money; and the one accused the other of not fulfilling what was promised. King Inge and Gregorius enticed many people from King Eystein; among others, Baard Standal Bryniulfsson, Simun Skalp a son of Halkel Huk, Haldor Bryniulfsson, John Halkelsson, and many other lenders, although we do not name them here.

SAGA XIV.

Two years after King Sigurd's fall both kings assembled armaments; namely, King Inge in the east of the country, where he collected eighty ships; and King Eystein in the north, where he had forty-five, and among these the Great Dragon, which King Eystein Magnusson had built after the Long Serpent; and they had on both sides many and excellent troops. King Inge lay with his ships south at Mostr Isle, and King Eystein a little to the north in Graningia Sound. King Eystein sent the young Aslak Johnsson, and Arne Sturleson a grandson of Snæbiorn, with one ship to meet King Inge; but when the king's men knew them they assaulted them, killed many of their people, and took all that was in the ship belonging to them. Aslak and Arne and a few more escaped to the land, went to King Eystein, and told him how King Inge had received them. Thereupon King Eystein held a House-thing, and told his followers how ill King Inge had treated his men, and desired the troops to follow him. "I have," said he, "so many, and such excellent men, that I have no intention to fly, if ye will follow me." But this speech was not received with much favour. Halkel Huk was there; but both his sons, Simun and John, were with King Inge. Halkel replied, so loud that many heard him, "Let thy chests of gold follow thee, and let them defend thy land."

CHAPTER  
XXXI.  
Of Eystein  
and Inge.

In the night many of King Eystein's ships rowed secretly away, some of them joining King Inge, some going to Bergen, or up into the fiords; so that when

CHAPTER  
XXXII.  
King  
Eystein's  
death.

SAGA XIV. it was daylight in the morning the king was lying behind with only ten ships. Then he left the Great Dragon, which was heavy to row, and several other vessels behind; and cut and destroyed the Dragon, started out the ale, and destroyed all that they could not take with them. King Eystein went on board of the ship of Eindrid a son of John Mörnef, sailed north into Sogn, and then took the land-road eastwards to Viken. King Inge took the vessels, and sailed with them outside of the isles to Viken. King Eystein had then got east as far as Folden, and had with him 1200 men; but when they saw King Inge's force, they did not think themselves sufficiently strong to oppose him, and they retired to the forest. Every one fled his own way, so that the king was left with but one man. King Inge and his men observed King Eystein's flight, and also that he had but few people with him, and they went immediately to search for him. Simun Skalp met the king just as he was coming out of a willow bush. Simun saluted him. "God save you, sire," said he.

The king replied, "I do not know if thou art not sire here."

Simun replied, "That is as it may happen."

The king begged him to conceal him, and said it was proper to do so. "For there was long friendship between us, although it has now gone differently."

Simun replied, it could not be.

Then the king begged that he might hear mass before he died, which accordingly took place. Then Eystein laid himself down on his face on the grass, stretched out his hands on each side, and told them to cut the sign of the cross between his shoulders, and see whether he could not bear steel as King Inge's followers had asserted of him. Simun told the man who had to put the king to death to do so immediately, for the king had been creeping about upon the grass long enough. He was accordingly slain, and he appears to have suffered manfully. His body was car-

ried to Fors, and lay all night under the hill at the south side of the church. King Eystein was buried in Fors church, and his grave is in the middle of the church-floor, where a fringed canopy is spread over it, and he is considered a saint. Where he was executed, and his blood ran upon the ground, sprang up a fountain, and another under the hill where his body lay all night. From both these waters many think they have received a cure of sickness and pain. It is reported by the Viken people that many miracles were wrought at King Eystein's grave, until his enemies poured upon it soup made of boiled dogs' flesh. Simun Skalp was much hated for this deed, which was generally ascribed to him; but some said that when King Eystein was taken Simun sent a message to King Inge, and the king commanded that King Eystein should not come before his face. So King Swerrer has caused it to be written; but Einar Skuleson tells of it thus:—

SAGA XIV.

---

“ Simun Skalp, the traitor bold,  
For deeds of murder known of old,  
His king betrayed; and ne'er will he  
God's blessed face hereafter see.”



## XV.

**SAGA XV. SAGA OF HAKON HERDABREID (HAKON THE BROAD-SHOULDERED).\***

CHAPTER  
I.  
Beginning  
of Hakon  
Herdab-  
breid.

HAKON, King Sigurd's son, was chosen chief of the troop which had followed King Eystein, and his adherents gave him the title of king. He was ten years old. At that time he had with him Sigurd, a son of Havard Hold of Royr, and Andreas and Onund, the sons of Simun, his foster-brothers, and many chiefs, friends of King Sigurd and King Eystein; and they went first up to Gotland. King Inge took possession of all the estates they had left behind, and declared them banished. Thereafter King Inge went to Viken, and was sometimes also in the north of the country. Gregorius Dagsson was in Konghelle, where the danger was greatest, and had beside him a strong and handsome body of men, with which he defended the country.

CHAPTER  
II.  
Of Gre-  
gorius  
Dagsson.

The summer after Hakon came with his men, and proceeded to Konghelle with a numerous and handsome troop. Gregorius was then in the town, and summoned the bonders and townspeople to a great Thing, at which he desired their aid; but he thought the people did not hear him with much favour, so he did not much trust them. Then Gregorius set off with two ships to Viken, and was very much cast down. He expected to meet King Inge there, having heard he was coming with a great army to Viken. Now when Gregorius had come but a short way north he met Simun Skalp, Haldor Bryniulfsson, and Gyrd

\* The period is from 1157 to 1162.

Amundsson, King Inge's foster-brothers. Gregorius was much delighted at this meeting, and turned back with them, being all in one body, with eleven ships. As they were rowing up to Konghelle, Hakon, with his followers, was holding a Thing without the town, and saw their approach; and Sigurd of Royr said, "Gregorius must be *fey* to be throwing himself with so few men into our hands." Gregorius landed opposite the town to wait for King Inge, for he was expected; but he did not come. King Hakon put himself in order in the town, and appointed Thorliot Skaufoscald, who was a viking and a robber, to be captain of the men in the merchant ships that were afloat in the river; and King Hakon and Sigurd were within the town, and drew up the men on the piers, for all the townspeople had submitted to King Hakon.

Gregorius rowed up the river, and let the ship drive down with the stream against Thorliot. They shot at each other a while, until Thorliot and his comrades jumped overboard; and some of them were killed, some escaped to the land. Then Gregorius rowed to the piers, and let a gangway be cast on shore at the very feet of Hakon's men. There the man who carried his banner was slain just as he was going to step on shore. Gregorius ordered Hall, a son of Audun Halleson, to take up the banner, which he did, and bore the banner up to the pier. Gregorius followed close after him, held his shield over his head, and protected him as well as himself. As soon as Gregorius came upon the pier, and Hakon's men knew him, they gave way, and made room for him on every side. Afterwards more people landed from the ships, and then Gregorius made a severe assault with his men; and Hakon's men first moved back, and then ran up into the town. Gregorius pursued them eagerly, drove them twice from the town, and killed many of them. By the report of

SAGA XV.

CHAPTER  
III.  
King  
Hakon's  
flight.

**SAGA XV.** all men, never was there so glorious an affair as this of Gregorius ; for Hakon had more than 4000 men, and Gregorius not full 400. After the battle, Gregorius said to Hall Audunsson, "Many men, in my opinion, are more agile in battle than ye Icelanders are, for ye are not so exercised as we Norwegians; but none, I think, are so bold under arms as ye are." King Inge came up soon after, and killed many of the men who had taken part with Hakon ; made some pay heavy fines, burnt the houses of some, and some he drove out of the country, or treated otherwise very ill. Hakon fled at first up to Gotland with all his men ; but the winter after he proceeded by the upper road to Drontheim, and came there before Easter. The Drontheim people received him well, for they had always served under that shield. It is said that the Drontheim people took Hakon as king, on the terms that he should have from Inge the third part of Norway as his paternal heritage. King Inge and Gregorius were in Viken, and Gregorius wanted to make an expedition against the party in the north ; but it came to nothing that winter, as many dissuaded from it.

**CHAPTER  
IV.  
Fall of  
Gyrder and  
Havard.**

King Hakon left Drontheim in spring with thirty ships nearly ; and some of his men sailed before the rest with seven ships, and plundered in North and South Möre. No man could remember that there ever before had been plundering between the two towns (Bergen and Nidaros). John the son of Halkel Huk collected the bonders in arms, and proceeded against them ; took Kolbein Oda prisoner, and killed every woman's son of them in his ship. Then they searched for the others, found them all assembled in seven ships, and fought with them ; but his father Halkel not coming to his assistance as he had promised, many good bonders were killed, and John himself was wounded. Hakon proceeded south to

Bergen with his forces; but when he came to Stiorvellta, he heard that King Inge and Gregorius had arrived a few nights before from the east at Bergen, and therefore he did not venture to steer thither. They sailed the outer course southwards past Bergen, and met three ships of King Inge's fleet, which had been outsailed on the voyage from the east. On board of them were Gyrdur Amundsson, King Inge's foster-brother, who was married to Gyrid a sister of Gregorius, and also lagman Gyrdur Gunhildsson, and Havard Klining. King Hakon had Gyrdur Amundsson and Havard Klining put to death; but took lagman Gyrdur southwards, and then proceeded east to Viken.

SAGA XV.

When King Inge heard of this he sailed east after them, and they met east in the Gotha river. King Inge went up the north arm of the river, and sent out spies to get news of Hakon and his fleet; but he himself landed at Hising, and waited for his spies. Now when the spies came back they went to the king, and said that they had seen King Hakon's forces, and all his ships which lay at the stakes in the river, and Hakon's men had bound the stems of their vessels to them. They had two great East-country trading vessels, which they had laid outside of the fleet, and on both these were built high wooden stages (castles). When King Inge heard the preparations they had made, he ordered a trumpet to call a House-thing of all the men; and when the Thing was seated he asked his men for counsel, and applied particularly to Gregorius Dagsson, his brother-in-law Erling Skakke, and other lendersmen and ship-commanders, to whom he related the preparations of Hakon and his men.

CHAPTER  
V.  
Of the consultations  
of King  
Inge.

Then Gregorius Dagsson replied first, and made known his mind in the following words: "Sometimes we and Hakon have met, and generally they had the most people; but, notwithstanding, they fell

**SAGA XV.** short in battle against us. Now, on the other hand, we have by far the greatest force; and it will appear probable to the men who a short time ago lost gallant relations by them, that this will be a good occasion to get vengeance, for they have fled before us the greater part of the summer; and we have often said that if they waited for us, as appears now to be the case, we would have a brush with them. Now I will tell my opinion, which is, that I will engage them, if it be agreeable to the king's pleasure; for I think it will go now as formerly, that they must give way before us if we attack them bravely; and I shall always attack where others may think it most difficult."

This speech was received with much applause, and all declared they were ready to engage in battle against Hakon. Then they rowed with all the ships up the river until they came in sight of each other, and then King Inge turned off from the river-current under the island. Now the king addressed the lendermen again, and told them to get ready for battle. He turned himself especially to Erling Skakke, and said, what was true, that no man in the army had more understanding and knowledge in fighting battles, although some were more hot. The king then addressed himself to several of the lendermen, speaking to them by name; and ended by desiring that each would give his opinion, and say what he thought would be of advantage, and thereafter all would act together.

**CHAPTER  
VI.**  
Erling's  
speech.

Erling Skakke replied thus to the king's speech: "It is my duty, sire, not to be silent; and I shall give my advice, since it is desired. The resolution now adopted is contrary to my judgment; for I call it foolhardy to fight under these circumstances, although we have so many and such fine men. Supposing we make an attack on them, and row up against this river-current; then one of the three men who are in each

SAGA XV.

half room \* must be employed in rowing only, and another must be covering with the shield the man who rows; and what have we then to fight with but one third of our men? It appears to me that they can be of little use in the battle who are sitting at their oars, with their backs turned to the enemy. Give me now some time for consideration, and I promise you that before three days are over I shall fall upon some plan by which we can come into battle with advantage."

It was evident from Erling's speech that he dissuaded from an attack; but, notwithstanding, it was urged by many, who thought that Hakon would now, as before, take to the land. "And then," said they, "we cannot get hold of him; but now they have but few men, and we have their fate in our own hands."

Gregorius said but little; but thought that Erling rather dissuaded from an attack that Gregorius's advice should no have effect, than that he had any better advice to give.

Then said King Inge to Erling, "Now we will follow thy advice, brother, with regard to the manner of attacking; but seeing how eager our counsellors are for it, we shall make the attack this day."

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Of Hakon's  
fleet.

Erling replied, "All the boats and light vessels we have should row outside the island, and up the east arm of the river, and then down with the stream upon them, and try if they cannot cut them loose from the piles. Then we, with the large ships, shall row from below here against them; and I cannot tell, until it be tried, if those who are now so furiously warm will be much brisker at the attack than I am."

This counsel was approved by all. There was a

\* The whole room was apparently the space between two benches of rowers, in which the men lived; and these were divided into half rooms, viz. on the starboard and larboard sides, and the men belonged to the starboard and larboard oars of the bench.

**SAGA XV.** ness stretched out between their fleet and Hakon's, so that they could not see each other. Now when Hakon and his men, who had taken counsel with each other in a meeting, saw the boat-squadron rowing down the river, some thought King Inge intended to give them battle; but many believed they did not dare, for it looked as if the attack was given up; and they, besides, were very confident, both in their preparations and men. There were many great people with Hakon: there were Sigurd of Royr, and Simun's sons, Onund and Andreas; Nicolas Skiald-varsson; Eindrid, a son of John Mörnef, who was the most gallant and popular man in the Drontheim country; and many other lendersmen and warriors. Now when they saw that King Inge's men with many ships were rowing out of the river, Hakon and his men believed they were going to fly; and therefore they cut their land-ropes with which they lay fast at the piles, seized their oars, and rowed after them in pursuit. The ships ran fast down with the stream; but when they came farther down the river, abreast of the ness, they saw King Inge's main strength lying quiet at the island Hising. King Inge's people saw Hakon's ships under way, and believed they were coming to attack them; and now there was great bustle and clash of arms, and they encouraged each other by a great war-shout. Hakon with his fleet turned northwards a little to the land, where there was a turn in the bight of the river, and where there was no current. They made ready for battle, carried land-ropes to the shore, turned the stems of their ships outwards, and bound them all together. They laid the large East-country traders without the other vessels, the one above, the other below, and bound them to the long-ships. In the middle of the fleet lay the king's ship, and next to it Sigurd's; and on the other side of the king's ship lay Nicolas, and next

to him Eindrid Johnsson. All the smaller ships lay farther off, and they were all nearly loaded with weapons and stones. \*

SAGA XV.

Then Sigurd of Royr made the following speech: "Now there is hope that the time is come which has been promised us all the summer, that we shall meet King Inge in battle. We have long prepared ourselves for this; and many of our comrades have boasted that they would never fly from or submit to King Inge and Gregorius, and now let them remember their words. But we who have sometimes got the toothach in our conflicts with them, speak less confidently; for it has happened, as all have heard, that we very often have come off without glory. But, nevertheless, it is now necessary to fight manfully, and stand to it with steadiness; for the only escape for us is in victory. Although we have somewhat fewer men than they, yet luck determines which side shall have the advantage, and God knows that the right is on our side. Inge has killed two of his brothers; and it is obvious to all men that the mulct he intends to pay King Hakon for his father's murder is to murder him also, as well as his other relations, which will be seen this day to be his intent. King Hakon desired from the beginning no more of Norway than the third part, which his father had possessed, and which was denied him; and yet, in my opinion, King Hakon has a better right to inherit after his father's brother King Eystein, than Inge or Simun Skalp, or the other men who killed King Eystein. Many of them who would save their souls, and yet have defiled their hands with such bloody deeds as Inge has done, must think it a presumption before God that he takes the name of king; and I wonder

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Sigurd of  
Royr's  
speech.

\* The importance of stones, and the enormous quantity required in the battles of those ages, form an element in the military movements of great bodies of men in the countries in which stones are scarce, not sufficiently considered by historians.



**SAGA XV.** God suffers such monstrous wickedness as his: but it may be God's will that we shall now put him down. Let us fight then manfully, and God will give us victory; and, if we fall, will repay us with joys unspeakable for now allowing the might of the wicked to prevail over us. Go forth then in confidence, and be not afraid when the battle begins. Let each watch over his own and his comrade's safety, and God protect us all." There went a good report abroad of this speech of Sigurd, and all promised fairly, and to do their duty. King Hakon went on board of the great East-country ship, and a shield-bulwark was made around him; but his standard remained on the long-ship in which it had been before.

**CHAPTER  
IX.  
Of King  
Inge's men.**

Now must we tell about King Inge and his men. When they saw that King Hakon and his people were ready for battle, and the river only was between them, they sent a light vessel to recal the rest of the fleet which had rowed away; and in the mean time the king waited for them, and arranged the troops for the attack. Then the chiefs consulted in presence of the army, and told their opinions: first, which ships should lie nearest to the enemy; and then where each should attack.

Gregorius spoke thus: "We have many and fine men; and it is my advice, King Inge, that you do not go to the assault with us, for every thing is preserved if you are safe. And no man knows where an arrow may hit, even from the hands of a bad bowman: and they have prepared themselves so, that missiles and stones can be thrown from the high stages upon the merchant ships; so that there is less danger for those who are farthest from them. They have not more men than we lendermen can very well engage with. I shall lay my ship alongside their largest ship, and I expect the conflict between us will be but short; for it has often been so in our former meetings, although

there has been a much greater want of men with us than now." All thought well of the advice that the king himself should not take part in the battle. SAGA XV.

Then Erling Skakke said, "I agree also to the counsel that you, sire, should not go into the battle. It appears to me that their preparations are such, that we require all our precaution not to suffer a great defeat from them; and whole limbs are the easiest cured. In the council we held before to-day many opposed what I said, and ye said then that I did not want to fight; but now I think the business has altered its appearance, and greatly to our advantage, since they have hauled off from the piles, and now it stands so that I do not dissuade from giving battle; for I see, what all are sensible of, how necessary it is to put an end to this robber band who have gone over the whole country with pillage and destruction, in order that people may cultivate the land in peace, and serve a king so good and just as King Inge who has long had trouble and anxiety from the haughty unquiet spirit of his relations, although he has been a shield of defence for the whole people, and has been exposed to manifold perils for the peace of the country." Erling spoke well and long, and many other chiefs also; and all to the same purpose—all urging to battle. In the meantime they waited until all the fleet should be assembled. King Inge had the ship *Beikesuden*\*; and, at the entreaty of his friends, he did not join the battle, but lay still at the island.

When the army was ready they rowed briskly against the enemy, and both sides raised a war-shout. Inge's men did not bind their ships together, but let them be loose; for they rowed right across the current, by which the large ships were much swayed. Erling

CHAPTER  
X.  
Beginning  
of the  
battle.

\* The name of this vessel occurs frequently. It seems to be the "Beech-sides," or may perhaps be a local name given to the ship. It is not explained by any commentator, and its derivation is not very clear.

**AGA XV.** Skakke laid his ship beside King Hakon's ship, and ran the stem between his and Sigurd's ship, by which the battle began. But Gregorius's ship swung upon the ground, and heeled very much over, so that at first she could not come into the battle; and when Hakon's men saw this they laid themselves against her, and attacked Gregorius's ship on all sides. Ivar Hakon, Mage's son, laid his ship so that the stems struck together; and he got a boat-hook fastened on Gregorius, on that part of his body where the waist is smallest, and dragged him to him, by which Gregorius stumbled against the ship's rails; but the hook slipped to one side, or Gregorius would have been dragged overboard. Gregorius, however, was but little wounded, for he had on a plate coat of armour. Ivar called out to him, that he had a "thick bark." Gregorius replied, that if Ivar went on so he would "require it all, and not have too much." It was very near then that Gregorius and his men had sprung overboard; but Aslak Unge threw an anchor into their ship, and dragged them off the ground. Then Gregorius laid himself against Ivar's ship, and they fought a long while; but Gregorius's ship being both higher sided and more strongly manned, many people fell in Ivar's ship, and some jumped overboard. Ivar was so severely wounded that he could not take part in the fight. When his ship was cleared of the men, Gregorius let Ivar be carried to the shore, so that he might escape; and from that time they were constant friends.

**CHAPTER  
XI.  
King  
Hakon's  
fight.**

When King Inge and his men saw that Gregorius was aground, he encouraged his crew to row to his assistance. "It was," he said, "the most imprudent advice that we should remain lying here, while our friends are in battle; for we have the largest and best ship in all the fleet. But now I see that Gregorius, the man to whom I owe the most, is in need of help;

so we must hasten to the fight where it is sharpest. It is also most proper that I should be in the battle; for the victory, if we win it, will belong to me. And if I even knew beforehand that our men were not to gain the battle, yet our place is where our friends are; for I can do nothing if I lose the men who are justly called the defence of the country, who are the the bravest, and have long ruled for me and my kingdom." Thereupon he ordered his banner to be set up, which was done; and they rowed across the river. Then the battle raged, and the king could not get room to attack, so close lay the ships before him. First he lay under the East-country trading ship, and from it they threw down upon his vessel spears, iron-shod stakes, and such large stones that it was impossible to hold out longer there, and he had to haul off. Now when the king's people saw that he was come they made place for him, and then he laid alongside of Endrid Johnsson's ship. Now King Hakon's men abandoned the small ships, and went on board the large merchant vessels; but some of them sprang on shore. Erling Skakke and his men had a severe conflict. Erling himself was on the forecastle, and called his forecastle-men, and ordered them to board the king's ship; but they answered, this was no easy matter, for there were beams above with an iron comb on them. Then Erling himself went to the bow, and staid there a while, until they succeeded in getting on board the king's ship; and then the ship was cleared of men on the bows, and the whole army gave way. Many sprang into the water, many fell, but the greater number got to the land. So says Einar Skuleson:—

" Men fall upon the slippery deck —  
Men roll off from the blood-drenched wreck;  
Dead bodies float down with the stream,  
And from the shores witch-ravens scream.

## SAGA XV.

The cold blue river now runs red  
With the warm blood of warriors dead,  
And stains the waves in Karmt Sound  
With the last drops of the death-wound.

“All down the stream, with unmann’d prow,  
Floats many an empty long-ship now.  
Ship after ship, shout after shout,  
Tell that King Hakon can’t hold out.  
The bowmen ply their bows of elm,  
The red swords flash o’er broken helm:  
King Hakon’s men rush to the strand,  
Out of their ships, up through the land.”

Einar composed a song about Gregorius Dagsson, which is called the River-song. King Inge granted life and peace to Nicolas Skialdvarsson when his ship was deserted, and thereupon he went into King Inge’s service, and remained in it as long as the king lived. Endrid Johnsson leaped on board of King Inge’s ship when his own was cleared of men, and begged for his life. King Inge wished to grant it; but Havard Klining’s son ran up, and gave him a mortal wound, which was much blamed; but he said Endrid had been the cause of his father’s death. There was much lamentation at Endrid’s death, but principally in the Drontheim district. Many of Hakon’s people fell here, but not many chiefs. Few of King Inge’s people fell, but many were wounded. King Hakon fled up the country, and King Inge went north to Viken with his troops; and he, as well as Gregorius, remained in Viken all winter. When King Inge’s men, Bergliot and his brothers, sons of Ivar of Elda, came from the battle to Bergen, they slew Nicolas Skiæg, who had been Hakon’s treasurer, and then went north to Drontheim.

King Hakon came north before Yule, and Sigurd was sometimes home at Royr; for Gregorius, who was nearly related to Sigurd, had obtained for him life and safety from King Inge, so that he retained all his estates. King Hakon was in the merchant-town of

Nidaros in Yule; and one evening in the beginning of Yule his men fought in the room of the court, and in this affray eight men were killed, and many were wounded. The eighth day of Yule, King Hakon's man Alf Rode, son of Ottar Birting, with about eighty men, went to Elda, and came in the night unexpectedly on the people, who were very drunk, and set fire to the room; but they went out, and defended themselves bravely. There fell Bergliot, Ivar's son, and Ogmund his brother, and many more. They had been nearly thirty altogether in number. In winter died, north in the merchant-town, Andreas Simunsson, King Hakon's foster-brother; and his death was much deplored. Erling Skakke and Inge's men, who were in Bergen, threatened that in winter they would proceed against Hakon and his men; but it came to nothing. Gregorius sent word from the east, from Konghelle, that if he were so near as Erling and his men, he would not sit quietly in Bergen while Hakon was killing King Inge's friends and their comrades in war north in the Drontheim country.

King Inge and Gregorius left the east in spring, and came to Bergen; but as soon as Hakon and Sigurd heard that Inge had left Viken, they went there by land. When King Inge and his people came to Bergen, a quarrel arose between Haldor Bryniulfsson and Biorn Nicolasson. Biorn's house-man asked Haldor's when they met at the pier, why he looked so pale.

CHAPTER  
XII  
The conflict upon  
the piers.

He replied, because he had been bled.

"I could not look so pale if I tried, at merely being bled."

"I again think," retorted the other, "that thou wouldst have borne it worse, and less manfully." And no other beginning was there for their quarrel than this. Afterwards one word followed another, till from bawling they came to fighting. It was told

SAGA XV. to Haldor Bryniulfsson, who was in the house drinking, that his house-man was wounded down on the pier, and he went there immediately. But Biorn's house-men had come there before, and as Haldor thought his house-man had been badly treated, he went up to them and beat them; and it was told to Biorn Buk that the people of Viken were beating his house-men on the pier. Then Biorn and his house-men took their weapons, hurried down to the pier, and would avenge their men; and a bloody strife began. It was told Gregorius that his relation Haldor required assistance, and that his house-men were being cut down in the street; on which Gregorius and his men ran to the place in their armour. Now it was told Erling Skakke that his sister's son Biorn was fighting with Gregorius and Haldor down on the piers, and that he needed help. Then he proceeded thither with a great force, and exhorted the people to stand by him; saying it would be a great disgrace never to be wiped out, if the Viken people should trample upon them in their own native place. There fell thirteen men, of whom nine were killed on the spot, and four died of their wounds, and many were wounded. When the word came to King Inge that Gregorius and Erling were fighting down on the piers, he hastened there, and tried to separate them; but could do nothing, so mad were they on both sides. Then Gregorius called to Inge, and told him to go away; for it was in vain to attempt coming between them, as matters now stood. He said it would be the greatest misfortune if the king mixed himself up with it; for he could not be certain that there were not people in the fray who would commit some great misdeed if they had opportunity. Then King Inge retired; and when the greatest tumult was over, Gregorius and his men went to Nicolas church, and Erling behind them, calling to each other. Then.

King Inge came a second time, and pacified them; and both agreed that he should mediate between them. SAGA XV.

When King Inge and Gregorius heard that King Hakon was in Viken, they went east with many ships; but when they came King Hakon fled from them, and there was no battle. Then King Inge went to Oplso, and Gregorius was in Konghelle.

Soon after Gregorius heard that Hakon and his men were at a farm called Saurbo, which lies up beside the forest. Gregorius hastened there; came in the night; and supposing that King Hakon and Sigurd would be in the largest of the houses, set fire to the buildings there. But Hakon and his men were in the smaller house, and came forth, seeing the fire, to help their people. There Munan fell, a son of Ale Oskein, a brother of King Sigurd Hakon's father. Gregorius and his men killed him, because he was helping those whom they were burning within the house. Some escaped, but many were killed. Asbiorn Jalde, who had been a very great viking, escaped from the house, but was grievously wounded. A bonder met him, and he offered the man money to let him get away; but the bonder replied, he would do what he liked best; and, adding that he had often been in fear of his life for him, he slew him. King Hakon and Sigurd escaped, but many of their people were killed. Thereafter Gregorius returned home to Konghelle. Soon after King Hakon and Sigurd went to Haldor Brunulfsson's farm of Vettaland, set fire to the house, and burnt it. Haldor went out, and was cut down instantly with his house-men; and in all there were about twenty men killed. Sigrid, Haldor's wife, was a sister of Gregorius, and they allowed her to escape into the forest in her night-shift only; but they took with them Amund, who was a son of Gyrd Amundsson and of Gyred Dag's daughter, and a sister's son of Gregorius, and who was then a boy about five years old.

CHAPTER  
XIII.  
Munan's  
death.



## SAGA XV.

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
Of the fall  
of Grego-  
rius Dags-  
son.

When Gregorius heard the news he took it much to heart, and inquired carefully where they were. Gregorius set out from Konghelle late in Yule, and came to Fors the thirteenth day of Yule, where he remained a night, and heard vespers the last day of Yule, which was a Saturday, and the holy Evangel was read before him. When Gregorius and his followers saw the men of King Hakon and Sigurd, the king's force appeared to them smaller than their own. There was a river called Bifia between them, where they met; and there was unsound ice on the river, for there went a stream under the ice from it. King Hakon and his men had cut a rent in the ice, and laid snow over it, so that nobody could see it. When Gregorius came to the ice on the river the ice appeared to him unsound, he said; and he advised the people to go to the bridge, which was close by, to cross the river. The bonder-troops replied, that they did not know why he should be afraid to go across the ice to attack so few people as Hakon had, and the ice was good enough. Gregorius said it was seldom necessary to encourage him to show bravery, and it should not be so now. Then he ordered them to follow him, and not to be standing on the land while he was on the ice; and he said it was their counsel to go out upon the dangerous ice, but he had no wish to do so, or to be led by them. Then he ordered the banner to be advanced, and immediately went out on the ice with the men. As soon as the bonders found that the ice was unsound, they turned back. Gregorius fell through the ice, but not very deep, and he told his men to take care. There were not more than twenty men with him, the others having turned back. A man of King Hakon's troop shot an arrow at Gregorius, which hit him under the throat, and thus ended his life. Gregorius fell, and ten men with him. It is the talk of all men that he had been the most gallant lenderman in Norway that any man then living could remember; and also he behaved the

best towards us Icelanders of any chief since King Eystein the Elder's death. Gregorius's body was carried to Hofund, and interred at Gimsey Isle, in a nunnery which is there, of which Gregorius's sister Bogeid was then the abbess.

SAGA XV.

Two bailiffs went to Opslo to bring the tidings to King Inge. When they arrived they desired to speak to the king; and he asked, what news they brought.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
King Inge  
hears of  
Grego-  
rius's fall.

"Gregorius Dagsson's death," said they.

"How came that misfortune?" asked the king.

When they had told him how it happened, he said, "They gave advice who understood the least."

It is said he took it so much to heart that he cried like a child. When he recovered himself he said, "I wanted to go to Gregorius as soon as I heard of Haldor's murder; for I thought that Gregorius would not sit long before thinking of revenge. But the people here would think nothing so important as their Yule feasts, and nothing could move them away; and I am confident that if I had been there, he would either have proceeded more cautiously, or I and Gregorius would now have shared one lodging. Now he is gone, — the man who has been my best friend, and more than any other has kept the kingdom in my hands; and I think it will be but a short space between us. Now I make an oath to go forth against Hakon, and one of two things shall happen: I shall either come to my death, or shall walk over Hakon and his people; and such a man as Gregorius is not avenged, even if all were to pay the penalty of their lives for him."

There was a man present who replied, "Ye need not seek after them, for they intend to seek you."

Christina, King Sigurd's daughter and King Inge's cousin, was then in Opslo. The king heard that she intended going away. He sent a message to her to inquire why she wished to leave the town.

## SAGA XV.

She thought it was dangerous and unsafe for a female to be there.

The king would not let her go. "For if it go well with me, as I hope, you will be well here; and if I fall, my friends may not get leave to dress my body; but you can ask permission, and it will not be denied you, and you will thereby best requite what I have done for you."

CHAPTER  
XVI.  
Of King  
Inge.

On Saint Blasius' day, in the evening, King Inge's spies brought him the news that King Hakon was coming towards the town. Then King Inge ordered the war-horns to call together all the troops up from the town; and when he drew them up he could reckon them to be nearly 4000 men. The king let the array be long, but not more than five men deep. Then some said that the king should not be himself in the battle, as they thought the risk too great; but that his brother Orm should be the leader of the army. The king replied, "I think if Gregorius were alive and here now, and I had fallen and was to be avenged, he would not lie concealed, but would be in the battle. Now, although I, on account of my ill health, am not fit for the combat as he was, yet will I show as good will as he would have had; and it is not to be thought of that I should not be in the battle."

People say that Gunhild, who was married to Simun, King Hakon's foster-brother, had a witch employed to sit out\* all night and procure the victory for Hakon; and that the answer was obtained, that they should fight King Inge by night, and never by day, and then the result would be favourable. The witch who, as people say, sat out was called Thordis Seggia; but what truth there may be in the report I know not.

Simun Skalp had gone to the town, and was gone

\* At sitia uti—to sit out—was a form of expression for exercising witchcraft.

to sleep, when the war-shouts awoke him. When the night was well advanced, King Inge's spies came to him, and told him that King Hakon and his army were coming over the ice; for the ice lay the whole way from the town to Hoved Isle.

SAGA XV.

Thereupon King Inge went with his army out on the ice, and he drew it up in order of battle in front of the town. Simun Skalp was in that wing of the array which was towards Trælberg; and on the other wing, which was towards the Nunnery, was Gudrod, the king of the South Hebudes, a son of Olaf Bitling\*, and John, a son of Swen Bergthor a son of Buk. When King Hakon and his army came near to King Inge's array, both sides raised a war-shout. Gudrod and John gave King Hakon and his men a sign, and let them know where they were in the line; and as soon as Hakon's men in consequence turned thither, Gudrod immediately fled with 1500 men; and John, and a great body of men with him, ran over to King Hakon's army, and assisted them in the fight. When this news was told to King Inge, he said, "Such is the difference between my friends. Never would Gregorius have done

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
King Inge's  
speech.

\* The Chronicle of the Kings of Mann coincides with the saga. Godredus, son of Olaf king of the South Hebudes, went in 1142, in the lifetime of his father, to Inge (called Hinge in the Manx Chronicle) king of Norway to do homage for Mann. His father was slain in his absence, and he returned from Norway in 1143, and was proclaimed king of Mann. As he treated the chiefs of the island harshly, they joined Sumarlid, with whom, after a sea-fight in 1156, he was obliged to share his kingdom; and in 1158 he was obliged to fly from Mann, and seek assistance from Norway. Sumarlid fell in a war with the Scottish king, and in 1164 Rognvald (Reginaldus), a brother of Gudrod, seized the sovereignty; but Gudrod returned with forces from Norway, took his brother prisoner, mutilated him, and held the sovereignty until 1187, when he died. Gudrod appears, from this account taken from the Manx Chronicle, to have been in Norway from 1158 to 1164; and this battle of Opslo took place about the year 1161, according to Torfæus. See note of Thorlacius at Chap. XVII. of this Saga in the folio edition of Snorro.

SAGA XV.

so in his life!" There were some who advised King Inge to get on horseback, and ride from the battle up to Raumarige; "where," said they, "you would get help enough, even this very day." The king replied, he had no inclination to do so. "I have heard you often say, and I think truly, that it was of little use to my brother King Eystein that he took to flight; and yet he was a man distinguished for many qualities which adorn a king. Now I, who labour under so great decrepitude, can see how bad my fate would be, if I betook myself to what proved so unfortunate for him; with so great a difference as there is between our activity, health, and strength. I was in the second year of my age when I was chosen king of Norway, and I am now twenty-five; and I think I have had misfortune and sorrow under my kingly dignity, rather than pleasure and peaceful days. I have had many battles, sometimes with more, sometimes with fewer people; and it is my greatest luck that I have never fled. God will dispose of my life, and of how long it shall be; but I shall never betake myself to flight."

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
King Inge's  
fall.

Now as John and his troop had broken the one wing of King Inge's array, many of those who were nearest to him fled, by which the whole array was dispersed, and fell into disorder. But Hakon and his men went briskly forwards; and now it was near day-break. An assault was made against King Inge's banner, and in this conflict King Inge fell; but his brother Orm continued the battle, while many of the army fled up into the town. Twice Orm went to the town after the king's fall to encourage the people, and both times returned, and went out again upon the ice to continue the battle. Hakon's men attacked the wing of the array which Simun Skalp led; and in that assault fell of King Inge's men his brother-in-law,

Gudbrand Skafhaugsson. Simun Skalp and Halvard Hikre went against each other with their troops, and fought while they drew aside past Trælaberg; and in this conflict both Simun and Halvard fell. Orm, the king's brother, gained great reputation in this battle; but he at last fled. Orm the winter before had been contracted with Ragna, a daughter of Nicolas Massa, who had been married before to King Eystein Haraldsson; and the wedding was fixed for the Sunday after Saint Blasius' mass, which was on a Friday. Orm fled east to Sweden, where his brother Magnus was then king; and their brother Rognvald was an earl there at that time. They were the sons of Queen Ingerid and Henrik Halta, who was a son of the Danish king Swen Swensson. The princess Christina took care of King Inge's body, which was laid in the stone wall of Halvard's church, on the south side without the choir. He had then been king for twenty-three years. In this battle many fell on both sides, but principally of King Inge's men. Of King Hakon's people fell Arne Fredriksson. Hakon's men took all the feast and victuals prepared for the wedding, and a great booty besides.

Then King Hakon took possession of the whole country, and distributed all the offices among his own friends, both in the towns and in the country. King Hakon and his men had a meeting in Halvard's church, where they had a private conference concerning the management of the country. Christina the princess gave the priest who kept the church keys a large sum of money to conceal one of her men in the church, so that she might know what Hakon and his counsellors intended. When she learnt what they had said, she sent a man to Bergen to her husband Erling Skakke, with the message that he should never trust Hakon or his men.

SAGA XV.

CHAPTER  
XIX.  
Of King  
Hakon and  
Queen  
Christina.

SAGA XV.

CHAPTER

XX.

Of King  
Olaf's mi-  
racle in  
favour of  
the Værin-  
gers of Con-  
stantinople.

It happened once in the Greek country, when Kyrialax\* was emperor there, that he made an expedition against Blökkamannaland.† When he came to the Petzina plains‡, a heathen king came against him with an innumerable host. He brought with him many horsemen, and many large waggons, in which were large loop-holes for shooting through. When they prepared for their night quarters they drew up their waggons, one by the side of the other, without their tents, and dug a great ditch without; and all which made a defence as strong as a castle. The heathen king was blind. Now when the Greek king came, the heathens drew up their array on the plains before their waggon-fortification. The Greeks drew up their array opposite, and they rode on both sides to fight with each other; but it went on so ill and so unfortunately, that the Greeks were compelled to fly after suffering a great defeat, and the heathens gained a victory. Then the king drew up an array of Franks and Flemings, who rode against the heathens, and fought with them; but it went with them as with the others, that many were killed, and all who escaped took to flight. Then the Greek king was greatly incensed at his men-at-arms; and they replied, that he should now take his wine-bags, the Væringers.§ The king says that he would not throw away his jewels, and allow so few men, however bold they might be, to attack so vast an army. Then Thorer Helsing, who at that time was leader of the Væringers,

\* Kyrialax is the contracted pronunciation of the Greek Kurios Alexios—the lord Alexius; and the emperor Alexius Comnenus I. is the Alexius here meant.

† Blökkamannaland is not Ethiopia, with which Alexius I. had no wars; but Blachars, or Vallachars, was the name of the people of Vallachia, contracted by the northern Væringers into Blöku-menn.

‡ Pezina-völlo—the plains on the river Bezina.

§ The Frakkar and Flemingear—Franks and Flemings—appear not to have been in the corps of Væringers, the body guard, but only Northmen.

replied to the king's words, "If there was burning fire in the way, I and my people would run into it, if I knew the king's advantage required it." Then the king replied, "Call upon your holy King Olaf for help and strength." The Væringers, who were 450 men, made a vow with hand and word to build a church in Constantinople, at their own expense and with the aid of other good men, and have the church consecrated to the honour and glory of the holy King Olaf; and thereupon the Væringers rushed into the plain. When the heathens saw them, they told their king that there was another troop of the Greek king's army come out upon the plain; but they were only a handful of people. The king says, "Who is that venerable man riding on a white horse at the head of the troop?" They replied, "We do not see him." There was so great a difference of numbers, that there were sixty heathens for every Christian man; but notwithstanding the Væringers went boldly to the attack. As soon as they met terror and alarm seized the army of the heathens, and they instantly began to fly; but the Væringers pursued, and soon killed a great number of them. When the Greeks and Franks who before had fled from the heathens saw this, they hastened to take part, and pursue the enemy with the others. Then the Væringers had reached the waggon-fortification, where the greatest defeat was given to the enemy. The heathen king was taken in the flight of his people, and the Væringers brought him along with them; after which the Christians took the camp of the heathens, and their waggon-fortification.

\* It happened at the battle of Stiklestad, as before related, that King Olaf threw from him the sword

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Of Olaf's  
miracle.

\* This chapter and the preceding one are considered interpolations, not being in the approved manuscripts of the *Heimskringla*, although in *Peringskiöld's* edition.



SAGA XV.

called Hneitir\* when he received his wound. A Swedish man, who had broken his own sword, took it up, and fought with it. When this man escaped with the other fugitives he came to Sweden, and went home to his house. From that time he kept the sword all his days, and afterwards his son, and so relation after relation; and when the sword shifted its owner, the one told to the other the name of the sword, and where it came from. A long time after, in the days of Kyrialax the emperor of Constantinople, when there was a great body of Væringers in the town, it happened in the summer that the emperor was on a campaign, and lay in the camp with his army. The Væringers who had the guard, and watched over the emperor, lay on the open plain without the camp. They changed the watch with each other in the night, and those who had been before on watch lay down and slept; but all completely armed. It was their custom, when they went to sleep, that each should have his helmet on his head, his shield over him, sword under the head, and the right hand on the sword-handle. One of these comrades, whose lot it was to watch the latter part of the night, found, on awaking towards morning, that his sword was gone. He looked after it, and saw it lying on the flat plain at a distance from him. He got up and took the sword, thinking that his comrades who had been on watch had taken the sword from him in a joke; but they all denied it. The same thing happened three nights. Then he wondered at it, as well as they who saw or heard of it; and people began to ask him how it could have happened. He said that this sword was called Hneitir, and had belonged to King Olaf the Saint, who had himself carried it in the battle of

\* Giving a name to a sword, or piece of ordnance, or to a horse, appears to have continued to Elizabeth's days in England. "Have we not Hiron here?" says Pistol.

Stiklestad; and he also related how the sword since that time had gone from one to another. This was told to the emperor, who called the man before him to whom the sword belonged, and gave him three times as much gold as the sword was worth; and the sword itself he had laid in Saint Olaf's church, which the Væringers supported, where it has been ever since over the altar. There was a lenderman of Norway while Harald Gille's sons, Eystein, Inge, and Sigurd lived, who was called Eindrid Unge; and he was in Constantinople when these events took place. He told these circumstances in Norway, according to what Einar Skuleson says in his song about King Olaf the Saint, in which these events are sung.

SAGA XV.  

---

## XVI.

## SAGA XVI.

## MAGNUS ERLINGSSON'S SAGA.\*

CHAPTER  
I.  
Of Magnus  
Erlings-  
son's be-  
ginning.

WHEN Erling got certain intelligence of the determinations of Hakon and his counsellors, he sent a message to all the chiefs who he knew had been steady friends of King Inge, and also to his court-men and his retinue, who had saved themselves by flight, and also to all Gregorius's house-men, and called them together to a meeting. When they met, and conversed with each other, they resolved to keep their men together; and which resolution they confirmed by oath and hand-shake to each other. Then they considered who they should take to be king. Erling Skakke first spoke, and inquired if it was the opinion of the chiefs and other men of power that Simun Skalp's son, the son of the daughter of King Harald Gille, should be chosen king, and John Halkelsson be taken to lead the army; but John refused it. Then it was inquired if Nicolas Skialdvarsson, a sister's son of King Magnus Barefoot, would place himself at the head of the army; but he answered thus: — It was his opinion that some one should be chosen king who was of the royal race; and, for leader of the troops, some one from whom help and understanding were to be looked for; and then it would be easier to gather an army." It was now tried whether Arne would let any of his sons, King Inge's brothers, be proclaimed king. Arne replies, that Christina's son, as she was daughter of King Sigurd

\* From about 1162 to 1177, when the *Heimskringla* ends; but Magnus Erlingsson reigned to 1184.

the Crusader, was nearest by propinquity of descent to the crown of Norway. "And here is also a man to be his adviser, and whose duty it is to take care of him and of the kingdom; and that man is his father Erling, who is both prudent, brave, experienced in war, and an able man in governing the kingdom: he wants no capability of bringing this counsel into effect, if luck be with him." Many thought well of this advice. SAGA XVI

Erling replied to it, "As far as I can see or hear in this meeting, the most will rather be excused from taking upon themselves such a difficult business. Now it appears to me altogether uncertain, provided we begin this work, whether he who puts himself at the head of it will gain any honour; or whether matters will go as they have done before when any one undertakes such great things, — that he loses all his property, and possibly his life. But if this counsel be adopted, there may be men who will undertake to carry it through; but he who comes under such an obligation must seek, in every way, to prevent any opposition or enmity from those who are now in this council."

All gave assurance that they would enter into this confederacy with perfect fidelity. Then said Erling, "I can say for myself that it would almost be my death to serve King Hakon; and however dangerous it may be, I will rather venture to adopt your advice, and take upon me to lead this force, if that be the will, counsel, and desire of you all, and if you will all bind yourselves to this agreement by oath."

To this they all agreed; and in this meeting it was determined to take Erling's son Magnus to be king. They afterwards held a Thing in the town; and at this Thing Magnus Erlingsson, then five years old, was elected king of the whole country. All who had been servants of King Inge went into his service, and

**SAGA XVI** — each of them retained the office and dignity he had held under King Inge.

**CHAPTER  
II.**  
King Magnus goes to Denmark.

Erling Skakke made himself ready to travel, fitted out ships, and had with him King Magnus, together with the household-men who were on the spot. In this expedition were the king's relatives,—Arne; Ingerid, King Inge's mother, with her two sons; besides John Kurteisa, a son of Sigurd Stork, and Erling's housemen, as well as those who had been Gregorius's housemen; and they had in all ten ships. They went south to Denmark to King Waldemar and Buris Henriks-son, King Inge's brother. King Waldemar was King Magnus's blood-relation; for Ingeborg mother of King Waldemar, and Malmfrid mother of Christina, King Magnus's mother, were cousins. The Danish king received them hospitably, and he and Erling had private meetings and consultations; and so much was known of their counsels, that King Waldemar was to aid King Magnus with such help as might be required from his kingdom, to win and retain Norway. On the other hand, King Waldemar should get that domain in Norway which his ancestors Harald Gormsson and Swend Forked-beard had possessed; namely, the whole of Viken as far north as Rygiarbit. This agreement was confirmed by oath and a fixed treaty. Then Erling and King Magnus made themselves ready to leave Denmark, and they sailed out of Skagen.\*

**CHAPTER  
III.**  
Battle of Tunsberg.

King Hakon went in spring, after the Easter week, north to Drontheim, and had with him the whole fleet that had belonged to King Inge. He held a Thing there in the merchant-town, and was chosen king of the whole country. Then he made Sigurd of Royr an earl, and gave him an earldom, and afterwards proceeded southwards with his followers all the way to Viken. The king went to Tunsberg; but

\* Skagen — the Scaw.

sent Earl Sigurd east to Konghelle, to defend the country with a part of the forces in case Erling should come from the south. Erling and his fleet came to Agder, and went straight north to Bergen, where they killed Arne Brigidar-scald, King Harald's officer, and came back immediately against King Hakon. Earl Sigurd, who had not observed the journey of Erling and his followers from the south, was at that time east in the Gotha river, and King Hakon was in Tunsberg. Erling brought up at Hrossaness, and lay there some nights. In the meantime King Hakon made preparations in the town. When Erling and his fleet were coming up to the town, they took a merchant vessel, filled it with wood and straw, and set fire to it; and the wind blowing right towards the town, drove the vessel against the piers. Erling had two cables brought on board the vessel, and made fast to two boats, and made them row along as the vessel drove. Now when the fire was come almost abreast of the town, those who were in the boats held back the vessel by the ropes, so that the town could not be set on fire; but so thick a smoke spread from it over the town, that one could not see from the piers where the king's array was. Then Erling drew the whole fleet in where the wind carried the fire, and shot at the enemy. When the townspeople saw that the fire was approaching their houses, and many were wounded by the bowmen, they resolved to send the priest Hroald, the long-winded speaker, to Erling, to beg him to spare them and the town; and they dissolved the array in favour of Hakon, as soon as Hroald told them their prayer was granted. Now when the array of the townspeople had dispersed, the men on the piers were much thinned: however some urged Hakon's men to make resistance; but Onund Simunsson, who had most influence over

**SAGA XVI.** the army, said, "I will not fight for Earl Sigurd's earldom, since he is not here himself." Then Onund fled, and was followed by all the people, and by the king himself; and they hastened up the country. King Hakon lost many men here; and these verses were made about it:—

"Onund declares he will not go  
In battle 'gainst Earl Sigurd's foe,  
If Earl Sigurd does not come,  
But with his house-men sits at home.  
King Magnus' men rush up the street,  
Eager with Hakon's troop to meet;  
But Hakon's war-hawks, somewhat shy,  
Turn quick about, and off they fly."

Thorbiorn Skakke-scauld also said:—

"The Tunsberg men would not be slow  
In thy good cause to risk a blow;  
And well they knew the chief could stain  
The wolves' mouths on a battle-plain.  
But the town champion rather fears  
The sharp bright glance of levelled spears;  
Their steel-clad warrior loves no fight  
Where bowstring twangs, or fire flies bright."

King Hakon then took the land-road northwards to Drontheim. When Earl Sigurd heard of this, he proceeded with all the ships he could get the sea-way northwards, to meet King Hakon there.

**CHAPTER IV.**  
**Of Erling and Hakon.** Erling Skakke took all the ships in Tunsberg belonging to King Hakon, and there he also took the Beikesuden which had belonged to King Inge. Then Erling proceeded, and reduced the whole of Viken in obedience to King Magnus, and also the whole country north wheresoever he appeared up to Bergen, where he remained all winter. There Erling killed Ingebiorn Sepil, King Hakon's lenderman of the north part of the Fiord district. In winter King Hakon was in Drontheim; but in the following spring he ordered a levy, and prepared to go against Erling. He had with him Earl Sigurd, John Swensson, Eindrid Unge, Onund Simunsson, Philippus Petersson, Philippus

Gyrdersson, Rognvald Kunta, Sigurd Kapa, Sigurd Hiupa, Frederik Keina, Asbiorn of Aurland, Thorbiorn, a son of Gunnar the treasurer, and Strad Biorn. SAGA XVI.

Erling was in Bergen with a great armament, and resolved to lay a sailing prohibition on all the merchant vessels which were going north to Nidaros; for he knew that King Hakon would soon get tidings of him, if ships were sailing between the towns. Besides, he gave out that it was better for Bergen to get the goods, even if the owners were obliged to sell them cheaper than they wished, than that they should fall into the hands of enemies and thereby strengthen them. And now a great many vessels were assembled at Bergen, for many arrived every day, and none were allowed to go away. Then Erling let some of the lightest of his vessels be laid ashore, and spread the report that he would wait for Hakon, and, with the help of his friends and relations, oppose the enemy there. He then one day called a meeting of the ship-masters, and gave them and all the merchant ships and their steersmen leave to go where they pleased. When the men who had charge of the cargoes, and were all ready to sail away with their goods, some for trade, others on various business, had got leave from Erling Skakke to depart, there was a soft and favourable wind for sailing north along the coast. Before the evening all who were ready had set sail, and hastened on as fast as they could, according to the speed of their vessels, the one vying with the other. When this fleet came north to Möre, Hakon's fleet had arrived there before them; and he himself was there fully engaged in collecting people, and summoning to him the lendersmen, and all liable to serve in the levy, without having for a long time heard any news from Bergen. Now, however, they heard, as the latest news, that Erling Skakke had laid his ships up in Bergen, and there they would find him; and also that he had a large

CHAPTER  
V.  
Of Erling's  
people.



**SAGA XVI.** force with him. King Hakon sailed from thence to Veöy\*, and sent away Earl Sigurd and Onund Simunsson to gather people, and sent men also to both the Möre districts. After King Hakon had remained a few days at the town he sailed farther, and proceeded to the South, thinking that it would both promote his journey and enable new levies to join him sooner.

Erling Skakke had given leave on Sunday to all the merchant vessels to leave Bergen; and on Tuesday, as soon as the early mass was over, he ordered the war-horns to sound, summoned to him the men-at-arms and the townsmen, and let the ships which were laid up on shore be drawn down into the water. Then Erling held a House-thing with his men and the people of the levy; told them his intentions; named ship commanders; and had the names called over of the men who were to be on board of the king's ship. This Thing ended with Erling's order to every man to make himself ready in his berth wherever a place was appointed him; and declared that he who remained in the town after the Beikesuden was hauled out, should be punished by loss of life or limb. Orm, the king's brother, laid his ships out in the harbour immediately that evening, and many others, and the greater number were afloat before.

**CHAPTER  
VI.  
Of Erling  
Skakke.**

On Wednesday, before mass was sung in the town, Erling sailed from Bergen with all his fleet, consisting of twenty-one ships; and there was a fresh breeze for sailing northwards along the coast. Erling had his son King Magnus with him, and there were many lendermen accompanied by the finest men. When Erling came north, abreast of the Fiord district, he sent a boat on shore to John Halkellsson's farm, and took Nicolas, a son of Simun Skalpe, and of Maria, Harald Gille's daughter, and brought him out to the

\* Veöy — now Vedo in Raumsdal.

fleet, and put him on board the king's ship. On SAGA XVI. Friday, immediately after matins, they sailed to Steinavog; and King Hakon, with thirteen ships, was lying in a harbour in the neighbourhood. He himself and his men were up at play upon the island, and the lendermen were sitting on the hill, when they saw a boat rowing from the south with two men in it, who were bending back deep towards the keel, and taking hasty strokes with their oars. When they came to the shore they did not belay the boat, but both ran from it. The great men seeing this, said to each other, "These men must have some news to tell;" and got up to meet them. When they met, Onund Simunsson asked, "Have ye any news of Erling Skakke, that ye are running so fast?"

They answered, as soon as they could get out the words, for they had lost their breath, "Here comes Erling against you, sailing from the south, with twenty-one ships, or thereabouts, of which many are great enough; and now ye will soon see their sails."

Then said Eindrid Unge, "Too near to the nose, said the peasant, when his eye was knocked out."

They went in haste now to where the games were playing, and immediately the war-horns resounded, and with the battle-call all the people were gathered down to the ships in the greatest haste. It was just the time of day when their meat was nearly cooked. All the men rushed to the ships, and each ran on board the vessel that was nearest to him, so that the ships were unequally manned. Some took to the oars; some raised the masts, turned the heads of the vessels to the north, and steered for Veöy, where they expected much assistance from the townspeople.

Soon after they saw the sails of Erling's fleet, and both fleets came in sight of each other. Eindrid Unge had a ship called Draglön, which was a large buss-like long-ship, but which had but a small crew; for

CHAPTER  
VII.  
Fall of  
King  
Hakon.

**SAGA XVI.** those who belonged to her had run on board of other ships, and she was therefore the hindmost of Hakon's fleet. When Eindrid came abreast of the island Sek, the Beikesuden, which Erling Skakke himself commanded, came up with her; and these two ships were bound fast together. King Hakon and his followers had arrived close to Veöy; but when they heard the war-horn they turned again to assist Eindrid. Now they began the battle on both sides, as the vessels came up. Many of the sails lay midships across the vessels; and the ships were not made fast to each other, but they lay side by side. The conflict was not long before there came disorder in Hakon's ship; and some fell, and others sprang overboard. Hakon threw over him a grey cloak, and jumped on board another ship; but when he had been there a short time he thought he had got among his enemies; and when he looked about him he saw none of his men nor of his ships near him. Then he went into the Beikesuden to the fore-castle-men, and begged his life. They took him in their keeping, and gave him quarter. In this conflict there was a great loss of people, but principally of Hakon's men. In the Beikesuden fell Nicoolas; Simun Skalp's son; and Erling's men are accused of having killed him themselves. Then there was a pause in the battle, and the vessels separated. It was now told to Erling that Hakon was on board of his ship; that the fore-castle-men had taken him, and threatened that they would defend him with arms. Erling sent men forwards in the ship to bring the fore-castle-men his orders to guard Hakon well, so that he should not get away. He at the same time let it be understood that he had no objection to giving the king life and safety, if the other chiefs were willing, and a peace could be established. All the fore-castle-men gave their chief great credit and honour for these words. Then Erling ordered anew a blast of the

SAGA XVI.

war-horns, and that the ships should be attacked which had not lost their men; saying that they would never have such another opportunity of avenging King Inge. Thereupon they all raised a war-shout, encouraged each other, and rushed to the assault. In this tumult King Hakon received his death-wound. When his men knew he had fallen they rowed with all their might against the enemy, threw away their shields, slashed with both hands, and cared not for life. This heat and recklessness, however, proved soon a great loss to them; for Erling's men saw the unprotected parts of their bodies, and where their blows would have effect. The greater part of Hakon's men who remained fell here; and it was principally owing to the want of numbers, as they were not enough to defend themselves. They could not get quarter, also, excepting those whom the chiefs took under their protection and bound themselves to pay ransom for. The following of Hakon's people fell: Sigurd Kapa, Sigurd Hiupa, and Rognvald Kunta; but some ships' crews got way, rowed into the fiords, and thus saved their lives. Hakon's body was carried to Raumsdal, and buried there; but afterwards his brother, King Sverrer, had the body transported north to the merchant town Nidaros, and laid in the stone-wall of Christ church south of the choir.

Earl Sigurd, Eindrid Unge, Onund Simunsson, Frederik Keina, and other chiefs kept the troop together, left the ships in Raumsdal, and went up to the Uplands. King Magnus and his father Erling sailed with their troops north to Nidaros in Drontheim, and subdued the country as they went along. Erling called together an Ore-thing, at which King Magnus was proclaimed king of all Norway. Erling, however, remained there but a short time; for he thought the Drontheim people were not well affected

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Flight of the chiefs  
of King  
Hakon's  
men.

**SAGA XVI.** towards him and his son. King Magnus was then called king of the whole country.

King Hakon had been a handsome man in appearance, well grown, tall and thin; but rather broad-shouldered, on which account his men called him Herdabreid. As he was young in years, his lendersmen ruled for him. He was cheerful and friendly in conversation, playful and youthful in his ways, and was much liked by the people.

**CHAPTER  
IX.  
Of King  
Sigurd's  
beginning.**

There was an Upland man called Marcus of Skog, who was a relation of Earl Sigurd. Marcus brought up a son of King Harald Sigurdsson, who was also called Sigurd. This Sigurd was chosen king by the Upland people, by the advice of Earl Sigurd and the other chiefs who had followed King Hakon. They had now a great army, and the troops were divided in two bodies; so that Marcus and the king were less exposed where there was any thing to do, and Earl Sigurd and his troop, along with the lendersmen, were most in the way of danger. They went with their troops mostly through the Uplands, and sometimes eastwards to Viken. Erling Skakke had his son King Magnus always with him, and he had also the whole fleet and the land defence under him. He was a while in Bergen in autumn; but went from thence eastward to Viken, where he settled in Tunsberg for his winter quarters, and collected in Viken all the taxes and revenues that belonged to Magnus as king; and he had many and very fine troops. As King Sigurd had but a small part of the country, and kept many men on foot, he soon was in want of money; and where there was no chief in the neighbourhood he had to seek money by unlawful ways,—sometimes by unfounded accusations and fines, sometimes by open robbery.

**CHAPTER  
X.  
Earl Si-**

At that time the realm of Norway was in great prosperity. The bonders were rich and powerful,

unaccustomed to hostilities or violence, and the oppression of roving troops; so that there was soon a great noise and scandal when they were despoiled and robbed. The people of Viken were very friendly to Erling and King Magnus, principally from the popularity of the late King Inge Haraldsson; for the Viken people had always served under his banner. Erling kept a guard in the town, and twelve men were on watch every night. Erling had Things regularly with the bonders, at which the misdeeds of Sigurd's people were often talked over; and by the representations of Erling and his adherents, the bonders were brought unanimously to consider that it would be a great good fortune if these bands should be rooted out. Arne the king's relation spoke well and long on this subject, and at last severely; and required that all who were at the Thing,—men-at-arms, bonders, townsmen, and merchants,—should come to the resolution to sentence according to law Earl Sigurd and all his troop, and deliver them to Satan, both living and dead. From the animosity and hatred of the people, this was agreed to by all; and thus the unheard-of deed was adopted and confirmed by oath, as if a judgment in the case was delivered there by the Thing according to law. The priest Harald the Long-winded, who was a very eloquent man, spoke in the case; but his speech was to the same purpose as that of others who had spoken before. Erling gave a feast at Yule in Tunsberg, and paid the wages of the men-at-arms at Candlemas.

SAGA XVI.  
—  
Sigurd's con-  
demnation.

Earl Sigurd went with his best troops down to Viken, where many people were obliged to submit to his superior force, and many had to pay money. He drove about thus widely higher up the country, penetrating into different districts. But there were some in his troop who desired privately to make peace with Erling; but they got back the answer, that all who

CHAPTER  
XI.  
Of Erling.

## SAGA XVI.

asked for their lives should obtain quarter, but they only should get leave to remain in the country who had not been guilty of any great offences against Erling. And when Sigurd's adherents heard that they would not get leave to remain in the country, they held together in one body; for there were many among them who knew for certain that Erling would look upon them as guilty of offences against him. Philippus Gyrðarsson made terms with Erling, got his property back, and went home to his farm; but soon after Sigurd's men came there, and killed him. They committed many crimes against each other, and many men were slain in their mutual persecution; but here what was committed by the chiefs only is written down.

CHAPTER  
XII.  
Erling gets  
news of  
Earl Si-  
gurd.

It was in the beginning of Lent that news came to Erling that Earl Sigurd intended to come upon him; and news of him came here and there, sometimes nearer, sometimes farther off. Erling sent out spies in all quarters around to discover where they were. Every evening he assembled all the men-at-arms by the war-horn out of the town; and for a long time in the winter they lay under arms all night, ready to be drawn up in array. At last Erling got intelligence that Sigurd and his followers were not far distant, up at the farm Re. Erling then began his expedition out of the town, and took with him all the townspeople who were able to carry arms and had arms, and likewise all the merchants; and left only twelve men behind to keep watch in the town. Erling went out of the town on Thursday afternoon, in the second week of Lent; and every man had two days' provisions with him. They marched by night, and it was late before they got out of the town with the men. Two men were with each shield and each horse; and the people, when mustered, were about 1800 men. When they met their spies, they

were informed that Sigurd was at Re, in a house called Ramnes, and had 500 men. Then Erling called together his people; told them the news he had received; and all were eager to hasten their march, fall on them in the houses, or engage them by night. SAGA XVI

Erling replied to them thus: "It is probable that we and Earl Sigurd shall soon meet. There are also many men in this band whose handywork remains in our memories; such as cutting down King Inge, and so many more of our friends, that it would take long to reckon them up. These deeds they did by the power of Satan, by witchcraft, and by villany; for it stands in our laws and country rights, that however highly a man may have been guilty, it shall be called villany and cowardly murder to kill him in the night. This band has had its luck hitherto by following the counsel of men acquainted with witchcraft and fighting by night, and not in the light of day; and by this proceeding have they been victorious hitherto over the chiefs whose heads they have laid low on the earth. Now we have often seen, and proved, how unsuitable and improper it is to go into battle in the night-time; therefore let us rather have before our eyes the example of chiefs better known to us, and who deserve better to be imitated, and fight by open day in regular battle array, and not steal upon sleeping men in the night. We have people enough against them, so few as they are. Let us, therefore, wait for day and daylight, and keep together in our array in case they attack us."

Thereafter the whole army sat down. Some opened up bundles of hay, and made a bed of it for themselves; some sat upon their shields, and thus waited the day-dawn. The weather was raw, and there was a wet snow-drift.

Earl Sigurd got the first intelligence of Erling's army, when it was already near to the house. His men



## SAGA XVI.

Sigurd's  
battle  
array.

got up, and armed themselves; but not knowing how many men Erling had with him, some were inclined to fly, but the most determined to stand. Earl Sigurd was a man of understanding, and could talk well, but certainly was not considered brave enough to take a strong resolution; and indeed the earl showed a great inclination to fly, for which he got many stinging words from his men-at-arms. As day dawned, they began on both sides to draw up their battle array. Earl Sigurd placed his men on the edge of a ridge between the river and the house, at a place at which a little stream runs into the river. Erling and his people placed their array on the other side of the river; but at the back of his array were men on horseback well armed, who had the king with them. When Earl Sigurd's men saw that there was so great a want of men on their side, they held a council, and were for taking to the forest. But Earl Sigurd said, "Ye alleged that I had no courage, but it will now be proved; and let each of you take care not to fail, or fly, before I do so. We have a good battle-field. Let them cross the bridge; but as soon as the banner comes over it let us then rush down the hill upon them, and none desert his neighbour."

Earl Sigurd had on a red-brown kirtle, and a red cloak, of which the corners were tied and turned back; shoes on his feet; and a shield and sword called Bastard. The earl said, "God knows that I would rather get at Erling Skakke with a stroke of Bastard, than receive much gold."

CHAPTER  
XIV.  
Earl Si-  
gurd's fall.

Erling Skakke's army wished to go on to the bridge; but Erling told them to go up along the river, which was small, and not difficult to cross, as its banks were flat; and they did so. Earl Sigurd's array proceeded up along the ridge right opposite to them; but as the ridge ended, and the ground was good and level over the river, Erling told his men to sing a Paternoster,

and beg God to give them the victory who best deserved it. Then they all sang aloud "Kyrie Eleison," and struck with their weapons on their shields. But with this singing 300 men of Erling's people slipped away and fled. Then Erling and his people went across the river, and the earl's men raised the war-shout; but there was no assault from the ridge down upon Erling's array, but the battle began upon the hill itself. They first used spears, then edge weapons; and the earl's banner soon retired so far back, that Erling and his men scaled the ridge. The battle lasted but a short time before the earl's men fled to the forest, which they had close behind them. This was told Earl Sigurd, and his men bade him fly; but he replied, "Let us on while we can." And his men went bravely on, and cut down on all sides. In this tumult fell Earl Sigurd and John Swainsson, and nearly sixty men. Erling lost few men, and pursued the fugitives to the forest. There Erling halted his troops, and turned back. He came just as the king's slaves were about stripping the clothes off Earl Sigurd, who was not quite lifeless. He had put his sword Bastard in the sheath, and it lay by his side. Erling took it, struck the slaves with it, and drove them away. Then Erling, with his troops, returned, and sat down in Tunsberg. Seven days after Earl Sigurd's fall Erling's men took Eindrid Unge prisoner, and killed him, with all his ship's crew.

Marcus of Skog, and King Sigurd his foster-son, rode down to Viken towards spring, and there got a ship; but when Erling heard it he went eastwards against them, and they met at Konghelle. Marcus fled with his followers to the island Hising; and there the country-people of Hising came down in swarms, and placed themselves in Marcus's and Sigurd's array. Erling and his men rowed to the shore; but Marcus's men shot at them. Then Erling said to his people,

SAGA XVI.

CHAPTER  
XV.  
Of Marcus  
of Skog,  
and King  
Sigurd  
Sigurdsson.

**SAGA XVI.** "Let us take their ships, but not go up to fight with a land force. The Hisingers are a bad set to quarrel with, — hard, and without understanding. They will keep this troop but a little while among them, for Hising is but a small spot." This was done: they took the ships, and brought them over to Konghelle. Marcus and his men went up to the forest districts, from which they intended to make assaults, and they had spies out on both sides. Erling had many men-at-arms with him, whom he brought from other districts, and they made attacks on each other in turn.

**CHAPTER  
XVI.**  
Beginning  
of Arch-  
bishop  
Eystein.

Eystein, a son of Erlend Himald, was selected to be archbishop, after Archbishop Johan's death; and he was consecrated the same year King Inge was killed. Now when Archbishop Eystein came to his see, he made himself beloved by all the country, as an excellent active man of high birth. The Drontheim people, in particular, received him with pleasure; for most of the great people in the Drontheim district were connected with the archbishop by relationship or other connection, and all were his friends. The archbishop brought forward a request to the bonders in a speech, in which he set forth the great want of money for the see, and also how much greater improvement of the revenues would be necessary to maintain it suitably, as it was now of much more importance than formerly when the bishop's see was first established. He requested of the bonders that they should give him, for determining law-suits, an ore of silver value, instead of what they had before paid, which was an ore of judgment money, of that kind which was paid to the king in judging cases; and the difference between the two kinds of ore was, that the ore he desired was a half greater than the other. By help of the archbishop's relations and friends, and his own activity, this was carried; and it was fixed by law

in all the Drontheim district, and in all the districts belonging to his archbishopric.\*

When Sigurd and Marcus lost their ships in the Gotha river, and saw they could get no hold on Erling, they went to the Uplands, and proceeded by land north to Drontheim. Sigurd was received there joyfully, and chosen king at an Ore-thing; and many gallant men, with their sons, attached themselves to his party. They fitted out ships, rigged them for a voyage, and proceeded when summer came southwards to Möre, and took up all the royal revenues where-soever they came. At this time the following lender-men were appointed in Bergen for the defence of the country:—Nicolas Sigurdsson, Nokve Paalsson, and several military leaders; as Thoralf Dryll, Thorbiorn Skatemester, and many others. As Marcus and Sigurd sailed south, they heard that Erling's men were numerous in Bergen; and therefore they sailed outside the coast-rocks, and southwards past Bergen. It was generally remarked, that Marcus's men always got a fair wind, wherever they wished to sail to.

As soon as Erling Skakke heard that Sigurd and Marcus had sailed southwards, he hastened to Viken, and drew together an armed force; and he soon had a great many men, and many stout ships. But when he came farther in Viken, he met with a strong contrary wind, which kept him there in port the whole summer. Now when Sigurd and Marcus came east to Lister, they heard that Erling had a great force in Viken; so they turned to the north again. But when

SAGA XVI.

CHAPTER  
XVII.  
Of Marcus  
and King  
Sigurd.

CHAPTER  
XVIII.  
Marcus  
and King  
Sigurd  
killed.

\* The penalties on offences against the law, and the fees for determining cases in the Things, appear to have been a main source of the revenues of the kings. On the establishment of bishops there appear to have been bishops' courts for judging of cases coming within clerical jurisdiction, of which the fees and penalties belonged to the bishopric revenue. It does not appear that the king's courts ceased in those districts, as in Drontheim, which had bishops; but only that the fees and penalties in certain cases belonged to the bishop, not to the king.

SAGA XVI. they reached Hordaland, with the intention of sailing to Bergen, and came opposite the town, Nicolas and his men rowed out against them, with more men and larger ships than they had. Sigurd and Marcus saw no other way of escaping but to row away southwards. Some of them went out to sea, others got south to Sund, and some got into the Fiords. Marcus, and some people with him, sprang upon an isle called Skarpa. Nicolas and his men took their ships, gave John Halkelsson and a few others quarter, but killed the most of them they could get hold of. Some days after Eindrid Heidafyla found Sigurd and Marcus, and they were brought to Bergen. Sigurd was beheaded outside of Gravdal, and Marcus and another man were hanged at Hruarfsnes. This took place on Michaelmas day, and the band which had followed them was dispersed.

CHAPTER  
XIX.  
Of Erling  
and the  
people of  
Hising  
Isle.

Frederik Keina and Biorne the Bad, Onund Simonsson and Arnolf Skarpa, had rowed out to sea with some ships, and sailed outside along the land to the east. Wheresoever they came to the land they plundered, and killed Erling's friends. Now when Erling heard that Sigurd and Marcus were killed, he gave leave to the lendersmen and people of the levy to return home; but he himself, with his men, set his course eastward across the Folde fiord\*, for he heard of Marcus's men there. Erling sailed to Konghelle, where he remained the autumn; and in the first week of winter Erling went out to the island Hising with his men, and called the bonders to a Thing. When the Hising people came to the Thing, Erling laid his law-suit against them for having joined the bands of Sigurd and Marcus, and having raised men against him. Ozur was the name of one of the greatest of the bonders on the island, and he answered Erling on

\* Folde fiord was the mouth of Christiania fiord.

account of the others. The Thing was long assembled; but at the close the bonders gave the case into Erling's own power, and he appointed a meeting in the town within one week, and named fifteen bonders who should appear there. When they came, he condemned them to pay a penalty of 300 head of cattle; and the bonders returned home ill pleased at this sentence. Soon after the Gotha river was frozen, and Erling's ships were fast in the ice; and the bonders kept back the mulct, and lay assembled for some time. Erling made a Yule feast in the town; but the Hising people had joint-feasts with each other, and kept under arms during Yule. The night after the fifth day of Yule Erling went up to Hising, surrounded Ozur's house, and burnt him in it. He killed one hundred men in all, burnt three houses, and then returned to Konghelle. The bonders came then, according to agreement, to pay the mulct.

Erling Skakke made ready to sail in spring as soon as he could get his ships afloat for ice, and sailed from Konghelle; for he heard that those who had formerly been Marcus's friends were marauding in the north of Viken. Erling sent out spies to learn their doings, searched for them, and found them lying in a harbour. Onund Simunsson and Arnolf Skarpa escaped, but Frederik Keina and Biorne the Bad were taken, and many of their followers were killed. Erling had Frederik bound to an anchor and thrown overboard; and for that deed Erling was much detested in the Drontheim country, for the most powerful men there were relatives of Frederik. Erling ordered Biorne the Bad to be hanged; and he uttered, according to his custom, many dreadful imprecations during his execution. Thorbiorn Skakke-scald tells of this business:—

CHAPTER.  
XX.  
Of the death of  
Frederik  
Keina and  
Biorne.

“ East of the Fiord beyond the land,  
Unnoticed by the pirate band,  
Erling stole on them ere they knew,  
And seized or killed all Kæne's crew.

## SAGA XVI.

Kæne, fast to an anchor bound,  
Was thrown into the deep blue Sound;  
And Biorn swung high on gallows-tree,  
A sight all good men loved to see."

Onund and Arnolf, with the band that had escaped, fled to Denmark; but were sometimes in Gotland, or in Viken.

CHAPTER  
XXI.  
Conference  
between  
Erling  
Skakke  
and Arch-  
bishop  
Eystein.

Erling Skakke sailed after this to Tunsberg, and remained there very long in spring; but when summer came he proceeded north to Bergen, where at that time a great many people were assembled. There was the legate from Rome, Stephanus; the Archbishop Eystein, and other bishops of the country. There was also Bishop Brand, who was consecrated bishop of Iceland, and John Loptsson, a daughter's son of King Magnus Barefoot; and on this occasion King Magnus and John's other relations acknowledged the relationship with him.

Archbishop Eystein and Erling Skakke often conversed together in private; and, among other things, Erling asked one day, "Is it true, sir, what people tell me, — that you have raised the value of the ore upon the people north in Drontheim, in the law cases in which money-fees are paid you?"

"It is so," said the archbishop, "that the bonders have allowed me an advance on the ore of law casualties; but they did it willingly, and without any kind of compulsion, and have thereby added to their honour for God and the income of the bishopric."

Erling replies, "Is this according to the law of the holy Olaf? or have you gone to work more arbitrarily in this than is written down in the law-book?"

The archbishop replies, "King Olaf the Holy fixed the laws, to which he received the consent and affirmative of the people; but it will not be found in his laws that it is forbidden to increase God's right."

Erling: "If you augment your right, you must assist us to augment as much the king's right."

The archbishop: "Thou hast already augmented enough thy son's power and dominion; and if I have exceeded the law in taking an increase of the ore from the Drontheim people, it is, I think, a much greater breach of the law that one is king over the country who is not a king's son, and which has neither any support in the law, nor in any precedent here in the country."

Erling: "When Magnus was chosen king, it was done with your knowledge and consent, and also of all the other bishops here in the country."

Archbishop: "You promised then, Erling, that provided we gave you our consent to electing Magnus king, you would, on all occasions, and with all your power, strengthen God's rights."

Erling: "I may well admit that I have promised to preserve and strengthen God's commands, and the laws of the land with all my power, and with the king's strength; and now I consider it to be much more advisable, instead of accusing each other of a breach of our promises, to hold firmly by the agreement entered into between us. Do you strengthen Magnus in his dominion, according to what you have promised; and I will, on my part, strengthen your power in all that can be of advantage or honour."

The conversation now took a more friendly turn; and Erling said, "Although Magnus was not chosen king according to what has been the old custom of this country, yet can you with your power give him consecration as king, as God's law prescribes, by anointing the king to sovereignty; and although I be neither a king, nor of kingly race, yet most of the kings, within my recollection, have not known the laws or the constitution of the country so well as I do. Besides, the mother of King Magnus is the daughter of a king and queen born in lawful wedlock, and



**SAGA XVI.** Magnus is son of a queen and a lawfully married wife. Now if you will give him royal consecration, no man can take royalty from him. William Bastard was not a king's son; but he was consecrated and crowned king of England, and the royalty in England has ever since remained with his race, and all have been crowned. Now we have here in Norway an archiepiscopal seat, to the glory and honour of the country; let us also have a crowned king, as well as the Danes and Englishmen."

Erling and the archbishop afterwards talked often of this matter, and they were quite agreed. Then the archbishop brought the business before the legate, and got him easily persuaded to give his consent. Thereafter the archbishop called together the bishops, and other learned men, and explained the subject to them. They all replied in the same terms, that they would follow the counsels of the archbishop, and all were eager to promote the consecration as soon as the archbishop pleased.

**CHAPTER  
XXII.**  
King Magnus's consecration.

Erling Skakke then had a great feast prepared in the king's house. The large hall was covered with costly cloth and tapestry, and adorned with great expense. The court-men and all the attendants were there entertained, and there were numerous guests, and many chiefs. Then King Magnus received the royal consecration from the Archbishop Eystein; and at the consecration there were five other bishops and the legate, besides a number of other clergy. Erling Skakke, and with him twelve other lendemen, administered to the king the oath of the law; and the day of the consecration the king and Erling had the legate, the archbishop, and all the other bishops as guests; and the feast was exceedingly magnificent, and the father and son distributed many great presents. King Magnus was then eight years of age, and had been king for three years.

When the Danish king Waldemar heard the news from Norway that Magnus was become king of the whole country, and all the other parties in the country were rooted out, he sent his men with a letter to King Magnus and Erling, and reminded them of the agreement which Erling had entered into, under oath, with King Waldemar, of which we have spoken before; namely, that Viken from the east to Rygiarbet should be ceded to King Waldemar, if Magnus became the sole king of Norway. When the ambassadors came forward and showed Erling the letter of the Danish king, and he heard the Danish king's demand upon Norway, he laid it before the other chiefs by whose counsels he usually covered his acts. All, as one man, replied that the Danes should never hold the slightest portion of Norway; for never had times been worse in the land than when the Danes had power in it. The ambassadors of the Danish king were urgent with Erling for an answer, and desired to have it decidedly; but Erling begged them to proceed with him east to Viken, and said he would give his final answer when he had met with the men of most understanding and influence in Viken.

SAGA XVI.  
CHAPTER  
XXIII.  
King Wal-  
demar's  
embassy.

Erling Skakke proceeded in autumn to Viken, and staid in Tunsberg, from whence he sent people to Sarpsburg to summon a Thing\* of four districts; and then Erling went there with his people.

CHAPTER  
XXIV.  
Of Erling  
and the  
people of  
Viken.

When the Thing was seated Erling made a speech, in which he explained the resolutions which had been settled upon between him and the Danish king, the first time he collected troops against his enemies. "I will," said Erling, "keep faithfully the agreement which we then entered into with the king, if it be your will and consent, bonders, rather to serve the

\* This reference to a Thing of the people in the affairs of the country is a striking example of the right of the Things being recognised, in theory at least, as fully as the right of our parliaments in later times.

**SAGA XVI.** Danish king than the king who is now consecrated and crowned king of this country."

The bonders replied thus to Erling's speech: "Never will we become the Danish king's men, as long as one of us Viken men is in life." And the whole assembly, with shouts and cries, called on Erling to keep the oath he had taken to defend his son's dominions, "should we even all follow thee to battle." And so the Thing was dissolved.

The ambassadors of the Danish king then returned home, and told the issue of their errand. The Danes abused Erling, and all Northmen, and declared that evil only proceeded from them; and the report was spread, that in spring the Danish king would send out an army and lay waste Norway. Erling returned in autumn north to Bergen, staid there all winter, and gave their pay to his people.

**CHAPTER  
XXV.**  
Of the  
letters of  
the Dron-  
theim  
people.

The same winter some Danish people came by land through the Uplands, saying they were to go, as was then the general practice, to the holy King Olaf's festival. But when they came to the Drontheim country, they went to many men of influence, and told their business; which was, that the Danish king had sent them to desire their friendship, and consent, if he came to the country, promising them both power and money. With this verbal message came also the Danish king's letter and seal, and a message to the Drontheim people that they should send back their letters and seals to him. They did so, and the most of them received well the Danish king's message; whereupon the messengers returned back towards Lent. Erling was in Bergen; and towards spring Erling's friends told him the loose reports they had heard by some merchant vessels that had arrived from Drontheim, that the Drontheim people were in hostility openly against him; and had declared that if Erling came to Drontheim, he should never pass Agdanes

in life. Erling said this was mere folly and idle talk. SAGA XVI.  
 Erling now made it known that he would go to Unarheim to the Gangadag-thing\*; and ordered a cutter of twenty rowing benches to be fitted out, a boat of fifteen benches, and a provision-ship. When the vessels were ready, there came a strong southerly gale. On the Thursday of the Ascension week, Erling called his people by sound of trumpet to their departure; but the men were loath to leave the town, and were ill inclined to row against the wind. Erling brought his vessels to Biskopshavn. "Well," said Erling, "since ye are so unwilling to row against the wind, raise the mast, hoist the sails, and let the ship go north." They did so, and sailed northwards both day and night. On Wednesday, in the evening, they sailed in past Agdanes, where they found a fleet assembled of many merchant vessels, rowing craft, and boats, all going towards the town to the celebration of the festival, — some before them, some behind them; so that the townspeople paid no attention to the long-ships coming.

Erling came to the town just as vespers was being sung in Christ church. He and his men ran into the town, to where it was told them that the lenderman Alf Rode, a son of Ottar Birting, was still sitting at table, and drinking with his men. Erling fell upon them; and Alf was killed, with almost all his men. Few other men were killed; for they had almost all gone to church, as this was the night before Christ's ascension day. In the morning early, Erling called all the people by sound of trumpet to a Thing out upon Ore. At the Thing Erling laid a charge against the Drontheim people, accusing them of intending to betray the country, and take it from the king; and named Baard Standal, Paal Andresson, and Raza

CHAPTER  
XXVI.  
Of Erling  
and the  
people of  
Drontheim.

\* Gangadag-thing—a Thing held on the procession days in Ascension week.

SAGA XVI.

Baard, who then presided over the town's affairs, and many others. They, in their defence, denied the accusation; but Erling's writer stood up, produced many letters with seals, and asked if they acknowledged their seals which they had sent to the Danish king; and thereupon the letters were read. There was also a Danish man with Erling who had gone with the letters in winter, and whom Erling for that purpose had taken into his service. He told to these men the very words which each of them had used. "And you, Raza Baard, spoke, striking your breast; and the very words you used were, 'Out of this breast are all these counsels produced.'" Baard replied, "I was wrong in the head, sirs, when I spoke so." There was now nothing to be done but to submit the case entirely to the sentence Erling might give upon it. He took great sums of money from many as fines, and condemned all those who had been killed as lawless, and their deeds as lawless; making their deaths thereby not subject to mulct. Then Erling returned to Bergen.

CHAPTER  
XXVII.  
Of King  
Walde-  
mar's ex-  
pedition to  
Norway.

The Danish King Waldemar assembled in spring a great army, and proceeded with it north to Viken. As soon as he reached the dominions of the king of Norway, the bonders assembled in a great multitude. The king advanced peacefully; but when they came to the mainland, the people shot at them even when there were only two or three together, from which the ill-will of the country-people towards them was evident. When they came to Tunsberg, King Waldemar summoned a Hauga-thing; but nobody attended it from the country parts. Then Waldemar spoke thus to his troops: "It is evident that all the country-people are against us; and now we have two things to choose: the one to go through the country, sword in hand, sparing neither man nor beast; the other is to go back without effecting our object. And it is more my

inclination to go with the army to the East against the heathens, of whom we have enough before us in the East country, than to kill Christian people here, although they have well deserved it." All the others had a greater desire for a foray; but the king ruled, and they all returned back to Denmark without effecting their purpose. They pillaged, however, all around in the distant islands, or where the king was not in the neighbourhood. They then returned south to Denmark without doing any thing.

SAGA XVI.

As soon as Erling heard that a Danish force had come to Viken, he ordered a levy through all the land, both of men and ships, so that there was a great assemblage of men in arms; and with this force he proceeded eastward along the coast. But when he came to Lindisness, he heard that the Danish army had returned south to Denmark, after plundering all around them in Viken. Then Erling gave all the people of the levy permission to return home; but he himself and some lendermen, with many vessels, sailed to Jutland after the Danes. When they came to a place called Dyr saa, the Danes who had returned from the expedition lay there with many ships. Erling gave them battle, and there was a fight, in which the Danes soon fled with the loss of many people; and Erling and his men plundered the ships and the town, and made a great booty, with which they returned to Norway. Thereafter, for a time, there was hostility between Norway and Denmark.

CHAPTER  
XXVIII.  
Of Erling's  
expedition  
to Jutland.

The princess Christina went south in autumn to Denmark, to visit her relation King Waldemar, who was her cousin. The king received her kindly, and gave her fiefs in his kingdom, so that she could support her household well. She often conversed with the king, who was remarkably kind towards her. In the spring following Christina sent to Erling, and begged him to pay a visit to the Danish king, and

CHAPTER  
XXIX.  
Of Erling's  
expedition  
to Den-  
mark.

SAGA XVI. enter into a peace with him. In summer Erling was in Viken, where he fitted out a long-ship, manned it with his finest lads, and sailed (a single ship) over to Jutland. When he heard that the Danish king Waldemar was in Randeros\*, Erling sailed thither, and came to the town just as the king sat at the dinner-table, and most of the people were taking their meal. When his people had made themselves ready according to Erling's orders, set up the ship-tents, and made fast the ship, Erling landed with twelve men, all in armour, with hats over their helmets, and swords under their cloaks. They went to the king's lodging, where the doors stood open, and the dishes were being carried in. Erling and his people went in immediately, and drew up in front of the high seat. Erling said, "Peace and safe conduct we desire, king, both here and to return home."

"The king looked at him, and said, "Art thou here, Erling?"

He replies, "Here is Erling; and tell us, at once, if we shall have peace and safe conduct."

There were eighty of the king's men in the room, but all unarmed. The king replies, "Peace ye shall have, Erling, according to thy desire; for I will not use force or villany against a man who comes to visit me."

Erling then kissed the king's hand, went out, and down to his ship. Erling staid at Randeros some time with the king, and they talked about terms of peace between them and between the countries. They agreed that Erling should remain as hostage with the Danish king; and that Asbiorn Snare, Bishop Absalon's brother, should go to Norway as hostage on the other part.

In a conference which King Waldemar and Erling once had together, Erling said, "Sire, it appears to

\* Randeros — town of Randers in North Jutland.

me likely that it might lead to a peace between the countries if you got that part of Norway which was promised you in our agreement; but if it should be so, what chief would you place over it? Would he be a Dane?"

SAGA XVI.  
—  
tween King  
Waldemar  
and Erling.

"No," replied the king; "no Danish chief would go to Norway, where he would have to manage an obstinate hard people, when he has it so easy here with me."

Erling: "It was on that very consideration that I came here; for I would not on any account in the world deprive myself of the advantage of your friendship. In days of old other men, Hakon Ivarsson and Finn Arneson, came also from Norway to Denmark, and your predecessor King Swend made them both earls. Now I am not a man of less power in Norway than they were then, and my influence is not less than theirs; and the king gave them the province of Halland to rule over, which he himself had and owned before. Now it appears to me, sire, that you, if I become your man and vassal, can allow me to hold of you the fief which my son Magnus will not deny me, by which I will be bound in duty, and ready, to undertake all the service belonging to that title."

Erling spoke such things, and much more in the same strain, until it came at last to this, that Erling became Waldemar's man and vassal; and the king led Erling to the earl's seat one day, and gave him the title of earl, and Viken as a fief under his rule. Earl Erling went thereafter to Norway, and was earl afterwards as long as he lived; and also the peace with the Danish king was afterwards always well preserved. Earl Erling had four sons by his concubines. The one was called Reidar, the next Ogmund; and these by two different mothers: the third was called Finn; the fourth Sigurd: these were younger, and their mother was Asa the Fair. The princess Christina and Earl



**SAGA XVI.** Erling had a daughter called Ragnhild, who was married to John Thorbergsson of Raudaberg. Christina went away from the country with a man called Grim Rusli; and they went to Constantinople, where they were for a time, and had some children.

**CHAPTER  
XXXI.**  
Beginning  
of Olaf.

Olaf, a son of Gudbrand Skafhaug, and Maria, a daughter of King Eystein Magnusson, were brought up in the house of Sigurd Agnhatt in the Uplands. While Earl Erling was in Denmark, Olaf and his foster-father gathered a troop together, and many Upland people joined them; and Olaf was chosen king by them. They went with their bands through the Uplands, and sometimes down to Viken, and sometimes east to the forest settlements; but never came on board of ships. Now when Earl Erling got news of this troop, he hastened to Viken with his forces; and was there in summer in his ships, and in Opslo in autumn, and kept Yule there. He had spies up the country after this troop, and went himself, along with Orm the King-brother, up the country to follow them. Now when they came to a lake in Sweden called Væneren, they took all the vessels that were upon the lake.

**CHAPTER  
XXXII.**  
Of Erling.

The priest who performed divine service at a place called Rydiokul, close by the lake, invited the earl to a feast at Candlemas. The earl promised to come; and thinking it would be good to hear mass there, he rowed with his attendants over the lake the night before Candlemas day. But the priest had another plan on hand. He sent men to bring Olaf news of Earl Erling's arrival. The priest gave Erling strong drink in the evening, and let him have an excessive quantity of it. When the earl wished to lie down and sleep, the beds were made ready in the drinking-room; but when they had slept a short time the earl awoke, and asked if it was not the hour for matins. The priest replied, that only a small part of the night was gone, and told him to sleep in peace. The earl

replied, "I dream of many things to-night, and I sleep ill." He slumbered again, but awoke soon, and told the priest to get up and sing mass. The priest told the earl to sleep, and said it was but midnight. Then the earl again lay down, slept a little while, and, springing out of bed, ordered his men to put on their clothes. They did so; took their weapons, went to the church, and laid their arms outside while the priest was singing matins. SAGA XVI.

As Olaf got the message in the evening, they travelled in the night six miles\*, which people considered an extraordinarily long march. They arrived at Rydiokul while the priest was still singing mass, and it was pitch-dark. Olaf and his men went into the room, raised a war-shout, and killed some of the earl's men who had not gone to the early mass. Now when Erling and his men heard the war-shout, they ran to their weapons, and hastened down to their ships. Olaf and his men met them at a fence, at which there was a sharp conflict. Erling and his men retreated along the fence, which protected them. Erling had far fewer men, and many of them had fallen, and still more were wounded. What helped Earl Erling and his men the most was, that Olaf's men could not distinguish them, it was so dark; and the earl's men were always drawing down to their ships. Are Thorgeirsson, father of Bishop Gudmund, fell there, and many others of Erling's court-men. Erling himself was wounded in the left side; but some say he did it himself in drawing his sword. Orm the King-brother was also severely wounded; and with great difficulty they escaped to their ships, and instantly pushed off from land. It was generally considered as a most unlucky meeting for Olaf's people, as Earl Erling was in a manner sold into their hands, if they

CHAPTER  
XXXIII.  
Battle at  
Rydiokul.

\* About forty-three English miles.

**SAGA XVI.** had proceeded with common prudence. He was afterwards called Olaf the Unlucky; but others called his people Hat-lads. They went with their bands through the Uplands as before. Erling again went down to Viken to his ships, and remained there all summer. Olaf was in the Uplands, and sometimes east in the forest districts, where he and his troop remained all the next winter.

**CHAPTER  
XXXIV.**  
Battle at  
Stanger.

The following spring the Hat-lads went down to Viken, and raised the king's taxes all around, and remained there long in summer. When Earl Erling heard this, he hastened with his troops to meet them in Viken, and fell in with them east of the Fiord, at a place called Stanger; where they had a great battle, in which Erling was victorious. Sigurd Agnhat, and many others of Olaf's men, fell there; but Olaf escaped by flight, went south to Denmark, and was all winter in Aalborg in Jutland. The following spring Olaf fell into an illness which ended in death, and he was buried in the Maria church; and the Danes call him a saint.

**CHAPTER  
XXXV.**  
Harald's  
death.

King Magnus had a lenderman called Nicolas Kufung, who was a son of Paul Skoptesson. He took Harald prisoner, who called himself a son of King Sigurd Haraldsson and the princess Christina, and a brother of King Magnus by the mother's side. Nicolas brought Harald to Bergen, and delivered him into Earl Erling's hands. It was Erling's custom when his enemies came before him, that he either said nothing to them, or very little, and that in all gentleness, when he had determined to put them to death; or rose with furious words against them, when he intended to spare their lives. Erling spoke but little to Harald, and many, therefore, suspected his intentions; and some begged King Magnus to put in a good word for Harald with the earl: and the king did so. The earl replies, "Thy friends advise thee badly. Thou wouldst

govern this kingdom but a short time in peace and safety, if thou wert to follow the counsels of the heart only." Earl Erling ordered Harald to be taken to the North-ness, where he was beheaded. SAGA XVI.

There was a man called Eystein, who gave himself out for a son of King Eystein Haraldsson. He was at this time young, and not full-grown. It is told of him that he one summer appeared in Sweden, and went to earl Birgar Brose, who was then married to Eystein's aunt, a daughter of King Harald Gille. Eystein explained his business to them, and asked their assistance. Both Earl Birgar and his wife listened to him in a friendly way, and promised him their confidence, and he staid with them a while. Earl Birgar gave him some assistance of men, and a good sum for travelling expenses; and both promised him their friendship on his taking leave. Thereafter Eystein proceeded north into Norway, and when he came down to Viken people flocked to him in crowds; and Eystein was there proclaimed king, and he remained in Viken in winter. As they were very poor in money, they robbed all around, wherefore the lendarmen and bonders raised men against them; and being thus overpowered by numbers, they fled away to the forests and deserted hill grounds, where they lived for a long time. Their clothes being worn out, they wound the bark of the birch-tree about their legs, and thus were called by the bonders Birkebeiners.\* CHAPTER XXXVI.  
Of Eystein Eysteinson and the Birkebeiners. They often rushed down upon the settled districts, pushed on here or there, and made an assault where they did not find many people to oppose them. They had several battles with the bonders with various success; and the Birkebeiners held three battles in regular array, and gained the victory in them all. At Krogskoven they had nearly made an unlucky

\* Birkebeinar — Birch-legs.

**SAGA XVI.** expedition, for a great number of bonders and men-at-arms were assembled there against them; but the Birkebeiners felled brushwood across the roads, and retired into the forest. They were two years in Viken before they showed themselves in the northern parts of the country.

**CHAPTER  
XXXVII.**  
Of the  
Birke-  
beiners,  
King Eys-  
tein, and  
Erling  
Skakke.

Magnus had been king for thirteen years when the Birkebeiners first made their appearance. They got themselves ships in the third summer, with which they sailed along the coast gathering goods and men. They were first in Viken; but when summer advanced they proceeded northwards, and so rapidly that no news preceded them until they came to Drontheim. The Birkebeiners' troop consisted principally of hill-men and river-borderers, and many were from Thelemark; and all were well armed. Their king, Eystein, was a handsome man, with a little but good countenance; and he was not of great stature, for his men called him Eystein the Small. King Magnus and Earl Erling were in Bergen when the Birkebeiners sailed past it to the north; but they did not hear of them.

Earl Erling was a man of great understanding and power, an excellent leader in war, and an able and prudent ruler of the country; but he had the character of being cruel and severe. The cause of this was principally that he never allowed his enemies to remain in the country, even when they prayed to him for mercy; and therefore many joined the bands which were collected against him. Erling was a tall, strong-made man, somewhat short-necked and high-shouldered; had a long and sharp countenance of a light complexion, and his hair became very grey. He bore his head a little on one side; was free and agreeable in his manners. He wore the old fashion of clothes, — long body-pieces and long arms to his coats, foreign cloak, and high shoes. He made the king wear the

same kind of dress in his youth; but when he grew up, and acted for himself, he dressed very sumptuously.

SAGA XVI.

King Magnus was of a light turn of mind, full of jokes; a great lover of mirth, and not less of women.

Nicolas was a son of Sigurd Hranesson and of Skialdvor a daughter of Bryniolf Ulfalde, and a sister of Haldor Bryniolfsson by the father's side, and of King Magnus Barefoot by the mother's side. Nicolas was a distinguished chief, who had a farm at Aungul in Halogaland, which was called Steig. Nicolas had also a house in Nidaros, below Saint John's church, where Thorgeir the scribe lately dwelt. Nicolas was often in the town, and was the president of the townspeople. Skialdvor, Nicolas's daughter, was married to Eric Arneson, who was also a lenderman.

CHAPTER  
XXXVIII.  
Of Nicolas.

As the people of the town were coming from matins the last day of Marymas, Eric came up to Nicolas, and said, "Here are some fishermen come from the sea, who report that some long-ships are sailing into the fiord; and people conjecture that these may be the Birkebeiners. It would be advisable to call the townspeople together with the war-horns, to meet under arms out on the Ore."

CHAPTER  
XXXIX.  
Of Eric and  
Nicolas.

Nicolas replies, "I don't go after fishermen's reports; but I shall send out spies to the fiord, and in the mean time hold a Thing to-day."

Eric went home; but when they were ringing to high mass, and Nicolas was going to church, Eric came to him again, and said, "I believe the news to be true; for here are men who say they saw them under sail: and I think it would be most advisable to ride out of town, and gather men with arms; for it appears to me the townspeople will be too few."

Nicolas replies, "Thou art mixing every thing together: let us first hear mass, and then take our resolution."

## SAGA XVI.

Nicolas then went into the church. When the mass was over Eric went to Nicolas, and said, "My horses are saddled; I will ride away."

Nicolas replies, "Farewell, then: we will hold a Thing to-day on the Ore, and examine what force of men there may be in the town."

Eric rode away, and Nicolas went to his house, and then to dinner.

CHAPTER  
XLI.  
The fall of  
Nicolas.

The meat was scarcely put on the table, when a man came into the house to tell Nicolas that the Birkebeiners were rowing up the river. Then Nicolas called to his men to take their weapons. When they were armed Nicolas ordered them to go up into the loft. But that was a most imprudent step; for if they had remained in the yard, the townspeople might have come to their assistance; but now the Birkebeiners filled the whole yard, and from thence scrambled from all sides up to the loft. They called to Nicolas, and offered him quarter, but he refused it. Then they attacked the loft. Nicolas and his men defended themselves with bow-shot, hand-shot, and stones of the chimney; but the Birkebeiners hewed down the houses, broke up the loft, and returned shot for shot from bow or hand. Nicolas had a red shield in which were gilt nails, and about it was a border of stars. The Birkebeiners shot so that the arrows went in up to the arrow-feather. Then said Nicolas, "My shield deceives me." Nicolas and a number of his people fell, and his death was greatly lamented. The Birkebeiners gave all the townspeople their lives.

CHAPTER  
XLI.  
Eystein  
proclaimed  
king.

Eystein was then proclaimed king, and all the people submitted to him. He staid a while in the town, and then went into the interior of the Drontheim land, where many joined him, and among them Thorfin Swart of Snaas with a troop of people. When the Birkebeiners, in the beginning of winter, came again into the town, the sons of Gudrun from Saltness,

John Kettling, Sigurd, and William joined them; and when they proceeded afterwards from Nidaros up Orkadal, they could number nearly 2000 men. They afterwards went to the Uplands, and on to Thoten and Hadaland, and from thence to Ringarige, and subdued the country wheresoever they came.

SAGA XVI.

King Magnus went eastward to Viken in autumn with a part of his men, and with him Orm the king's brother; but Earl Erling remained behind in Bergen to meet the Birkebeiners in case they took the sea route. King Magnus went to Tunsberg, where he and Orm held their Yule. When King Magnus heard that the Birkebeiners were up in Re, the king and Orm proceeded there with their men. There was much snow, and it was dreadfully cold. When they came to the farm they left the beaten track on the road, drew up their array outside of the fence, and trod a path through the snow with their men, who were not quite 1500 in number. The Birkebeiners were dispersed here and there in other farms, a few men in each house. When they perceived King Magnus's army they assembled, and drew up in regular order; and as they thought their force was larger than his, which it actually was, they resolved to fight; but when they hurried forward to the road only a few could advance at a time, which broke their array, and the men fell who first advanced upon the beaten way. Then the Birkebeiners' banner was cut down; those who were nearest gave way, and some took to flight. King Magnus's men pursued them, and killed one after the other as they came up with them. Thus the Birkebeiners could never form themselves in array; and being exposed to the weapons of the enemy singly, many of them fell, and many fled. It happened here, as it often does, that although men be

CHAPTER  
XLII.  
The fall  
of King  
Eystein.



**SAGA XVI.** brave and gallant, if they have once been defeated and driven to flight, they will not easily be brought to turn round. Now the main body of the Birkebeiners began to fly, and many fell; because Magnus's men killed all they could lay hold of, and not one of them got quarter. The whole body became scattered far and wide. Eystein in his flight ran into a house, and begged for his life, and that the bonder would conceal him; but the bonder killed him, and then went to King Magnus, whom he found at Ramnes, where the king was in a room warming himself by the fire along with many people. Some went for the corpse, and bore it into the room, where the king told the people to come and inspect the body. A man was sitting on a bench in the corner, and he was a Birkebeiner, but nobody had observed him; and when he saw and recognised his chief's body he sprang up suddenly and actively, rushed out upon the floor, and with an axe he had in his hands made a blow at King Magnus's neck between the shoulders. A man saw the axe swinging, and pulled the king to a side, by which the axe struck lower in the shoulder, and made a large wound. He then raised the axe again, and made a blow at Orm the King-brother, who was lying on a bench, and the blow was directed at both his legs; but Orm, seeing the man about to kill him, drew in his feet instantly, threw them over his head, and the blow fell on the bench, in which the axe stuck fast; and then the blows at the Birkebeiner came so thick that he could scarcely fall to the ground. It was discovered that he had dragged his entrails after him over the floor; and this man's bravery was highly praised. King Magnus's men followed the fugitives, and killed so many that they were tired of it. Thorfinn of Snaas, and a very great number of Drontheim people, fell there.

The faction which called itself the Birkebeiners had gathered together in great numbers. They were a hardy people, and the boldest of men under arms; but wild, and going forward madly when they had a strong force. They had few men in their faction who were good counsellors, or accustomed to rule a country by law, or to head an army; and if there were such men among them who had more knowledge, yet the many would only allow of those measures which they liked, trusting always to their numbers and courage.\* Of the men who escaped many were wounded, and had lost both their clothes and their arms, and were altogether destitute of money. Some went east to the borders, some all the way east to Sweden; but the most of them went to Telemark, where they had their families. All took flight, as they had no hope of getting their lives from King Magnus or Earl Erling.

SAGA XVI.  
CHAPTER  
XLIII.  
Of the  
Birke-  
beiners.

King Magnus then returned to Tunsberg, and got great renown by this victory; for it had been an expression in the mouths of all, that Earl Erling was the shield and support of his son and himself. But

CHAPTER  
XLIV.  
Of King  
Magnus  
Erlingsson.

\* This faction of the Birkebeiners, of which the origin is here related by Snorro, became very celebrated under another leader, Swerrer, whom they raised to the throne upon a very doubtful title; and it was predominant for about ninety years, or until the death of Hakon Hakonson, in the affairs of Norway. Their opponents were called the Cowl-men at first, afterwards the Baglers; and the conflicts between these two factions occupy much of the interesting sagas of King Swerrer and his successors, for a century after the period at which Snorro's chronicle ends. They well deserve a translation, especially Swerrer's saga. The two factions, the Birkebeiners and Baglers, appear to have become at last the king's party and the church's party, in the contention for power between the state and the church which was carried on in every country of Europe in the 12th and 13th centuries. The Birkebeiners enabled King Swerrer to oppose the churchmen much more successfully than any contemporary sovereigns. These Birkebeiners, the vikings of the forest, were bred under him, and attached to him and his race alone.

**SAGA XVI.**        after gaining a victory over so strong and numerous a force with fewer troops, King Magnus was considered by all as surpassing other leaders, and that he would become a warrior as much greater than his father Earl Erling as he was younger.

END OF THE HEIMSKRINGLA.

## A P P E N D I X.



## APPENDIX.

---

APPENDIX.

IN 1697 Peringskiöld published the first edition of the "Heimskringla," with a Swedish and a Latin translation. The manuscripts which he used are not now extant, or are not known; but are considered by Icelandic scholars, from orthographical and other variations, not to have been ancient, nor faithful copies of the most ancient manuscripts. The edition commenced in 1777 by Schöning under the auspices of the Danish government, and finished 1826 by Thorlacius and Werlauf (the death of Schöning having suspended the publication), in six volumes folio, was formed from the collation of three ancient manuscripts in the Arnæi Magnæi Collection, and from Peringskiöld's edition. The following eight chapters are considered by the antiquaries an interpolation by the writer of the manuscript which Peringskiöld had before him, not being in the other three manuscripts extant; but they are admitted to be of an age prior to the end of the 14th century, being found verbatim in the "Codex Flatoyensis," which was written between 1387 and 1395 in the saga of Olaf Tryggvesson. If they were not used by Snorro Sturleson himself, the just inference is, not that they were of later date than his time, but that they were not materials connected with his work — with a chronicle of the kings of Norway. Where they are placed in Peringskiöld's "Heimskringla" they are evidently an interpolation, breaking the continuity of the story of Olaf Tryggvesson immediately after Chapter CIV. with new persons and events never recurring again, in a way which the natural tact and taste of Snorro never allow him to do. They are not the less remarkable as being certainly committed to writing between 1387 and 1395, and in Iceland, a century nearly before Columbus, in 1477, repaired to that country to obtain the nautical information on which he proceeded in his first voyage of discovery in 1492. The following are the eight chapters.

There are other interpolations in the manuscript from

APPENDIX. which Peringskiöld published his edition of the “Heimskringla”—such as the twentieth chapter of Harald Herdabreid’s saga, and the twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth of the saga of Sigurd, Inge, and Eystein, all containing miracles of Saint Olaf; and chapter 102. of Harald Haardrades’s saga, containing genealogies, and probably other passages concerning Saint Olaf’s sanctity; but as these are short, do not, like the eight chapters, break the continuity of narrative, and do not stand totally unconnected with what goes before or comes after, and with the personages in Snorro’s work, they are admitted into the body of the work in all the translations of the “Heimskringla.”

CHAPTER  
I.  
Of the  
voyage of  
Biarne the  
son of  
Heriulf.

Heriulf was a son of Bard Heriulfsson, who was a relation of Ingolf the landnaman.\* Ingolf gave Heriulf land between Vog and Reikaness. Heriulf dwelt first at Dropstock. His wife was called Thorgird, and their son was called Biarne. He was a promising young man. In his earliest youth he had a desire to go abroad, and he soon gathered property and reputation; and he was by turns a year abroad, and a year with his father. Biarne was soon possessor of a merchant ship of his own. The last winter, while he was in Norway, Heriulf prepared to go to Greenland with Eric, and gave up his dwelling. There was a Christian man belonging to the Hebudes along with Heriulf, who composed the lay called the Hafgerdingar† Song, in which is this stave:—

“ May He whose hand protects so well  
The simple monk in lonely cell,  
And o’er the world upholds the sky,  
His own blue hall, still stand me by !”

Heriulf settled at Heriulfsness‡, and became a very distinguished man. Eric Red took up his abode at Brattalid, and was in great consideration, and honoured by all. These were Eric’s children,—Leif, Thorvald, and Thorstein; and his daughter was called Freydis. She was married to a man

\* The original settlers in Iceland were called Landnamen.

† Hafgerding means the circle of high waves raised by currents in particular spots in the ocean.

‡ Heriulfsness, Brattalid, Gardar, are localities in Greenland not now known.

called Thorvald; and they dwelt at Gardar, which is now a bishop's seat. She was a haughty proud woman; and he was but a mean man. She was much given to gathering wealth. The people of Greenland were heathen at this time.

Biarne came the same summer with his ship to the strand\* which his father had sailed abroad from in spring. He was much struck with the news, and would not unload his vessel. When his crew asked him what he intended to do, he replied, that he was resolved to follow his old custom of taking up his winter abode with his father. "So I will steer for Greenland, if ye will go with me." They one and all agreed to go with him. Biarne said, "Our expedition will be thought foolish, as none of us have ever been on the Greenland sea before." Nevertheless they set out to sea as soon as they were ready, and sailed for three days, until they lost sight of the land they had left. But when the wind failed, a north wind with fog set in, and they knew not where they were sailing to; and this lasted many days. At last they saw the sun, and could distinguish the quarters of the sky; so they hoisted sail again, and sailed a whole day and night, when they made land. They spoke among themselves about what this land could be, and Biarne said that, in his opinion, it could not be Greenland. On the question, if he should sail nearer to it, he said, "It is my advice that we sail close up to this land." They did so; and they soon saw that the land was without mountains (felde), was covered with wood, and that there were small hills inland. They left the land on the larboard side, and had their sheet on the land side. Then they sailed two days and nights before they got sight of land again. They asked Biarne if he thought this would be Greenland; but he gave his opinion that this land was no more Greenland than the land they had seen before. "For on Greenland, it is said, there are great snow-mountains." They

\* Æyrar. This is not the name of a place,—for Heriulf dwelt in Iceland at a place called Dropstock,—but of a natural feature of ground; Eyri, still called an ayre in the Orkney Islands, being a flat sandy tongue of land, suitable for landing and drawing up boats upon. All ancient dwellings in those islands, and probably in Iceland also, are situated so as to have the advantage of this kind of natural wharf; and the spit of land called an ayre very often has a small lake or pond inside of it which shelters boats.



**APPENDIX.** soon came near to this land, and saw it was flat and covered with trees. Now, as the wind fell, the ship's people talked of its being advisable to make for the land; but Biarne would not agree to it. They thought they would need wood and water; but Biarne said, "Ye are not in want of either." And the men blamed him for this. He ordered them to hoist the sail, which was done. They now turned the ship's bow from the land, and kept the sea for three days and nights with a fine breeze from south-west. Then they saw a third land, which was high and mountainous, and with snowy mountains. Then they asked Biarne if he would land here; but he refused altogether. "For in my opinion this land is not what we want." Now they let the sails stand, and kept along the land, and saw it was an island. Then they turned from the land, and stood out to sea with the same breeze; but the gale increased, and Biarne ordered a reef to be taken in, and not to sail harder than the ship and her tackle could easily bear. After sailing three days and nights they made, the fourth time, land; and when they asked Biarne if he thought this was Greenland or not, Biarne replies, "This is most like what has been told me of Greenland; and here we shall take to the land." They did so, and came to the land in the evening under a ness, where they found a boat. On this ness dwelt Biarne's father Heriulf; and from that it is Heriulfsness. Biarne went to his father's, gave up sea-faring, and dwelt with his father Heriulf as long as he lived; and after his father's death continued to dwell there when at home.\*

**CHAPTER**  
**II.**  
**Of Leif**  
**Ericsson's**  
**discovery of**  
**land.**

It is next to be told that Biarne Heriulfsson came over from Greenland to Norway on a visit to Earl Eric, who received him well. Biarne tells of this expedition of his, on which he had discovered unknown lands; and people thought he had not been very curious to get knowledge, as he could not give any account of those countries, and he was somewhat blamed on this account. Biarne was made a court-man of the earl, and the summer after he went over to Greenland; and afterwards there was much talk about discovering un-

\* This voyage and discovery of America by Biarne Heriulfsson is supposed by the northern antiquaries to have taken place in the year 986.

known lands. Leif, a son of Eric Red of Brattalid, went over to Biarne Heriulfsson and bought the ship from him, and manned the vessel, so that in all there were thirty-five men on board. Leif begged his father Eric to go as commander of the expedition, but he excused himself; saying he was getting old, and not so able as formerly to undergo the hardships of a sea voyage. Leif insisted that he among all their relations was the most likely to have good luck on such an expedition: and Eric consented, and rode from home with Leif when they had got all ready for sea; but when they were coming near to the ship the horse on which Eric was riding stumbled, and he fell from the horse and hurt his foot. "It is not destined," said Eric, "that I should discover more lands than this of Greenland, on which we dwell and live; and now we must not run hastily into this adventure." Eric accordingly returned home to Brattalid; but Leif, with his comrades, in all thirty-five men, rigged out their vessel. There was a man from the South country called Tyrker with the expedition. They put the ship in order, and went to sea when they were ready. They first came to the land which Biarne had last discovered, sailed up to it, cast anchor, put out a boat, and went on shore; but there was no grass to be seen. There were huge snowy mountains up the country; but all the way from the sea up to these snowy ridges the land was one field of snow, and it appeared to them a country of no advantages. Leif said, "It shall not be said of us, as it was of Biarne, that we did not come upon the land; for I will give the country a name, and call it Helloland.\* Then they went on board again, put to sea, and found another land. They sailed in towards it, cast anchor, put out a boat, and landed. The country was flat and overgrown with wood; and the strand far around consisted of a white sand, and low towards the sea. Then Leif said, "We shall give this land a name according to its kind, and call it Markland."† Then they hastened on board, and put to sea again with an on-shore wind from north-east, and were out for two days, and made land. They sailed towards it, and came to an island which

\* Helloland is a naked land of rocks—Hellr.

† Markland, a wooded country. Mark is the woodland of a farm. The antiquaries consider Helloland to have been Newfoundland, and Markland some part of Nova Scotia, from the description.

APPENDIX. lay on the north side of the land, where they landed to wait for good weather. There was dew upon the grass; and having accidentally got some of the dew upon their hands and put it to their mouths, they thought they had never tasted any thing so sweet as it was. Then they went on board, and sailed into a sound that was between the island and a ness which went out northwards from the land, and sailed west past the ness. There was very shallow water in ebb-tide, so that their ship lay dry; and there was a long way between their ship and the water. They were so desirous to get to the land that they would not wait till their vessel floated, but ran to the land, to a place where a river comes out of a lake. As soon as their ship was afloat, they took the boats, rowed to the ship, towed her up the river, and from thence into the lake, where they cast anchor, carried their beds out of the ship, and set up their tents. They resolved to put things in order for wintering there, and they erected a large house. They did not want for salmon, both in the river and in the lake; and they thought the salmon larger than any they had ever seen before. The country appeared to them of so good a kind, that it would not be necessary to gather fodder for the cattle for the winter. There was no frost in winter, and the grass was not much withered. Day and night were more equal than in Greenland or Iceland; for on the shortest day the sun was in the sky between the Eyktarstad and the Dagmalastad. Now when they were ready with their house-building, Leif said to his fellow-travellers, "Now I will divide the crew into two divisions, and explore the country: half shall stay at home and do the work, and the other half shall search the land; but so that they do not go farther than that they can come back in the evening, and that they do not wander from each other." This they continued to do for some time. Leif changed about, sometimes with them, and sometimes with those at home. Leif was a stout and strong man, and of manly appearance; and he was besides a prudent sagacious man in all respects.

CHAPTER  
III.  
Leif win-  
ters in this  
country,  
and calls it

It happened one evening that a man of the party was missing; and it was the South-country man, Tyrker. Leif was very sorry for it; because Tyrker had been long in his father's house, and he loved Tyrker in his childhood. Leif

blamed his comrades very much, and prepared to go with twelve men on an expedition to find him; but they had gone only a short way from the station before Tyrker came to meet them, and he was joyfully received. Leif soon perceived that his foster-father was merry. Tyrker had a high forehead, sharp eyes, with a small face, and was little in size and ugly; but was very dexterous in all feats. Leif said to him, "Why art thou so late, my foster-father? and why didst thou leave thy comrades?" He spoke at first long in Turkish\*, rolled his eyes, and knit his brows; but they could not make out what he was saying. After a while and some delay, he said in Norse, "I did not go much farther than they; and yet I have something altogether new to relate, for I found vines and grapes." "Is that true, my foster-father?" said Leif. "Yes, true it is," answered he; "for I was born where there is no scarcity of vines and grapes." Now they slept all night, and next morning Leif said to his men, "Now we have two occupations to attend to, and day about; namely, to gather grapes or cut vines, and to fell wood in the forest to load our vessel." And this advice was followed. It is related that their stern-boat was filled with grapes, and then a cargo of wood was hewn for the vessel. There was also self-sown wheat in the fields, and a tree which is called Massur. Of all these they took samples; and some of the trees were so large that they were used in houses. Towards spring they made ready and sailed away; and Leif gave the country a name from its productions, and called it Vinland. They put to sea, and had a favourable breeze until they came in sight of Greenland and the fields below the snow-covered mountain range. Then one of the men said to Leif, "Why do you bear away so much?" Leif replied, "I mind my helm, but I attend to other things too: do you see nothing strange?" He answered that he saw nothing to speak of. "I

## APPENDIX.

Vinland;  
then sails  
home to  
Greenland,  
and rescues  
shipwreck-  
ed men.

\* Thyrsko the language, and the man's name Tyrker, must mean that the man and the language were Turkish; that is, Hungarian, or from Constantinople. The Teutonic or German could not have been a foreign and unknown language; and would have been called Saxon (Saxneskr), not Thyrskr. The communications with Constantinople through the Northmen in the Væringers' corps, would make it as likely that a native of those eastern countries should be in Greenland, as that a native of the south of Germany should be there.

**APPENDIX.** don't know," said Leif, "whether it be a ship or a rock I see there." Then they all looked, and said it was a rock. But he saw so much sharper than they did, that he could distinguish people upon the rock. "Now I will put the vessel before the wind," says Leif, "so that we may get close to them, in case they are people who want to meet us and need our help; and if they are not men of peace, it is in our power to do as we please, and not in theirs." Now they came up to the rock, let down the sail, cast anchor, and put out another little boat which they had with them. Then Tyrker hailed them, and asked who was the commander of these people. He called himself Thorer, and said he was a Norwegian. "And what," said he, "is your name?" Leif told his name. "Are you a son of Eric Red of Brattalid?" Leif replied it was so. "And now," said Leif, "I invite you all to come on board my ship, with all your goods that the vessel can stow." They accepted the offer; and then they sailed to Ericsfiord, and until they came to Brattalid, where they discharged the cargo. Leif offered Thorer and his wife Gudrid, and three others, lodging with himself, and found lodging elsewhere for the rest of the people, both of Thorer's crew and his own. Leif took fifteen men from the rock, and was thereafter called Leif the Lucky. After that time Leif advanced greatly in wealth and consideration. That winter a sickness came among Thorer's people, and he himself and a great part of his crew died. The same winter Eric Red also died. This expedition to Vinland was much talked of; and Leif's brother Thorvald thought that the country had not been explored enough in different places. Then Leif said to Thorvald, "You may go, brother, in my ship to Vinland if you like; but I will first send the ship for the timber which Thorer left upon the rock." And so it was done.

**CHAPTER**  
**IV.**  
**Of Thor-**  
**vald Erics-**  
**son, Leif's**  
**brother;**  
**and of the**  
**Skræ-**  
**lingers.**

Now Thorvald made ready for his voyage with thirty men, after consulting his brother Leif. They rigged their ship, and put to sea. Nothing is related of this expedition until they came to Vinland, to the booths put up by Leif, where they secured the ship and tackle, and remained quietly all winter, and lived by fishing. In spring Thorvald ordered the vessel to be rigged, and that some men should proceed in the long-boat westward along the coast, and explore it during the

summer. They thought the country beautiful and well wooded, the distance small between the forest and the sea, and the strand full of white sand. There were also many islands, and very shallow water. They found no abode for man or beast; but upon an island far towards the west they found a corn-barn constructed of wood. They found no other trace of human work, and came back in autumn to Leif's booths. The following spring Thorvald with his merchant ship proceeded eastwards, and towards the north along the land. Opposite to a cape they met bad weather, and drove upon the land and broke their keel, and remained there a long time to repair the vessel. Thorvald said to his comrades, "We will stick up the keel here upon the ness, and call the place Keelness\*;" which they did. Then they sailed away eastward along the country, which was every where covered with wood. They moored the vessel to the land, laid out gangways to the shore, and Thorvald with all his ship's company landed. He said, "Here it is beautiful, and I would willingly set up my farm here." They afterwards went on board, and saw three specks upon the sand within the point, and went to them, and found these were three skin-boats, with three men under each boat. They divided their men, and took all of them prisoners except one man, who escaped with his boat. They killed eight of them, and then went to the point and looked about them. Within this fiord they saw several eminences, which they took to be habitations. Then a heavy drowsiness came upon them, and they could not keep themselves awake, but all of them fell asleep. A sudden scream came to them, and they all awoke; and mixed with the scream they thought they heard the words, "Awake, Thorvald, with all thy comrades, if ye will save your lives. Go on board your ship as fast as you can, and leave this land without delay." In the same moment an innumerable multitude from the interior of the fiord came in skin-boats, and laid themselves alongside. Then said Thorvald, "We shall put up our war-screens along the gunwales, and defend ourselves as well as we can; but not use our weapons much against them." They did so accordingly. The Skrælingers

APPENDIX.

\* Kiolrness is supposed by the antiquaries to be the present Cape Cod.

APPENDIX. shot at them for a while, and then made off as fast as they could wherever they saw the way was open to fly. Then Thorvald asked if any one was wounded, and they said nobody was hurt. He said, "I have got a wound under the arm. An arrow flew between the gunwale and the shield under my arm: here is the arrow, and it will be my death-wound. Now I advise you to make ready with all speed to return; but ye shall carry me up to the point which I thought would be so convenient for a dwelling. It may be that it was true what I said, that here I would dwell for a while. Ye shall bury me there, and place a cross at my head and another at my feet, and call the place Crossness."\* Christianity had been established in Greenland at this time; but Eric Red was dead before Christianity was introduced. Now Thorvald died, and they did every thing as he had ordered. Then they went away in search of their fellow-travellers; and they related to each other all the news. They remained in their dwelling all winter, and gathered vines and grapes, and put them on board their ships. Towards spring they prepared to return to Greenland, where they arrived with their vessel, and landed at Ericsfiord, bringing heavy tidings to Leif.

CHAPTER  
V.  
Of Thorstein Erics-  
son, Leif's  
brother,  
and his  
voyage to  
Vinland.

In the meantime it had happened in Greenland that Thorstein of Ericsfiord had married, and taken to wife Gudrid, the daughter of Thorbiorn, who had been married, as before related, to Thorer the Northman. Thorstein Erics-son bethought him now that he would go to Vinland for his brother Thorvald's body. He rigged out the same vessel, and chose an able and stout crew. He had with him twenty-five men, and his wife Gudrid; and as soon as they were ready he put to sea, and they lost sight of land. They drove about on the ocean the whole summer, without knowing where they were; and in the first week of winter† they landed at Lysefiord in Greenland, in the western settlement. Thorstein looked for lodgings for his men, and got his whole ship's crew accommodated, but not himself and his wife; so that for some nights they had to sleep on board. At that time Christianity was but young in Greenland. One day, early in the morning, some men came

\* Crossness is supposed by the antiquaries who find nothing but truth in this saga to be Gurnet Point.

† The Icelanders reckoned winter from the first Saturday after the 20th of October.

to their tent, and the leader asked them what people were in the tent. Thorstein replies, "Two: who is it that inquires?" "Thorstein," was the reply; "and I am called Thorstein the Black, and it is my errand here to offer thee and thy wife lodging beside me." Thorstein said he would speak to his wife about it; and as she gave her assent, he agreed to it. "Then I shall come for you to-morrow with my yoke, for I do not want means to entertain you; but few care to live in my house, for I and my wife live lonely, and I am very melancholy. I have also a different religion from yours, although I think the one you have the best." Now the following morning he came for them with horses; and they took up their abode with Thorstein Black, who was very friendly towards them. Gudrid had a good outward appearance, and was knowing, and understood well how to behave with strangers. Early in winter a sickness prevailed among Thorstein Ericsson's people, and many of his fellow-travellers died. He ordered that coffins should be made for the bodies of the dead, and that they should be brought on board, and stowed carefully. "For I will transport all the bodies to Ericsfiord in summer." It was not long before sickness broke out also in Thorstein Black's house; and his wife, who was called Grimhild, fell sick first. She was very stout, and as strong as a man, but yet she could not bear up against the illness. Soon after Thorstein Ericsson also fell sick, and they both lay ill in bed at the same time; but Grimhild, Thorstein Black's wife, died first. When she was dead Thorstein went out of the room for a skin to lay over the corpse. Then Gudrid said, "My dear Thorstein, be not long away;" which he promised. Then said Thorstein Ericsson, "Our goodwife is wonderful; for she raises herself up with her elbows, moves herself forward over the bed-frame, and is feeling for her shoes." In the same moment Thorstein the goodman came back, and instantly Grimhild laid herself down, so that it made every beam that was in the house crack. Thorstein now made a coffin for Grimhild's corpse, removed it outside, and buried it. He was a stout and strong man, but it required all his strength to remove the corpse from the house. Now Thorstein Ericsson's illness increased upon him, and he died, which Gudrid his wife took with great grief. They were all in the room, and Gudrid had set



## APPENDIX.

herself upon a stool before the bench on which her husband Thorstein's body lay. Now Thorstein the goodman took Gudrid from the stool in his arms, and set himself with her upon a bench just opposite to Thorstein's body, and spoke much with her. He consoled her, and promised to go with her in summer to Ericsfiord, with her husband Thorstein's corpse, and those of his fellow-travellers. "And," said he, "I shall take with me many servants to console and assist." She thanked him for this. Thorstein Ericsson then raised himself up and said, "Where is Gudrid?" And thrice he said this; but she was silent. Then she said to Thorstein the goodman, "Shall I give answer or not?" He told her not to answer. Then went Thorstein the goodman across the room, and sat down in a chair, and Gudrid set herself on his knee; and Thorstein the goodman said, "What wilt thou make known?" After a while the corpse replies, "I wish to tell Gudrid her fate beforehand, that she may be the better able to bear my death; for I have come to a blessed resting-place. And this I have now to tell thee, Gudrid, that thou wilt be married to an Iceland man, and ye will live long together; and from you will descend many men, brave, gallant, and wise, and a well-pleasing race of posterity. Ye shall go from Greenland to Norway, and from thence to Iceland, where ye shall dwell. And long will ye live together, but thou wilt survive him; and then thou shalt go abroad, and go southwards, and shalt return to thy home in Iceland. And there must be a church built, and thou must remain there, and be consecrated a nun, and there end thy days." And then Thorstein sunk backwards, and his corpse was put in order and carried to the ship. Thorstein the goodman held all that he had promised. He sold in spring his land and cattle, and went with Gudrid and all her goods; made ready the ship, got men for it, and then went to Ericsfiord. The body was buried at the church. Gudrid went to Leif's at Brattalid; and Thorstein the Black took his abode in Ericsfiord, and dwelt there as long as he lived; and he was reckoned an able man.

CHAPTER  
VI.  
Of Thorfinn  
Karlsefne.  
How he  
went to Vin-

That same summer came a ship from Norway to Greenland. The man was called Thorfinn Karlsefne who steered the ship. He was a son of Thord Hesthöfde, a son of Snorro Thordarson from Hofda. Thorfinn Karlsefne was a man of

great wealth, and was in Brattalid with Leif Ericsson. Soon he fell in love with Gudrid and courted her, and she referred to Leif to answer for her. Afterwards she was betrothed to him, and their wedding was held the same winter. At this time, as before, much was spoken about a Vinland voyage; and both Gudrid and others persuaded Karlsefne much to that expedition. Now his expedition was resolved upon, and he got ready a crew of sixty men and five women; and then they made the agreement, Karlsefne and his people, that each of them should have equal share in what they made of gain. They had with them all kinds of cattle\*, having the

APPENDIX.

land; and of the Skrælingers.

\* The most surprising circumstance in this saga, and which throws a shade over the credibility of the whole of it, is the account of the cattle which Karlsefne and Gudrid took with them. That they would take live cattle with them, whether they intended to settle in Vinland or not, — as where salt was scarce it would be the easiest way of carrying meat for a short time, — is not improbable, provided they had the cattle to take. But that cattle could have been kept in the old colony of Greenland, is the improbable circumstance. De Fries, Mr. Arne, Mr. Kielsen, and all who describe the remains of the buildings and settlements of the ancient colonists along the fiords, concur in observing, that there is little or no grass — that the ground is either a bare thin layer of peat-mould upon sand, and totally barren; or is covered with naked stones, small or great, without any vegetation; or is overgrown with dwarf willow (*vidiekraut*), and a brush of low juniper and berry-bearing shrubs; and all about the ruins of the houses nothing but this brush-wood is found. They are careful in telling of every appearance of grass they meet with. In the present settlements it is understood that very few cattle can be kept for want of provender. A few were kept at Igalikko fiord by a retired merchant in 1830, but it is a solitary case. In that latitude, with a winter of nine months, a large stock of provender is required to keep cattle; and from the nature of the soil and country, grass for pasture and hay does not appear to exist — although in Iceland it is produced in some abundance. In the month of August even the missionaries (see *Nordisk Tidskrift for Oldkyndighed*, 1834) seem never to have met with so much grass, even where there were remains of twelve or fourteen houses together, as would have kept a cow for a couple of days. How could Karlsefne have taken "cattle of all kinds" with him, and provender for them, at the end of a long winter, from any locality in Greenland? No bones of cattle have ever been discovered in the country, although human bones, fish bones, and ruins of houses have been found. This is a very awkward discrepancy between the saga account and the actual nature of the country. It looks as if the saga-relator was applying his ideas formed on Iceland, where cattle and food for them are not scarce, to a country by nature so totally different as Greenland, and that he did not know of the difference.

**APPENDIX.** intention to settle in the land if they could. Karlsefne asked Leif for his houses in Vinland, and he said he would lend them, but not give them. Then they put to sea with the ship, and came to Leif's houses safe, and carried up their goods. They soon had in hand a great and good prize; for a whale had driven on shore, both large and excellent. They went to it and cut it up, and had no want of food. Their cattle went up into the land; but soon they were unruly, and gave trouble to them. They had one bull with them. Karlsefne let wood be felled and hewed for shipping it, and had it laid on a rock to dry. They had all the good of the products of the land which were there,—both grapes, and wood, and other products. After that first winter, and when summer came, they were aware of Skrælingers being there; and a great troop of men came out of the woods. The cattle were near to them, and the bull began to bellow and roar very loud, and with that the Skrælingers were frightened, and made off with their bundles,—and these were of furs, and sables, and all sorts of skins; and they turned to Karlsefne's habitation, and wanted to go into the houses, but Karlsefne defended the doors. Neither party understood the language of the other. Then the Skrælingers took their bundles and opened them, and offered them, and wanted to have weapons in exchange for them; but Karlsefne forbade his men to sell weapons. And then he took this plan with them, that he told the women to bear out milk and dairy products to them; and when they saw these things they would buy them, and nothing else. And now the trade for the Skrælingers was such, that they carried away their winnings in their stomachs; and Karlsefne and his comrades got both their bags and skin-goods, and so they went away. And now it is to be told that Karlsefne let a good strong fence be made round the habitation, and strengthened it for defence. At this time Gudrid, Karlsefne's wife, lay in of a male child, and the child was called Snorro. In the beginning of the next winter came the Skrælingers again to them, and in much greater numbers than before, and with the same kind of wares. Then said Karlsefne to the women, "Now ye shall carry out the same kind of food as was best liked the last time, and nothing else." And when they saw that, they threw their bundles in over the fence: and Gudrid sat in the

door within, by the cradle of Snorro her son. Then came a shadow to the door, and a woman went in with a black kirtle on, rather short, with a snood around her head; clear yellow hair; pale; with large eyes, so large that no one ever saw such eyes in a human head. She went to where Gudrid was sitting, and said, "What art thou called?" "I am called Gudrid; and what art thou called?" "I am called Gudrid," said she. Then the goodwife Gudrid put out her hand to her, that she might sit down beside her. And at the same time Gudrid heard a great noise, and the woman had vanished; and at the same moment one of the Skrælingers was killed by one of Karlsefne's housemen, because he was about to take one of their weapons; and they made off as fast as possible, leaving behind them clothes and goods. No one had seen this woman but Gudrid. "Now," says Karlsefne, "we must be cautious, and take counsel; for I think they will come the third time with hostility and many people. We shall now take the plan, that ten men go out to that ness and show themselves there, and the rest of our men shall go into the woods, and make a clearance for our cattle against the time the enemy comes out of the forest; and we shall take the bull before us, and let him go in front." And it happened so that at the place they were to meet there was a lake on the one side, and the forest on the other. The plan which Karlsefne had laid down was adopted. The Skrælingers came to the place where Karlsefne proposed to fight; and there was a battle there, and many of the Skrælingers fell. There was one stout and handsome man among the Skrælingers' people, and Karlsefne thought that he must be their chief. One of the Skrælingers had taken up an axe and looked at it a while, and wielded it against one of his comrades, and cut him down, so that he fell dead instantly. Then the stout man took the axe, looked at it a while, and threw it into the sea as far as he could. They then fled to the forest as fast as they could, and so closed the battle. Karlsefne remained there with his men the whole winter; but towards spring he made known that he would not stay there longer, and would return to Greenland. Now they prepared for their voyage, and they took much goods from thence, — vines, grapes, and skin wares. They put to sea, and their ship came safe to Ericsfiord, and they were there for the winter.

## APPENDIX.

CHAPTER  
VII.

Of Freydis,  
Eric's  
daughter,  
and her  
voyage to  
Vinland,  
and her  
misdeeds.

Now the conversation began again to turn upon a Vinland voyage, as the expedition was both gainful and honourable. The same summer that Karlsefne returned from Vinland, a ship arrived in Greenland from Norway. Two brothers commanded the ship, Helge and Finboge; and they remained that winter in Greenland. The brothers were of Icelandic descent, from Eastfiord. It is now to be told that Freydis, Eric's daughter, came home from Garde, and went to the abode of Helge and Finboge, and proposed to them that they should go to Vinland with their vessel, and have half with her of all the goods they could get there. They agreed to this. Then she went to the abode of her brother Leif, and asked him to give her the houses he had built in Vinland; and he answered as before, that he would lend, but not give the houses. It was agreed upon between the brothers and Freydis that each should have thirty fighting men, besides women. But Freydis broke this, and had five men more, and concealed them; and the brothers knew nothing of this until they arrived in Vinland. They went to sea, and had agreed beforehand that they should sail in company, if they could do so: and the difference was but little, although the brothers came a little earlier, and had carried up their baggage to Leif's houses. And when Freydis came to the land, her people cleared the ship, and carried her baggage also up to the house. Then said Freydis, "Why are ye carrying your things in here?" "Because we thought," said they, "that the whole of the agreement with us should be held." She said, "Leif lent the house to me, not to you." Then said Helge, "In evil we brothers cannot strive with thee;" and bore out their luggage, and made a shed, and built it farther from the sea on the borders of a lake, and set all about it in good order. Freydis let trees be cut down for her ship's cargo. Now winter set in, and the brothers proposed to have some games for amusement, and to pass the time. So it was done for a time till discord came among them, and the games were given up, and none went from the one house to the other; and things went on so during a great part of the winter. It happened one morning that Freydis got out of her berth, and put on her clothes, but not her shoes; and the weather was such that much dew had fallen. She took the cloak of her husband over her, and went out, and went to the house of the brothers, and to the

door. A man had gone out a little before, and left the door behind him half shut. She opened the door, and stood in the doorway a little, and was silent. Finboge lay the farthest inside in the hut, and was awake. He said, "What wilt thou have here, Freydis?" She said, "I want thee to get up and go out with me, for I would speak with thee." He did so. They went to a tree that was lying under the eaves of the hut, and sat down. "How dost thou like this place?" said she. He said, "The country, methinks, is good; but I do not like this quarrel that is come among us, for I think there is no cause for it." "Thou art right," says she, "and I think so too; and it is my errand to thy dwelling that I want to buy the ship of you brothers, as your ship is larger than mine, and I would break up from hence." "I will let it be so," said he, "if that will please thee." Now they parted so, and she went home, and Finboge to his bed. She went up into her berth, and with her cold feet wakened Thorvald, who asked why she was so cold and wet. She answered with great warmth, "I went to these brothers," says she, "to treat about their ship, for I want a larger ship; and they took it so ill that they struck and abused me. And thou, useless man! wilt neither avenge my affront nor thy own; and now must I feel that I am away from Greenland, but I will separate from thee if thou dost not avenge this." And now he could not bear her reproaches, and told his men to rise as fast as possible and take their weapons. They did so, and went to the tents of the brothers, and went in as they all lay asleep and seized them all, and bound them, and led them out bound, one after the other; and Freydis had each of them put to death as he came out. Now all the men were killed; but the women were left, and nobody would kill them. Then said Freydis, "Give me an axe in my hand." This was done, and she turned on those five women, and did not give over till they were all dead. Now they returned to their own huts after this evil deed; and people could only observe that Freydis thought she had done exceedingly well; and she said to her comrades, "If it be our lot to return to Greenland, I shall take the life of the man who speaks of this affair; and we shall say that we left them here when we went away." Now they got ready the ship early in spring which had belonged to the brothers, with all the goods they could get, or that the ship could carry, sailed

APPENDIX. out to sea, and had a good voyage; and the ship came early in summer to Ericsfiord. Karlsefne was there still, and had his ship ready for sea, but waited a wind; and it was a common saying, that never had a richer ship sailed from Greenland than that which he steered. Freydis went home now to her house, which had stood without damage in the mean time. She bestowed many gifts on her followers that they might conceal her wickedness; and she remained now on her farm. All were not so silent about their misdeed and wickedness, that something did not come up about it. This came at last to the ears of Leif her brother, and he thought this report was very bad. Leif took three men of Freydis's followers, and tortured them to speak, and they acknowledged the whole affair, and their tales agreed together. "I do not care," says Leif, "to treat my sister Freydis as she deserves; but this I will foretell of them, that their posterity will never thrive." And it went so that nobody thought any thing of them but evil from that time.

CHAPTER  
VIII.  
Of Thor-  
finn Karl-  
sefne and  
his descen-  
dants.

Now we have to say that Karlsefne got ready his ship and sailed out to sea. He came on well, and reached Norway safely, and remained there all winter and sold his wares; and he and his wife were held in esteem by the most considerable people in Norway. Now in the following spring he fitted out his ship for Iceland; and when he was quite ready, and his ship lay outside the pier waiting a wind, there came to him a South-country man from Bremen in Saxonland, who would deal with him for his house-besom.\* "I will not sell it," said he. "I will give thee a half mark of gold for it," said the South-country man. Karlsefne thought it was a good offer, and sold it accordingly. The South-country man went away with the house-bar, and Karlsefne did not know what the wood was. It was massur-wood from Vinland. Now Karlsefne put to sea, and his ship came to land north at Skagafjord, and there he put up his vessel for the winter. In spring he purchased Glambæirland, where he took up his abode, and dwelt there as long as he lived, and was a man of

\* Husasnotrn is translated house-besom, the exact meaning of the word not being known. A besom shaft would be too small, however rare the wood, to be made into any thing. The bar for securing the house-door was as common and necessary in every house, and is probably meant.

great consideration; and many men are descended from him and his wife Gudrid, and it was a good family. When Karlsefne died Gudrid took the management of his estate, and Snorro her son, who was born in Vinland. And when Snorro was married Gudrid went out of the country, and went to the south, and came back again to Snorro's estate, and he had built a church at Glambæ. Afterwards Gudrid became a nun, and lived a hermit-life, and did so as long as she lived. Snorro had a son called Thorgeir, who was father to Bishop Brand's mother Ingveld. The daughter of Snorro Karlsefnesson was called Halfrid. She was mother of Runolf, the father of Bishop Thorlak. Karlsefne and Gudrid had a son also called Biorn. He was father of Thoruna, the mother of Bishop Biorn. Many people are descended from Karlsefne, and his kin have been lucky; and Karlsefne has given the most particular accounts of all these travels of which here something is related.

APPENDIX.  
—





## **ADDITIONAL NOTES.**



## ADDITIONAL NOTES.

---

### I.

### NOTES.

---

THE most learned Scandinavian antiquaries of our times have ascertained to their own satisfaction that three distinct populations have inhabited the North: — a Mongolian race, of which the type is to be found in the Laplander, the Samoeid, the Esquimaux; a Celtic race; and a Caucasian race which, almost within the limits of northern history, came from Asia, drove out or extirpated the Celtic and Laplandic races, and are the present inhabitants. It appears that Professors Rask and Petersen come to this conclusion on philological and mythological grounds; Professors Molbech, Nilsson, and Finn Magnusen come to the same conclusion on archæological grounds, from the relics of the former inhabitants, their arms, utensils, and ornaments, discovered from time to time, and collected in museums.\* The mythological grounds, — that is, the similarity of worship and belief in religion, — are the least conclusive, perhaps; because in all natural religions, and in all superstitions, there is a common principle — an attempt to express a sentiment common to all races of rational men, it being part and parcel of mind itself: viz. a sentiment of divine power. This innate movement of mind common to all creatures endowed with mind, however imperfectly developed, must produce very striking analogies between the religious ideas and worship of men living in the most widely-separated corners of the earth; but these analogies do not prove that these populations have had any connection or communication with each other in some distant age, but only that the human mind every where, and in all ages, is labouring to express a sentiment common to all men; and, excepting where the revealed religion of the Gospel has penetrated, with only the same means to express it. It is thus that Budha or Vudha, and Wodin or Odin, appear to

\* See *Runamo og Runerne ved Finn Magnusen*. Kiøbenhavn, 1841, p. 534.

## NOTES.

have mythological analogies and connection of some obscure kind; but it is not the connection of the one mythology being derived from the other, but that of both springing from a common root in the mind of man, and which makes them therefore necessarily alike. The philological researches give more distinct results. When we find words significant in the Laponic or Celtic languages used as names of places, or of natural objects, in situations far removed from the known seats of those races, we may reasonably infer that at some unknown period those races have been the original occupants of the country. Thus the word "trask" is used in the island of Gotland in the Baltic, as well as in Lapland itself, to denote a small lake; and the word belongs to the Laponic, not to the Gothic or Celtic languages. The words "Ben," "Tind," and others, applied to mountains of peculiar size or shape in the district of Bergen, as well as in Wales or in the Highlands of Scotland, where the words are significant of the peculiar feature of country, are of some weight in proving a former occupancy by a Celtic race, who have given names to localities adopted by their successors. The word "tarn," used for a small mountain lake in Cumberland and Northumberland, is used in the same sense in Norway; and would have some weight, if historical proof were wanting, in showing that, at some period, people speaking the Norwegian tongue occupied the land. The archæological antiquaries, without reference to any theory derived from mythology or from languages, have found that their subjects of study, the relics of antiquity, naturally fall into three divisions:—that of an age prior to the use of metals in arms or utensils, when bone and stone were the materials used; and in that age burning appears to have been the way of disposing of the dead, less perhaps from any observance connected with religion, than from the want of metal tools to dig the soil with so as to inter the dead;—that of an age when bronze was used in arms and utensils, that is, a mixture of metals to give hardness to copper or other soft metals; and in which age the use of stone for hammers, arrow-points, or spear-heads, was still mixed with the use of metals;—and lastly, an age when iron was applied to these purposes, although bronze, and even stone and bone, were still in use, from the want, no doubt, of a sufficient supply of iron, and from the great consumpt of it in mis-

sile weapons. Although dates cannot be assigned to these three ages, and they run into each other, yet the mass of relics of ancient times so clearly falls into these three divisions, that the Museum of Northern Antiquities at Copenhagen is divided and arranged upon this principle, and with the fullest approbation of the learned antiquaries of the North. The division coincides with and confirms the results of the mythological and philological researches. These epochs, however, are beyond the pale of chronology. The successions only, as in those of geological science, can be made out with considerable probability. The date cannot be affixed even to the beginning of the last inhabitation by the iron-using Caucasian race — the followers of Odin from Asia. Phrenological science, perhaps, or that branch of it called craniology, might be applied with advantage to discover if the skulls, or other human remains, found in the oldest depositaries, in which articles of stone or bone only have been found, belong to the Mongolian, viz. the Laponic or Celtic, or to the Caucasian, viz. the Gothic type. The difference would be as evident as between the skulls of the African and American races. But as burning must of necessity have been the general mode of disposing of the dead when iron tools for digging were rare, undoubted specimens of human skeletons of the times when stone, bone, or even bronze were only used, must be scarce. The Jettestuer (jette or giant rooms) found in Jutland, and all over the North, are by many ascribed to an age prior to the general use of metals, or at least of iron, the articles found in them being of stone, bone, or of bronze, — rarely, if ever, of iron; and burnt bones or ashes indicating that they belong to an age when the dead were burnt before interment. These Jettestuer appear to be identical with what are called Picts' houses in the north of Scotland; viz. small chambers constructed of stones laid rudely together, so as to contain a small round space covered with a single flag-stone, and sufficient to hold the ashes, but not the entire bodies of the dead. They are numerous in the three northern counties of Scotland; and, from ashes and burnt earth being found in them, are supposed by the common people to have been the dwellings of a pigmy race called Pechts or Picts. They deserve the investigation of the antiquary, and a comparison with the Jettestuer of

## NOTES.

Jutland. The antiquary might thereby throw some light upon the disputed question, whether the Picts were a Celtic or Gothic people; and whether the Picts were not a race who had expelled a still older race, the Laponic, and had themselves been extirpated by a Caucasian or Gothic race, the followers of Odin. This last succession of inhabitants in Scandinavia is evidently an historical event, although wanting an historical date, and to us only mythological. Manners, customs, laws, and religious and social institutions, existing in Iceland, yet evidently derived from and more adapted to a people in the plains of Asia, and by tradition and religious belief received through their Scandinavian ancestors from Asia, must surely be of Asiatic origin, although the date of the migration from the original seat of those manners, customs, and institutions cannot be assigned. How could the symbolical use of horse-flesh at religious festivals be an observance in Iceland or Norway, where the horse is, from the climate, not in such numbers as to have ever been slaughtered for food, if not a religious ordinance in commemoration of an original country in which the horse was generally used for food? How could the great and connected mass of tradition and mythology, all referring to an Asiatic origin and home, have arisen in Norway, Sweden, and Iceland, if not founded upon some real event and connection? The event itself is probably not so far distant from historical times as antiquaries imagine. The account which Snorro gives in the fifth chapter of the *Ynglinga Saga*, and also in the *Edda* attributed to him, of Odin having been driven northwards by the increasing power of the Romans in the countries in which he originally lived, may not be so wide of the true date, nor so much too near times of well-ascertained historical truth, as many antiquaries suppose. Torfæus, reckoning upon extravagant assumptions of longevity in the genealogies given in the *Saga*, supposes in his history of Norway that Odin came to Scandinavia in the time of Darius Hydaspes, about 520 years before the Christian æra. But in his "*Series Regum et Dynastarum Daniæ*," lib. iii. cap. 2., he reckons back from Harald Haarfager, who was born 853, to Odin, twenty-six generations, son succeeding father, and allows thirty-five years to each generation, which brings Odin to about fifty-seven years before the Christian æra. He is obliged, therefore, to sup-

pose another Odin or two to have flourished 500 or 1000 years earlier; and by assuming that King On or Ane, of whom the Ynglinga Saga makes mention in the twenty-ninth chapter, reached the age of 210 years, he stretches his genealogical chronology far enough. But twenty-six reigns, son succeeding father,—and the reigns are all we know of these mythological personages, or rather the names only,—never did follow each other in this unquiet world; and an average of thirty-five years for human life, during twenty-six generations, would not accord with any experience or calculation of human life. The Odin of Snorro lived, as he tells us distinctly in the Edda, about the time when the Romans under Pompey ravaged Asia. In Florus, lib. iii. cap. 4., we find that Lucullus in this war with Mithridates, came “ad terminum gentium Tanaim lacumque Mæotim.” This was about 70 years before Christ. None of the genealogical deductions admit even of so ancient a date. If we take the Saxon genealogies, we find Cerdic called the ninth in descent from Woden, and he lived about the year 495; Ida was called the tenth in descent, and he lived about 547; and Ella was called the eleventh, and he lived about 560. If we even adopt the extravagant supposition that these descents were not of reign succeeding reign in turbulent unsettled times, but of son succeeding father uninterruptedly, and each living thirty-five years on an average, we bring Odin down to between 175 and 197 years after our æra. If we value these mythological genealogies in years according to any rational principle, we must take some fixed point in chronology, and from it upwards to the end of the doubtful mythological, and to the beginning of the certain historical reigns, take the average duration of reigns, and from the same point downwards take the average of a similar number of reigns. We would thus get a measure to apply to the mythological period, formed upon the duration of reigns in times similar in unsettled government to the more ancient mythological. The battle of Stiklestad, at which King Olaf the Saint fell, appears to be such a fixed chronological point. It is stated by Snorro, that the battle took place on Wednesday the IV. of the Calends of August, viz. the 29th July. Now the IV. Calends of August did fall on a Wednesday in the year 1030. In the Saga of Harald Haardrade, King Olaf’s half-brother, who was killed at the battle of



## NOTES

Stanford Bridge near York, Snorro tells us that this event took place thirty-five years after the battle of Stiklestad, at which this King Harald, then a youth, was present. Now the battle of Stanford or Battle Bridge was fought on Monday the 25th September, nineteen days before the battle of Hastings, which took place on Saturday the 14th October, in the year 1066, which brings the battle of Stiklestad, fought thirty-five completed years before, to 1030. The saga-reckoning of years is so many winters; and thirty-five winters had passed between the battle of Stiklestad in autumn 1030, and the battle of Stanford Bridge in autumn 1066. The Saxon Chronicle also gives the year 1030 as the date of the battle in which King Olaf fell; and this Chronicle, giving nothing but the dates and events, without any relation of causes or results, or any attempt at giving any thing more than the event and date, is unquestionably the best historical authority for the time and fact. During the battle of Stiklestad a total solar eclipse is understood by antiquaries, from the text of Snorro, to have taken place; and this would have fixed the day and year beyond all question. But on the IV. Calends of August, 1030, there was no full moon, and consequently there could be no total solar eclipse; and there is no getting rid of Snorro's distinct day, Wednesday the IV. Calends of August, and of that IV. Calends of August in 1030 actually falling upon a Wednesday in that year. Professor Hansten of Christiania has, it is said, calculated that a total eclipse of the sun did take place in the latitude of Stiklestad,  $63^{\circ} 40'$  north, on the 31st of August, 1030; but that would be a Monday, not a Wednesday. The only other near eclipse is one on the 29th June, 1033, and some antiquaries have removed the battle for the sake of the eclipse to the year 1033; but the eclipse fell on a Friday the 29th June, not on a Wednesday the IV. Calends of August; and Snorro is distinct about his Wednesday, and that it was Wednesday the IV. Calends of August. It has been suggested to the translator by Professor Kelland, that possibly it may have been a fog, and not an eclipse at all; and, on considering Snorro's description of what took place, this conjecture appears highly probable. The duration of the obscurity, viz. from half-past 1 to half-past 3, as stated in the Saga, exceeds greatly the duration of the obscurity produced by a total

eclipse. The degree of obscurity produced by a total eclipse is not such that objects at the distance of 40 or 50 yards are undistinguishable, so that the use of the bow or movements in the field, such as the advance of Dag Ringson, as stated in Chapter 139., could be impeded or suspended by it; but these circumstances would apply perfectly to a dense fog. The redness of the air and the light, although the sky was without a cloud, and the sun shone clear, applies perfectly to the land being enveloped in a dense mist, through which the rays of the sun could not penetrate; and the gradual coming on of this obscurity, until at last people could not see each other for two hours distinctly, is exactly what might occur in a very thick fog, although the sun and sky were not obscured by clouds; but could not occur from the obscurity of a few minutes' duration attending a total eclipse, and which is not a darkness sufficient to obstruct any work or movement out of doors like the obscurity of a thick mist. Whether the obscurity was caused by fog or by an eclipse, and whether the day was the 29th of July or the 31st of August, the year is fixed as well as any chronological point can be to the year 1030. Now going upwards from this point, we find —

Olaf the Saint had reigned when he fell	-	15 years.
Earls Swend and Hakon, whom he expelled	-	2 —
Earl Eric, their father	- - -	12 —
Olaf Tryggvesson	- - -	4 —
Earl Hakon the Great	- - -	17 —
Harald Graafeld and Gunhild's sons	- - -	14 —
Hakon Athelstan's foster-son	- - -	26 —
Harald Haarfager, who lived 83 years, reigned		73 —

We have here eight reigns, including one of very unusual duration, averaging  $20\frac{5}{8}$  years. Going downwards from the same point, we find —

Swend Alfifason, for his father Canute the Great		7 years.
Magnus the Good and his uncle Harald Haardrade	- - - - -	12 —
Harald Haardrade, after the death of Magnus, alone	- - - - -	19 —
Magnus his son, jointly with Olaf Kyrre	- - - - -	3 —
Olaf Kyrre alone	- - - - -	24 —
Magnus Barefoot	- - - - -	10 —

## NOTES.

Sigurd the Crusader, with Eystein and Olaf,					
his brothers	-	-	-	-	27 years.
Magnus the Blind	-	-	-	-	5 —

We have here eight reigns, averaging  $13\frac{3}{8}$  years each; and in the 272 years between the accession of Harald Haarfager in 863, and the mutilation and deposition of Magnus the Blind in 1135, we have sixteen reigns, averaging seventeen years. Now Harald Haarfager, according to Torfæus and Schöning, was born in 853, and was the twenty-sixth in descent from Odin. If we apply this reasonable measure of seventeen years as the average duration of reigns in the mythological period immediately before, as it is in the historical period immediately after Harald Haarfager, whose reign began in 863, we bring Odin to 442 years before his reign, that is, to the year 421 of our æra. If we apply the same measure to the Saxon genealogies of Cerdic, Ida, and Ella, who in the years 495, 547, and 560, were reckoned the 9th, 10th, and 11th in descent respectively from Woden, we bring the Saxon Woden to the year 342, or 377, or 373; that is, to within the span of a man's life of from 44 to 79 years of the date of the Scandinavian Odin. It appears to have been some kind of antiquarian vanity that led the early northern antiquaries to place Odin or Woden as far back as possible among the mists of antiquity, and to reject every reasonable measure of the length of reigns, or of human life, that brought him within the Christian æra.

The religion of Odin itself bears strong internal evidence of having borrowed doctrines, institutions, and ceremonies from Christianity,—of having been impressed by some rude notions adopted from the Christian church. In Haar the High, Jafnhaar the Equal to the High, and Thredde the Third, we find a rude idea of the Trinity in the Edda. Adam of Bremen, who lived about the time of the introduction of Christianity into Sweden, and wrote in the year 1075, describes the temple at Upsal as exhibiting this rude idea of the Trinity. It had three idols, he says, of which that of Thor was in the middle and on the highest throne, and those of Odin and Fryggia on either side. Odin himself, an incarnation of divine power, and one of this trinity, attended by his twelve companions or godars, and establishing a religion and religious government, is a coincidence with our Saviour and

the twelve apostles too strong to be merely accidental. Some imperfect knowledge and rude imitation of Christianity are evidently at the bottom of this form of heathenism. It will also be observed that in all the forms of heathenism that existed before Christianity, the priesthood, whether hereditary or dedicated by selection to their vocation, were all a temple-priesthood. They belonged to particular services, gods, and temples; and not to any territorial district like a parish, or to any particular group of people like a congregation. Christianity, however, from the first appears to have been altogether congregational. The bishops, elders, and deacons belonged to particular congregations in particular localities, within which they taught and governed in things spiritual. If the Christian church lost this original and characteristic formation at Rome, it was by imitating and adopting, some centuries after its first establishment, the former heathen establishment of a temple-priesthood, a pontifical college, and a pontifex maximus. Odinism appears to have been formed, like early Christianity, and no doubt an imitation of it, upon the congregational principle. The godar had under his charge a certain portion of territory called a godard, similar to a Christian parish. The inhabitants of this locality paid him certain dues as their priest and local judge. Each godard appears to have had its own Thing, or court, for administering the laws of the general or district Thing, for apportioning dues or taxes, and the levies of men and ships. To this early and complete arrangement of the country and population into godards, or parishes, may be ascribed the great military and naval achievements of the pagan Northmen. It was an effective military arrangement of the whole people. As an arrangement connected with religion, its principle is evidently congregational, and derived from Christianity in the early ages when it had no hierarchy. The godard, that is, the right to jurisdiction and certain dues for civil and ecclesiastical function within a locality, appears to have become a saleable transferable property at last, just like an advowson to the cure of souls in an English parish at the present day. So perfectly similar were the arrangements of Odinism and Christianity, that a century after the establishment of Christianity and Christian church institutions in Iceland, Bishop Isleif held a godard as quite compatible with his functions.

## NOTES

The apostolic succession also, if it may be so termed, from the twelve original godars the companions of Odin, or a qualification derived from them, appears to have been considered, just as a true apostolic succession is considered in England at the present day, necessary for holding the office of godar. These are coincidences with the Christian church which can scarcely be accidental. The use of the sign of the cross also as a religious symbol appears to have prevailed in Odinism in the earliest times, and must have been borrowed from Christianity. Antiquaries call it the sign of Thor's hammer, not of the cross; but the use of any sign as a religious symbol by which people of the same faith might recognise each other, although necessary in the persecutions of the early Christians, could only arise from imitation among the followers of Odin-worship, and especially of the same sign. It would naturally be adopted, however, from a superstitious belief that there was some virtue in the sign itself. The use of water also in giving a name—and in the earliest historical period we find that Harald Haarfager, with whom history commences in Norway, had water poured over him and a name given him in infancy—is a rite evidently borrowed from Christianity. It has no meaning in Odinism. It is a remarkable circumstance in the mythology of the Odin religion, that there was no god particularly connected with water, or the sea, or the winds; and the circumstance is a very strong proof that the Odin religion was not indigenous in Scandinavia, in which the people in all ages must necessarily have been seafaring, and dependent on the elements, and that this religion had its origin, as the tradition states it, in the inland parts of Asia, where sea and wind, and the interests connected with these elements, were unknown or unimportant. The use of water at the ceremony of giving a name, without any sacramental meaning or symbolical reference to their own mythology, seems to prove a mere imitation of the Christian ceremonial by a later religion. It is, indeed, possible that all the passages in which baptism by water are mentioned may have been interpolated by the scalds or saga-men, in compliment to the kings descended from those pagans, and to please their family pride with the idea that their remote pagan ancestors had not died unbaptized, and consequently out of the pale of Christian salvation, according to the ideas of those times, in

which the mere ceremony of baptism was synonymous with Christianity. But this is merely conjecture, not sanctioned by any antiquarian authority.

These are not analogies common to all forms of religion, because arising from a common root—the sense of religion in the mind of man; nor are they coincidences which may be common to two religions totally unconnected with each other, because formed among two bodies of mankind living under physical and social circumstances very similar, although in very different times and totally distinct countries; but they are palpable imitations of ceremonial and arrangement, proving that the one religion has been impressed by the other—has adopted ceremonies, observances, institutions, and doctrines, from some obscure knowledge of the other. Mahomet, some centuries after Odin, has drawn much from Christianity. The true historical place of Odin, or rather of Odinism,—for Odin may not have been, like Mahomet, an historical personage, but merely a name given to several distinct conquerors known only by tradition,—would appear to be after Christianity and before Mahometanism; and as the genealogies indicate, if fairly measured, about the 5th century. Hengist and Horsa are stated in the Saxon Chronicle to have been the sons of Wihtgils, who was the son of Witta; and Witta was the son of Wecta, a son of Woden. This genealogy is rejected, because it brings Woden so near to historical times, making Hengist and Horsa the fourth in descent from the god or warrior Woden. Yet if we apply the same measure of seventeen years to each of these descents from the time of Hengist and Horsa (the year 449) upwards, we find a wonderful coincidence with the other Saxon genealogies of Cerdic, Ida, and Ella, and come within eight years of the two latter. One man of 79 years of age might have been the Odin or Woden of the Scandinavian genealogies, and of the Saxon—the ancestor of Hengist, Cerdic, Ella, and of Harald Haarfager, Gorm, Canute, if he had been born about the year 342, and had died about 421. But were the numerous followers of Odin without any religion before the 4th or 5th century? By no means; not more than the followers of Mahomet before his appearance in the 6th century. Odinism is a new patch upon an old garment. There has been evidently a polytheism,—a worship of Thor,

## NOTES

Lock, of a good and evil principle ; and a more ancient mythology, upon which the incarnation of Odin, the rude idea of a trinity, the twelve godars, and other ideas and forms of belief and observance borrowed from the Christian church in the early ages of Christianity, have been stitched in the 4th or 5th century.

## II.

IVAR VIDFADME is said, in the forty-fifth chapter of the Ynglinga Saga, to have conquered a fifth part of England. This is the first mention made in the saga of expeditions to England ; and in the saga the fifth part of England is generally applied as synonymous with the kingdom of Northumberland. When did this Ivar live ? and how does his date correspond with that given by the Saxon Chronicle, and all our English historians on its authority, as that of the first appearance of the Danes in England, viz. the year 787 ?

Harald Haarfager was born, according to Torfæus, in his "Series Regum Daniæ," anno 853. Gorm the Old, king of Denmark, Harald's contemporary, was born 830. By the genealogies of both these kings, taken by Torfæus from the Codex Flatoynensis, the Langfiedgatal a genealogical table preserved in it, and from Snorro's Ynglinga Saga, both kings were the sixth in descent from Ivar Vidfadme. Allowing seventeen years to each reign or descent, we have the year 728 or 751 as the time of Ivar Vidfadme. This is a generation too early for the year 787. The king who was reigning at either of these dates, 728 or 751, could scarcely be landing for the first time in England in 787 ; and 793 appears to be the next date of the appearance of these heathen men, and it was not before the next quarter of a century that they had any footing in England.

If we turn to the Saxon Chronicle, we find no ground at all for the inference drawn by all our historians from the passage under the date 787, viz. that the first invasion or piratical incursion of the Danes was in the year 787. The passage is this : —

"AN. DCCLXXXVII. Her nom Beorhtric cyning Offan dohtor Eadburhge. And on his dagum cwomon ærest III scipu Nord-manna of Heredalande. And tha se gerefa thær

to rad. hi wolde dryfan to thæs cyninges tune. thy the he niste hwæt hi wæron. hine mon of-sloh tha. That wæron tha ærestan scipu Deniscra monna the Angel-cynes lond gesohton."

"Anno 787. Here took (in marriage) Beorhtric the king Offa's daughter Eadburhga. And in his days came first three ships of Northmen of Heredaland. And then the sheriff rode thereto: he would drive them to this king's town, because he would inquire what they were. This man they slew. These were the first ships of Danish men who sought the English king's land."

The following is the Latin version of the passage, given by Gibson:—

"An. 787. Hoc anno cepit (in uxorem) Beorhtricus Rex Offæ filiam Eadburgam. Ejus autem temporibus venerunt primum tres naves Norwegiorum de Herethorum terra. Tum eo (regis) præpositus equo vectus illos molitus est compellere ad regis villam, propterea quod nesciret unde essent: ibi autem is occisus est. Istæ primæ fuerunt naves Danorum quæ Anglorum nationem peterent."

Now this passage appears not to allow of the strict interpretation given to it by our historians. It says that in the year 787 Beorhtric married Offa's daughter, and in his days—not specially in the year 787—came the three ships; but Beorhtric lived to the year 800. The three ships are stated first to be of Northmen or Norwegians of Heredaland. Heredaland is either Hørdaland, an ancient district of Norway of great note in the sagas,—so great that, in the poetry, king of Hørdaland is frequently used for king of Norway,—and situated where South Bergen province now is; or it may be the country on the south side of the Drontheim fiord, still called the Heredland, or the Inhered, comprehending several extensive parishes, and where formerly the main power of the kings of Norway lay; or Heredalande may mean the king's demesne lands to which the men belonged. In either interpretation these Northmen of Hørdaland were strangers on the coast; and the king's officer went to inquire what they were. But Danes from Jutland or Sleswick, who had from the year 450 to the year 585 or 600, when the kingdom of Mercia was established, been yearly coming over the sea in colonies from those coasts (for the



## NOTES

Anglo-Saxons all came from that coast), could not suddenly have lost the art of navigating vessels so entirely, that in 180 years afterwards they would be a strange people to the Saxon inhabitants of England, whose great grandfathers, in some of the latest settled kingdoms of the Heptarchy, must have been born in that very country. But Northmen from Hördaland, who had to cross the North sea at once from Norway to Northumberland, instead of coasting along from the mouth of the Eyder or of the Elbe to the mouth of the Rhine and the coast of Flanders, from whence a run across to the south-east coast of England is an affair of a couple of days, might very well be an unknown and strange people, before the year 787, to the inhabitants of Northumberland. It is for the Anglo-Saxon scholar to determine whether there may not be a mistake in transcribing the original manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, with respect to the word *Deniscra*. If it could be omitted, so as to read that these were the first ships of these men, — viz. of Northmen from Heredaland, — who came to England, it would make sense of the passage. As it stands, the specification of three ships of Northmen or Norwegians, from Heredaland or Hördaland, does not agree with the term Danish men; as the Danish kingdom or name did not in those ages, in the 8th or in the 9th century, either as a whole or in parts under tributary kings, extend to the north of the Gotha river in the Scandinavian peninsula. In the cognate language, the old Norse, the difference of a letter or two would change the demonstrative pronoun expressing *that* kingdom, viz. of Hördaland or Heredaland, into *Danish* kingdom. If such a reading could be admitted, of which the Anglo-Saxon scholar only can judge, it would both give sense to the passage, and would agree with what must have been the natural course of events, — viz. that at all times after the establishment of the Heptarchy, as well as before, there were piratical expeditions or commercial communications between the mother country of Holstein, Sleswick, and Jutland, viz. the Danish kingdom and the colonies from it in England, to the extent at least that Danes could not be an unknown people, and confounded with Northmen from the north of Norway, or from Hördaland. It is to be observed also, that in 793, 794, and in all the notices in the first half of the following century of piratical invaders in the Saxon Chronicle, they are called

heathen, not Danish men, who maraud in Northumberland or east of the Thames; while those who apparently coasted along the continent before crossing over, and ravaged in the south and west of England, in Kent, Dorsetshire, and even in Cornwall, are generally called Danes. If this reading be admissible, it would remove the difficulty with regard to the time when Ivar Vidfadme or his descendant Ragnar Lodbrok marauded in England. They were Danes, or people from the same coast from which the Anglo-Saxons themselves originally came as marauders and colonists into England; and the limitation in the passage of the Saxon Chronicle under the year 787 would apply, as the sense of the passage seems to require, only to the Northmen from Hördaland or Heredaland, who first came in that year to the shores of England; not to the Danes from Jutland, Slesvick, and Holstein, who, it is reasonable to suppose, must from the days of Hengist have been in the habit of visiting England from the same coast from which he and so many expeditions after his sailed, either to trade with their kinsmen or plunder them. We see no reasonable ground for believing that after so many naval expeditions to England from that coast, during the centuries subsequent to the year 450, the art of navigating from the same coast to England was so entirely lost that in the year 787 the Danes, — that is, the inhabitants of the coasts from which the Anglo-Saxons originally embarked, — were an unknown people to their own posterity in England. But the Northmen from Heredaland might very well be strangers; and the year 787 might very well be the first of the appearance of those northern marauders, who immediately afterwards laid waste the country by their expeditions.

---

### III.

THE 32d chapter of the Knytlinga Saga, — that is, of the saga of the family of Knut or Canute the Great, — is a very curious and important historical document. It is a kind of statistical account of the military force and organization of Denmark in the time of Saint Canute. He was the son and successor of King Swend, a sister's son of Canute the Great.

## NOTES

This Swend was a son of the Earl Ulf, who, after the battle of Helge-a, was assassinated in the church of Saint Lucius in Roskilde, in the winter of 1027, by order of Canute the Great; and to whom Canute's sister Astrid, a daughter of King Swein the first Danish conqueror of England, was married. On the death of Canute the Great in 1035, his son Hardacanute succeeded to the Danish, and his son Harald to the English crown. In 1040 Hardacanute, by the death of his brother Harald, succeeded to England also; and on his own death in 1042 King Magnus the Good of Norway claimed the kingdom of Denmark, in virtue of an agreement made in 1036 between him and Hardacanute, and ratified by the chief people of each country, that the survivor of the two kings should succeed to the kingdom of the other in default of heirs male. Earl Swend, however, the son of Earl Ulf, nephew of Canute the Great, and next heir of that line, wrested the kingdom from the Norwegian king, and died in 1075, or 40 years after Canute the Great, and was succeeded by his son Harald Hein, and on his death in 1080 by his next son Saint Canute. During the forty-five years between Canute the Great and Saint Canute, the kingdom was in too distracted a state, from the wars relative to the succession, for any such general organization of its military force into districts, and fixed quota of vessels to be furnished by each in a levy. We must go back for the origin and establishment of this regular organization to the pagan times preceding King Canute and his father Swein, or Swend Forked-beard, the conqueror of England, who was born a pagan; and it enables us to account for their military power. The Godards and Thingsteds at which the people within each circle or godard assembled, were evidently the bishoprics, parishes, and churches of the Christian organization of the country, with the numbers of ships each territorial division had to furnish to a levy, remaining as in the pagan times, and described as belonging to each church-circle or godard. This chapter tells us that the most southerly bishopric of Denmark was Heidaby, viz. Sleswick, the old town of Heidaby having been on the bank of the Slie, opposite to the present town of Sleswick; and that it had 350 churches, that is, Thingsteds, or head places of assembling the community of the godards, and furnished 130 ships to the king on a levy. Riben, a bishopric in Jutland next to it, had 324

churches, and furnished 110 ships. Aros, a third bishopric also in Jutland, had 210 churches, and furnished 90 ships. The fourth bishopric was Wyburg, also in Jutland, which furnished 100 ships. It then describes Lymfiord, an inlet from the Baltic reaching almost to the North sea, and only divided from it by a narrow neck of sand, over which Harald of Norway drew his vessels when blockaded by King Swend Ulfsson's fleet in the fiord, and thus escaped into the North Sea. It then goes on to describe the bishoprics north of this inlet; viz. Hiorrung, with 160 churches, furnishing as its quota in a levy 50 ships. The sixth bishopric is Odense, in the island of Fyen, with 300 churches, furnishing 100 ships. The seventh is Roskilde, in the island of Seland, with 411 churches, furnishing 120 ships; and the eighth is the bishopric of Lund in Scania, across the Sound, with 353 churches, and furnishing 150 ships.

We have here 2358 districts, or churches, furnishing 850 ships to the king on a general levy, which appears to have been called out almost every summer. From this minute account of the available naval force of Denmark alone, we see that there is probably no exaggeration in the accounts of the immense number of vessels collected on the naval expeditions of those times. Canute, we are told in the saga, had 1200 vessels in his fleet at the battle of Helge-a, which startles the historical reader; but when we find 850 of these vessels were only the regular levy furnished by Denmark, and that he had all the shipping of England also at his command, the number is quite credible. These vessels may have been very small; but the smallest could scarcely have had less than ten men of a standing crew to row and manage them, besides the fighting men. This would make a greater sea force than Denmark possesses at the present day, including her German territories of Holstein and part of Sleswick, and the considerable shipping towns of Altona, Kiel, Flensburg belonging to it. The registered seamen belonging to Denmark, and available for the service of the crown if called on, amount at present only to 6650 men; and the sea-force, it is stated by statistical writers, could not be raised to 8000 men, without taking all the men from the commercial marine of the country. Denmark has been positively, as well as comparatively, a greater naval power in the 11th than in the 19th century. She has

## NOTES

larger vessels now, but fewer sea-going men. She wants, like all the Continental countries, the basis of a naval power,—a numerous population engaged in coasting trade, fishing, and employment with small vessels; and the very improvement of agriculture, roads, and means of living on land diminishes the employment of a seafaring coasting population with them; while the very same improvement, from the shape of the country, diversity of products in different quarters of it, and the nature of our staple products,—coal, metals, and other heavy or bulky commodities,—increases the employment and numbers of a coasting seafaring population with us. When the employment of marauding on the coasts of other countries, the viking-trade, fell into disuse, there was no employment for a seafaring population in Denmark, in which, from the similarity of products over all, there is no constant demand in one quarter for what another quarter could spare.

The vessels employed in these war expeditions must have been of a size to keep the sea, and stow the arms, water, and provisions of a considerable body of men. Ships of twenty benches of oars,—and we read of such belonging to bonders,—carried sixty men when in fighting equipment; for we find from Erling Skakke's speech, in Chapter 6. of Hakon Herdabreid's Saga, that three men belonged to each oar—one to row, one to shoot, and one to cover those two with a shield. If we suppose the whole of the vessels of a levy to have averaged this size, about 51,000 men would be the number raised by a general levy. When we consider that this was a beneficial and favourite summer employment for the whole population between seed-time and harvest, interfering in no way with their usual occupations and habits, this number does not appear extravagantly great; but it is probable that by far the greater proportion of the vessels of a levy were not of a size to convey sixty men, with their bulky arms, missiles, provisions, and water, but were merely transports, or large half-decked boats. But such a class of vessels could scarcely have fewer than ten men to row them. If we allow half of the 850 vessels to have been of this class, and the other half fighting vessels with an average complement of sixty men, we find that about 30,000 men may have been raised by a general levy in the dominions of Swein or Canute. This force appears inconsiderable; but it is probable that long after the

kingdoms of the Heptarchy in England had been united, the force of the country as a whole remained in a very ineffective state, and not so fully organized that any considerable body could be drawn together suddenly to any locality; and the Danes having the command of the sea, and their ships to retire to, could always invade, with superior numbers and superior supply of missiles, any part of the coast they pleased.

---

#### IV.

IN the following chronological notes the fixed dates are taken from the chronological tables by Schöning and Thorlacius, affixed to the folio edition of the "*Heimskringla*," 1777; and in what is mythological or of uncertain date, it is to be remembered that the authority of these great antiquaries, and of Torfæus, should be of great weight, even if we differ from them on the data from which they assume a vast antiquity for Odin, and the mythology of the Odin worship and history.

A man born about the year 333, and dying 78 years of age in 411, would, in respect of time, perfectly represent the personage whom the Scandinavian genealogies and the Saxon concur in calling Odin and Woden, and to whom they reckon up as the root of their royal dynasties. The genealogy of Harald Haarfager, 26th in descent from Odin, and that of Hengist and Horsa the 4th in descent, of Cerdic the 9th, of Ida the 10th, of Ella the 11th in descent from Woden, all concur within that period—the last half of the 4th century—if the reasonable allowance of eighteen years be made as the average length of each step in the genealogies. It appears, therefore, more reasonable to assume this date for the historical Odin or Woden, than the year 105 before Christ, which is given by Schöning; or 70 years after Christ, which is given by Torfæus, with a supplemental Odin four or five hundred years earlier.

Ivar Vidfadme, the 6th step above Harald Haarfager in the series, and who is said in the *Ynglinga Saga* to have conquered or marauded in England, would, according to the same allowance to each step, have to be placed in the year 745, although the *Saxon Chronicle* states the year 787 as that of the first visit of the Northmen.

## NOTES

853. Is the year of Harald Haarfager's birth.
863. Harald succeeded to his father Halfdan the Black.
864. One Gardar went to Iceland, which had been discovered in 861 by Nadodd.
867. Flakke went to Iceland.
875. Ingulf went as a colonist to occupy Iceland.
885. The battle in Hafursfiord, by which Harald Haarfager became supreme king of Norway.
895. Harald Haarfager's expedition to Orkney. The banishment of Rolf Ganger from Norway is placed in this year.
898. Eric Bloodyaxe was born.
923. Hakon, called afterwards Athelstan's foster-son, born.
931. Hakon sent to England.
936. Death of Harald Haarfager.
937. Hakon, Athelstan's foster-son, king.
941. Athelstan king of England died.
963. Hakon, Athelstan's foster-son, killed in the battle at Stord.
968. The Emperor Otto's first expedition to Denmark.
969. Olaf Tryggvesson born.
970. Earl Hakon fled to Denmark.
971. Earl Hakon returned to Drontheim.
976. The Emperor Otto's second expedition to Denmark.
977. King Harald Graafeld killed.
978. Hakon made earl of Norway.
988. The Emperor Otto's third expedition to Denmark.
993. Birth of King Olaf the Saint.
994. The battle of Earl Hakon with the Jomsburg vikings.
996. Earl Hakon killed, and Olaf Tryggvesson made king of Norway.
1000. The battle at Svoldr, in which King Olaf Tryggvesson fell.
1008. King Swein Forked-beard died this year, according to the dates deduced from the Saga; but according to the Saxon Chronicle, unquestionably a much higher authority for the dates, King Swein died at Candlemas, 1014.
1012. The death of Ethelred is placed in this year by Snorro and the Sagas; but according to the Saxon Chronicle he died in 1016.

1014. King Olaf went to Norway from the coast of North-umberland this year, took Earl Hakon prisoner, and was received as king.
1016. Harald Haardrade born.
1017. Canute married Emma, widow of King Ethelred, and daughter of Richard duke of Normandy. During this year the negotiations relative to a marriage between King Olaf of Norway and Ingegird, the daughter of Olaf king of Sweden, appear to have taken place.
1018. Sigurd Syr, King Olaf's step-father, died.
1019. The marriage of Astrid with King Olaf; and peace was concluded between King Olaf of Sweden and King Olaf of Norway.
1022. King Olaf of Sweden died, and his son Onund succeeded.
1024. King Magnus the Good born.
1025. A treaty between King Olaf and King Onund. King Canute the Great came to Denmark, and wintered there.
1026. Canute returned to England.
1027. The kings Olaf and Onund joined their forces, and laid waste Sealand. The battle of Helge-a was fought. This battle is also mentioned in the Saxon Chronicle, but under the year 1025.

The next year, however, under which any event is dated being 1028, it may be presumed that the battle, being a foreign event not connected with English history, is merely stated in the Saxon Chronicle as something that took place between 1025 and 1028. It states also that Ulf and Eglaf, viz. Olaf, were joined against King Canute; which may be accounted for by Earl Ulf's attempt to set up Hardacanute as king of Denmark against Canute his father, and Ulf's assassination by Canute's order in the church of St. Lucius, at Roskilde, after the battle of Helge-a. Snorro's account of this transaction, which is taken from the Knytlinga Saga, is much more distinct and probable; as the Danish levy which Ulf and Hardacanute had raised was evidently in Canute's fleet, not with King Olaf and King Onund. As the Saxon Chronicle is evidently wrong about an event which had not taken place on its own shores, the Sagas are evidently wrong



## NOTES

in the dates, or succession of events, of what took place in England. There is great discrepancy between them as to the dates or succession of events in the first twenty-seven years after the year 1000; and the Saxon Chronicle may reasonably be taken as the best authority. The Sagas, in fact, and Snorro's work founded on them, and which is to be considered as one great saga put together from many smaller, are not history so much as historical biographies; not very dissimilar, as a class of literary compositions, to the historical novels and dramas of a later age. They have a literary aim predominating over historical accuracy; and attempt by speeches, reflections, poetry, anecdotes, to make an agreeable narrative out of historical facts. They are certainly not of equal authority with the chronicles written prior to the 13th century, which had no higher aim or merit than to string the events chronologically together. As literary compositions, they show a much more manly taste and turn of mind, than the prurient tales or mawkish lays which are given in the "*Fablieaux et Contes de XII. et XIII. Siècle*," as the compositions of the troubadours and scalds or minstrels of Provence and the south of France in the 12th or 13th century. The discrepancy of the sagas with chronological history appears in the date of Swein's death, which took place the 11th February, 1014, and of Ethelred's, who succeeded him, and died 1016. But Olaf is stated in the saga to have come to Norway in autumn, 1014, and the battle of London Bridge could not have taken place before 1016; and if the battle of Hringmaraheide in Ulfkel's land be the same as that of Assandown in Essex, which was in Ulfkel's land, these events, and the marriage of Canute with Emma the widow of Ethelred, which took place in 1017, are confusedly stated in the saga as events which took place before 1014. Olaf is stated in the saga to have passed two summers and a winter in the West, in Valand, after the battle of London Bridge; and to have come to Rouen after the death of King Edmund, which was in 1016; and to have met there the sons of Ethelred, whom Canute had expelled, and joined them in an attempt to regain their kingdom the following summer. After their defeat in a battle at a place called Jungofurda, Olaf left them, and set off for Norway; but this could not have been before the year 1017, although the year 1014 must be taken for that of his arrival in Norway, in order to agree with the succession of

events there. In 1019, King Canute appears by the Saxon Chronicle to have visited Denmark. In 1025, or between 1025 and 1027, the battle of Helge-a appears to have been fought. But some antiquaries of great note—Gramm and Schöning—think that King Canute himself went on a pilgrimage to Rome in 1027. There is no mention in the Saxon Chronicle nor in Snorro, but there is in the Knytlinga Saga, of this journey of Canute to Rome. It does not appear that there could have been time for any such pilgrimage in Canute's life; for in 1027 and 1028 he appears to have been certainly in the Baltic, and to have driven Olaf to Russia. It is very remarkable that the Knytlinga Saga does not give Canute the Great, nor his father King Swein, nor his predecessors Harald or Gorm, the credit of having been very wise men. It says of Canute, "Ekki var hann storvittr madr, ok sua Sweinn konungr med sama hætti, ok enn adr Haraldr ok Gormr, at their voru öngir spekingar at viti."

1030. King Olaf returned from Russia, and was slain at the battle of Stiklestad on the 29th July of this year.
1034. Einar Tambarskelver and Kalf Arneson appear to have come to Russia in the autumn of this year, to offer their aid to King Magnus, the son of Saint Olaf. Harald Haardrade, the half-brother of Saint Olaf, appears to have gone from Russia to Constantinople this year. Romanus Argyropolis was then emperor, and was succeeded by Michael Paphlago.
1035. King Magnus, then in his eleventh year, was received as king in Norway. Swend Alfifason, the son of Canute, was driven out to Denmark. Canute the Great died on the 13th November of this year, and was succeeded in England by his son Harald, and in Denmark by his son Hardacanute.
1036. Swend Alfifason died. A peace concluded between King Magnus of Norway and Hardacanute, with the condition that the survivor of the two should succeed to the dominions of the other.
1040. According to Snorro's account, (but 1039, on the 17th March, according to the Saxon Chronicle,) King Harald of England, called Harefoot, died, and was succeeded by his brother Hardacanute of Denmark.

## NOTES.

1042. According to Snorro's narrative, (but 1041, on the 8th of June, according to the Saxon Chronicle,) Hardacanute died. King Magnus went to Denmark with a fleet to take possession of that kingdom in virtue of the agreement made in 1036.
1043. King Magnus appointed Swend Ulfsson, the nephew of Canute the Great, to be regent of Denmark.
1044. In spring King Magnus destroyed the castle of the Jomsburg vikings, supposed to have been in the island of Rugen or of Wollen, on the coast of Esthonia. In autumn he gained the battle of Lyrskog Heath in Jutland, against the people of Vendland; and in winter the battle of Aarhus, against Swend Ulfson, who had assumed the sovereignty of Denmark.
1046. Harald Haardrade, who returned two years before from Constantinople, is received by his nephew King Magnus as joint king of Norway.
1047. King Magnus died 25th October in Jutland, and Harald Haardrade became sole king of Norway. Swend Ulfsson becomes sole king of Denmark, by King Magnus on his death-bed renouncing his right derived from Hardacanute.
1061. King Harald being blockaded by Swend's fleet in Lymfjord, drew his vessels across the narrow neck of sand which divided it from the North sea, and escaped. This fact is remarkable, as showing that neither the rising of the land above the level of the sea which modern geologists suppose, nor any change in the features of the north sea-coast of Jutland and Sleswick which historians assume took place, owing to extraordinary inundations or high tides in the 13th or 14th century, had altered the shape or nature of this low feature of the country during 800 years. This low sandy neck of land was only washed away in our times, viz. about 1816; and there is now a channel with eight or nine feet depth of water where this narrow land-road, dividing the Lymfjord from the North sea, existed from the earliest historical times to 1816.
1062. The battle of Nizaa on the 10th August, when Harald captured seventy vessels from the Danes.

1064. Peace concluded between King Harald and Swend, and the right of the latter to the Danish crown recognised.
1066. Edward the Confessor, king of England, died 5th January; and Harald, son of Earl Godwin, succeeded.
- Harald, king of Norway, came in August with a fleet of 200 vessels to Orkney, and marauded along the coasts of Scotland and England.
- On the 20th September he had a battle on the Ouse with earls Walthiof and Morcar.
- On Sunday the 24th September he had a battle at Stanford-bridge, near York, with the people of that city.
- On Monday the 25th September he was surprised and killed in battle by King Harald, the son of Godwin, near York. Earl Toste, brother of King Harald, son of Godwin, had joined Harald king of Norway in this invasion, and was killed also in the battle. Olaf, Harald's son, and his brother Magnus, succeeded Harald Haardrade as joint kings of Norway.
- On the 14th October Harald, son of Godwin, fell in the battle of Hastings, and William the Conqueror acquired the kingdom of England.
1067. The sons of Earl Toste, Skule and Ketil, came to Norway, and settled there.
1069. Magnus, the son of Harald Haardrade, died; and his brother Olaf, called Kyrre, or the Tranquil, became sole king of Norway.
1073. Magnus, called Magnus Barefoot afterwards, was born.
1077. The stone church in Drontheim called Christ church was consecrated.
1080. Harald Hein, king of Denmark, died. He was son of King Swend Ulfsson, who died 1076; and Harald Hein was succeeded by his brother Saint Canute.
1086. Saint Canute was killed by his subjects.
1089. King Eystein was born, a son of Magnus Barefoot; but Magnus could only have been sixteen years of age by the account of the saga.
1090. Sigurd the Crusader was born.

- NOTES.**
1093. King Olaf the Tranquil died, and was succeeded by Magnus Barefoot, his son, who appears to have been on a marauding expedition in the spring and summer of this year in the Hebudes.
  1096. King Magnus was on an expedition to the Hebudes, and subdued Islay, Man, and Anglesey.
  1098. King Magnus appears to have made a third expedition to the Orkney Islands, and from thence to have gone to the Hebudes and Ireland. On this expedition the circumstance appears to have taken place of his sitting in his boat, and being drawn across the isthmus of the Mull of Cantire, and claiming all that lay to the westward of what he passed through with his ship. His son Sigurd, then nine years of age, was betrothed on this expedition to Biadmynia, a daughter of an Irish king called Myriartak in the saga.
  1099. King Magnus returned from this expedition.
  1101. A meeting at the Gotha river between King Eric the Good of Denmark, Inge the Swedish king, and King Magnus.
  1102. King Magnus went on another expedition to Ireland.
  1103. King Magnus was killed in Connaught, with many of his troops. Sigurd his son left Biadmynia his Irish wife, and returned to Norway; and the three sons of Magnus, Eystein, Sigurd, and Olaf, were made joint kings.
  1107. King Sigurd set out on his expedition to the Holy Land.
  1110. King Sigurd was in Sicily, and assisted, according to the saga, at the coronation of Count Roger as king of Sicily.
  1111. Sigurd returned by land from Constantinople to Norway.
  1114. Sigurd married Malmfrid, a daughter of Harald king of Novogorod.
  1116. Olaf, one of the sons of Magnus Barefoot, and one of the joint kings of Norway, died.
  1118. Magnus, called King Magnus the Blind, was born.
  1122. Eystein, the other son of Magnus Barefoot, and joint king with Sigurd, died.
  1126. Harald Gille, calling himself a bastard son of Magnus

- Barefoot, came from Ireland, and was acknowledged by King Sigurd as his brother.
1130. King Sigurd the Crusader died. Magnus his son, called the Blind, was taken by half the country as king, and Harald Gille by another part of the country.
1132. Magnus married Christina, a daughter of Canute Lavard, duke of Sleswick, but sent her away the following year.
1134. Magnus expelled Harald Gille, and remained sole king of Norway.
1135. Harald Gille returned, and surprised King Magnus in Bergen; put out his eyes, castrated him, and put him into a monastery; and became sole king.  
King Inge the Hunchback was born.
1136. Sigurd Slembidiakn, calling himself a son of Magnus Barefoot, and brother of Harald Gille, appeared; and on the 13th December killed King Harald Gille at Bergen, but was not supported by the people, and fled. Sigurd and Inge, sons of Harald Gille, were made joint kings; Sigurd being then four years of age, and Inge one year old.
1137. Sigurd Slembidiakn took Magnus the Blind out of the monastery at Drontheim; but not being supported by the people, Magnus retired to the Uplands, and Sigurd to Orkney.
1139. Sigurd Slembidiakn and Magnus the Blind, having obtained assistance from Denmark, fought a battle with the kings Inge and Sigurd, and were defeated. Magnus the Blind was slain, and Sigurd Slembidiakn tortured to death.
1142. Eystein, a son of Harald Gille, came from Scotland, and was made king of a third of Norway.
1147. Hakon Herdabreid, or the Broad-shouldered, was born.
1151. Swerrer, afterwards king of Norway, was born.
1152. Nicolas Breakspear, an Englishman, came as cardinal to Norway. He was afterwards pope under the title of Adrian IV.
1153. King Eystein went to Orkney, and appears by the saga to have marauded along the coast of Scotland and England as far south as Scarborough. This appears to have

## NOTES.

been among the last of the marauding expeditions of the Northmen. The Saxon Chronicle ends about this year, and does not mention it; but in the tumults and domestic warfare at the end of King Stephen's reign, it might have been overlooked among the calamities of the year.

1155. King Sigurd was slain by his brother Inge at Bergen.  
 1156. Swerrer, who was afterwards king, was taken by his mother to the Feroe Islands.

Magnus, the son of Christina, a daughter of Sigurd the Crusader by Erling Skakke, and who in right of his mother was made king on the death of Hakon Herdabreid, was born.

1157. King Eystein was defeated, and put to death by order of King Inge his brother. Hakon Herdabreid was proclaimed king by the followers of King Eystein.  
 1161. Gregorius, the step-father of King Inge, was killed in a conflict with Hakon's troops. In the same winter King Inge was defeated and killed in a battle on the ice at Opslo. The followers of Inge took Magnus the son of a lenderman, Erling Skakke, and of Christina the daughter of Sigurd the Crusader, as king. Hakon, however, drove Erling and his son out of Norway.  
 1162. Erling, coming suddenly on King Hakon in Steinavog, defeated and slew him; and Magnus, the son of Erling, was sole king of Norway.  
 1164. Magnus Erlingsson was anointed and consecrated king of Norway, being then eight years of age, by Stephen the legate of the pope, and was the first king who had been crowned with that ceremony.  
 1172. Harald, a son of Christina, the mother of King Magnus Erlingsson by King Sigurd, was taken and executed at Bergen by order of Erling. Christina, the wife of Erling, and mother of King Magnus, left her husband and went to Constantinople, where she died in 1178.  
 1173. Eystein, who gave himself out for a son of King Eystein Haraldsson, made his appearance with a troop, who were called Birkebeiners from the poverty

of their dress, having birch-bark bound round their legs instead of stockings or boots.

1176. Swerrer, who was afterwards leader of the Birkebeiners, and by them raised to the throne of Norway, came over from the Feroe Islands. His claim to any affinity with the royal race was very slender.
1177. King Magnus Erlingsson defeated the troop of Birkebeiners which Eystein had assembled, and killed Eystein himself at Re. Swerrer succeeded to the command of the Birkebeiners. This is the last event of Snorro Sturleson's *Heimskringla*.
1178. Snorro Sturleson was born.
1221. Snorro probably about this time began to write his work, having then returned from a long residence in Norway.
1241. This was the date of the murder of this very remarkable man of the thirteenth century. His work stands unrivalled in the middle ages. In that class of literary production—the lively representation of historical events by incidents, anecdotes, speeches, touches true to nature, bringing out strongly the character and individuality of each eminent actor in historical events—it may be doubted if, even since the middle ages, any, excepting Shakspeare and Sir Walter Scott in their historical representations, have surpassed Snorro Sturleson.



**LONDON :**  
**Printed by A. SPOTTISWOODE,**  
**New-Street-Square.**

